

•FROM THE OPENING•  
INTO THE ENDGAME



EDMAR MEDNIS

CADOGAN  
*chess*

# From the Opening into the Endgame

by

Edmar Mednis

International Grandmaster



**PERGAMON PRESS**

**OXFORD · NEW YORK · SEOUL · TOKYO**

## PERGAMON RUSSIAN CHESS SERIES

*Executive Editor:* Paul Lamford

*Technical Editor:* Jimmy Adams

*Russian Series Editor:* Kenneth Neat

Some other books in this series:

ADORJAN, A. & HORVATH, T.  
Sicilian: Sveshnikov Variation

ALBURT, L.

Test and Improve Your Chess

ALEKHINE, A. A.

On the Road to the World Championship  
1923–1927

ALEXANDER, C. H. O'D. & BEACH, T. J.

Learn Chess: A New Way for All

Volume 1: First Principles

Volume 2: Winning Methods

AVERBAKH, Y.

Chess Endings: Essential Knowledge

Comprehensive Chess Endings

Volume 1: Bishop Endings, Knight  
Endings

Volume 2: Bishop against Knight  
Endings, Rook against Minor Piece  
Endings

Volume 3: Queen and Pawn Endings,  
Queen against Rook Endings, Queen  
against Minor Piece Endings

Volume 4: Pawn Endings

Volume 5: Rook Endings

AVNI, A.

Creative Chess

BASMAN, M.

The Killer Grob

CLOAD, R. & KEENE, R.

Battles of Hastings

GELLER, E. P.

The Application of Chess Theory

GLIGORIC, S.

Play the Nimzo-Indian Defence

KARPOV, A.

Chess at the Top 1979–1984

KASPAROV, G.

London–Leningrad Championship Games

New World Chess Champion

The Test of Time

KASPAROV, G., GELLER, E., LEIN, A.,  
CHEPIZHNY, V.

Kasparov v Karpov 1990

LIVSHITZ, A.

Test Your Chess IQ, Books 1 & 2

MEDNIS, E.

From the Middlegame into the Endgame

MULLEN, I. & MOSS, M.

Blunders and Brilliances

NEISHTADT, I.

Paul Keres Chess Master Class

Queen Sacrifice

POLUGAYEVSKY, L.

Grandmaster Preparation

Grandmaster Performance

The Sicilian Labyrinth Vols 1 & 2

POLUGAYEVSKY, L. & DAMSKY, I.

The Art of Defence in Chess

PORTISCH, L. & SÁRKÖZY, B.

Six Hundred Endings

PRZEWOZNIK, J. & PEIN, M.

The Blumenfeld Gambit

SHERESHEVSKY, M. I.

Endgame Strategy

SHERESHEVSKY, M. I. & SLUTSKY, L. M.

Mastering the Endgame Vol. 1

SMYSLOV, V.

125 Selected Games

SUETIN, V.

Modern Chess Opening Theory

Three Steps to Chess Mastery

WEBB, S.

Chess for Tigers

## Preface to 1991 Reprint

The manuscript for this book was completed in 1982. To be chosen, the variation with its follow-up endgame had to meet the following criteria: be important, interesting, thematic and of sufficient longevity to have "stood the test of time". In reviewing the book in the June 1990 issue of PERGAMON CHESS, World Champion Garry Kasparov said the following in his last paragraph: "In general, this book may help both amateurs, and players of higher standard, to improve". Since eight years in the current rate of developments in opening theory is equivalent to a lifetime in earlier days, I feel that I'm on solid ground when I say that the book has stood the test of time.

This means that the updating

required for this reprint was not large. Of course, the small number of typographical and analytical errors were corrected. On the more substantive matters, the only significant development occurred in the King's Indian Defense chapter. The Black ninth move variant, 9 ... c6, criticized in the first edition, has become — thanks to the pioneering work by GMs John Nunn and William Watson — an important alternative. I have now added a new section, complete with a recent illustrative game, to present more fully this variation. It should be added, however, that the standard 9 ... Re8 remains the most popular variation to this very day.

New York, 1991 EDMAR MEDNIS

# Preface

The two phases of chess that can be learned quite well are the opening and the endgame. There are a large number of players who don't mind a bit of opening study and like the king security feature of the endgame, but are inherently uncomfortable in unbalanced middlegames. This book is meant especially for them. It shows how to go from the opening into the endgame, essentially completely bypassing the middlegame stage. Once the desired endgame positions have been reached, the various typical possibilities are explored using master games. These games are given complete and discussed in detail, thus allowing the reader full opportunity for study of the opening and the complete endgame. Because of the clear exposition of all endgame principles, the student will learn not only about the specific endgame variation, but also about endgame play in general.

To satisfy the needs of players of both open and closed opening systems, a wide range of openings are discussed. There are six from 1 e4, three starting with 1 d4 and

two from 1 c4 and/or 1 Nf3.

Some of the material in this book is based on work previously published by me in various chess magazines, dealing with aspects of opening or endgame play. However, in every case the material has been reviewed, expanded and updated so that it is of maximum immediate usefulness to the purchaser of this book. In general, the following standard sources have been utilized in the preparation of this book: personal knowledge, personal contacts and leading chess books and periodicals. When appropriate, direct credit is given in the text.

To ensure that the reader and the author are on the same wavelength regarding the meaning of the question and exclamation marks as they are used in the characterization of moves, these are the presently accepted meanings:

- ! = a strong move
- !! = a very strong move; a fantastic move
- ? = a bad move; a weak move
- ?? = a horrible move; a blunder

It is an enterprising move; a move worthy of consideration

It is a dubious move, for theoretical or practical reasons

manuscript but for never-ending physical and moral support.

In an undertaking of such scope, some errors of fact and interpretation are almost inevitable. The author accepts responsibility for all of these. Your assistance in bringing them to my attention will be appreciated.

As always, my deepest gratitude goes to my wonderful blonde wife, Hilda, not only for typing the entire

New York, 1982 EDMAR MEDNIS

# Contents

<b>1. Building an Opening Repertoire</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2. Ruy Lopez: Exchange Variation</b>	<b>6</b>
(1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bb5 a6 4 Bxc6 dxc6 5 0-0 f6 6 d4 exd4 7 Nxd4 c5 8 Nb3 Qxd1 9 Rxd1)	
2.1 9 ... Bd6	9
2.2 9 ... Be6 10 Bf4 c4 11 Nd4 0-0-0 12 Nc3 Bf7 13 Nf5	11
2.21 13 ... Re8	12
2.22 13 ... Rxd1+	15
2.3 9 ... Bd7 10 Bf4 0-0-0 11 Nc3	18
2.31 11 ... c4	19
2.32 11 ... Be6	20
2.4 9 ... Bg4 10 f3 Be6 11 Be3 b6	25
2.41 12 Nc3	26
2.42 12 a4	28
<b>3. Sicilian Defense: Dragon Variation</b>	<b>31</b>
(1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Nxd4 Nf6 5 Nc3 g6 6 Be3 Bg7 7 f3 0-0 8 Qd2 Nc6 9 g4 Nxd4 10 Bxd4)	
3.1 10 ... e5	33
3.2 10 ... Be6 11 0-0-0 Qa5 12 Kb1 Rfc8 13 a3 Rab8 14 g5 Nh5 15 Nd5 Qxd2 16 Rxd2 Bxd5 17 exd5	35
3.21 17 ... a6	36
3.22 17 ... Bxd4	40
<b>4. Sicilian Defense: Accelerated Dragon Variation</b>	<b>43</b>
(1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Nxd4 g6 5 c4 Nf6 6 Nc3 Nxd4 7 Qxd4 d6 8 Bg5 Bg7 9 f3 0-0 10 Qd2 Be6 11 Rc1 Qa5 12 b3)	
4.1 12 ... a6	46

4.2	12 ... Rfc8 13 Be2 a6 14 Na4 Qxd2 + 15 Kxd2	47
	4.21 15 ... Rc6	48
	4.22 15 ... Nd7	51
<b>4</b>	<b>French Defense: Tarrasch Variation</b>	<b>54</b>
	(1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nd2 c5 4 exd5 exd5 5 Bb5+ Bd7 6 Qe2+ Qe7 7 Bxd7 + Nxd7 8 dxc5)	
4.1	8 ... Nxc5 9 Nb3 Qxe2+ 10 Nxe2 Nxb3 11 axb3 Bc5	56
	5.11 12 Nc3	57
	5.12 12 Bd2	59
4.2	8 ... Qxe2+	61
<b>6</b>	<b>Pirc Defense: Normal Variation</b>	<b>63</b>
	(1 e4 d6 2 d4 Nf6 3 Nc3 g6 4 Nf3 Bg7 5 Be2 0–0 6 0–0 Bg4 7 Bc3 Nc6 8 Qd2 e5 9 dxe5 dxe5 10 Rad1 Qc8 11 Qc1 Rd8 12 Rxd8+ Qxd8 13 Rd1 Qf8 14 h3 Bxf3 15 Bxf3)	
6.1	15 ... Rd8	67
6.2	15 ... a6 16 Nb1	69
	6.21 16 ... Rd8	69
	6.22 16 ... h5	71
<b>7</b>	<b>Modern Defense: Averbakh Variation</b>	<b>72</b>
	(1 e4 g6 2 d4 Bg7 3 c4 d6 4 Nc3 e5 5 dxe5 dxe5 6 Qxd8 + Kxd8)	
7.1	7 Be3	73
7.2	7 Bg5+	76
7.3	7 f4	78
	7.31 7 ... Nd7	78
	7.32 7 ... Nc6	81
	7.33 7 ... Be6	88
<b>8</b>	<b>King's Indian Defense: Normal Variation</b>	<b>92</b>
	(1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 g6 3 Nc3 Bg7 4 e4 d6 5 Nf3 0–0 6 Be2 e5 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 Qxd8 Rxd8 9 Bg5)	
8.1	9 ... Re8	94
	8.11 10 Nd5	94



8.12 10 0-0-0	97
8.2 9 ... Na6	102
8.3 9 ... Nbd7	104
8.4 9 ... c6	105
<b>9. Grünfeld Defense: Modern Exchange Variation</b>	<b>107</b>
(1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 g6 3 Nc3 d5 4 cxd5 Nxd5 5 e4 Nxc3 6 bxc3 c5 7 Nf3 Bg7 8 Be3)	
9.1 8 ... Bg4	109
9.2 8 ... 0-0	112
9.3 8 ... Qa5	116
<b>10. Queen's Indian Defense: Normal Variation</b>	<b>120</b>
(1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 e6 3 Nf3 b6 4 g3 Bb7 5 Bg2 Be7 6 0-0 0-0 7 Nc3 Ne4 8 Nxe4 Bxe4 9 Nh4 Bxg2 10 Nxg2 d5 11 Qa4)	
10.1 11 ... c6	123
10.2 11 ... Qd7	125
10.3 11 ... dxc4	128
<b>11. English/Reti Opening: Mutual Double Fianchetto</b>	<b>131</b>
(1 c4 c5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 g3 b6 4 Bg2 Bb7 5 0-0 g6 6 b3 Bg7 7 Bb2 0-0 8 Nc3 d5 9 Nxd5 Nxd5 10 Bxg7 Kxg7 11 cxd5 Qxd5 12 d4 cxd4 13 Qxd4+ Qxd4 14 Nxd4 Bxg2 15 Kxg2)	
11.1 15 ... Rc8	133
11.2 15 ... Na6	135
11.3 15 ... a6	136
<b>12. English Opening: Andersson-Böök Line</b>	<b>140</b>
(1c4 Nf6 2 Nc3 d5 3 cxd5 Nxd5 4 Nf3 g6 5 e4 Nxc3 6 dxc3 Qxd1+ 7 Kxd1)	
12.1 7 ... Bg7	142
12.2 7 ... Nd7	144
12.3 7 ... f6	147
<b>Index of Games</b>	<b>151</b>

# 1

## Building an Opening Repertoire

When I start training a promising youngster, my first concern is that he/she establish a sound and appropriate opening repertoire. Of course, for ultimate success in chess it is impossible to do without a knowledge of endgame principles and middlegame strategy and tactics. Still, the initial phase is the opening and it is obviously in order to start off the game on the right foot.

The first and most important principle in selecting an opening repertoire is to make sure that it agrees with one's chess interests, playing style and work habits. If a person enjoys sharp tactics, has the time and interest to follow opening theory developments worldwide, possesses an excellent memory and likes doing complicated independent analysis — then the “Fischer b-pawn” variation in the Najdorf Sicilian (1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 d6 3 d4 cxd4

4 Nxd4 Nf6 5 Nc3 a6 6 Bg5 e6 7 f4 Qb6) is for him, whether with White or Black! If main line strategic play is his interest, then for either White or Black, he will feel comfortable in the Orthodox Defense of the Queen's Gambit Declined (1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Nf3 Be7 5 Bg5). But someone who, though strategically inclined, prefers to be on less analyzed ground, will choose as White in the QGD 5 Bf4 rather than the standard 5 Bg5. Greatest success will come when one is true to himself. If there is a choice between playing something which you like and something which you dislike but feel that your opponent will dislike even more, stick to your likes! Your practical results will improve when you play what you know, like and have confidence in.

As a very broad generalization it can be stated that those who like sharp tactics will do better with 1 e4

openings, whereas strategists should choose closed openings (1 d4, 1 c4, 1 Nf3). However, the really important part is to choose the particular variations or sub-variations that agree with you. There are innumerable strategically sound openings in the open games "book" and many ways of playing closed openings sharply. As one example, consider the repertoire of the long time American champion Frank J. Marshall, one of the great attacking players of history. He invariably opened with 1 d4, which, however, was no handicap in having the fur start to fly soon thereafter.

The second important principle in selecting one's opening repertoire is to establish the correct move orders so that you can both achieve your variation, while preventing your opponent from achieving his particular goal. One of the hallmarks of modern master opening play is to use the method of move transpositions to obtain the particular specific subvariation which is desired. The reason why so many inherently "1 d4" players often open with 1 c4 or 1 Nf3 is because they hope that after a *later* d4, they will achieve exactly the variation desired.

Let me give here a typical example. A sharp tactical defense for Black against 1 e4 is the Accelerated Dragon in the Sicilian Defense: 1 ... c5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Nxd4

g6. In Chapter 4 I discuss the strategic 5 c4 Maroczy bind set-up against this. Suppose that against 1 d4 you like to play the King's Indian Defense and in particular the Yugoslav Variation, i.e. an early ... c5. However, your opponent opens with 1 c4. You respond with 1 ... c5 and after 2 Nf3 with 2 ... g6. All looks fine. But now White plays 3 e4! Nc6 4 d4! cxd4 5 Nxd4 and what do we have, except *exactly* our position from the Accelerated Dragon? In other words, Black has been tricked into something which he had no interest or plans in playing. There are some 1 d4 players — GM Portisch for example — who love the position after White's 5th move, but of course would never "risk" playing 1 e4 to try to get it. Instead they play 1 c4 and hope for a chance to transpose.

If Black wants to achieve the most flexible King's Indian type of positions against *closed* openings, these are the first moves he should play:

Against 1 d4:	1 ... Nf6 (prevents 2 e4)
1 c4:	1 ... g6
1 Nf3:	1 ... Nf6 (If 1 ... g6, 2 e4)
1 g3:	1 ... g6

As already stated in the Preface, the major purpose of this book is to present for White an opening reper-

toire which is based on strategic principles *and* where the queens are exchanged early on. This then allows White to concentrate on his strategic objectives without having to worry too much about *his* king's safety. A sound approach for building such a repertoire — whether one plays closed or open systems, or a combination — is discussed in the following paragraphs.

Let us first consider 1 e4 openings. The first question is how to respond to Black's symmetrical 1 ... e5 reply. By far the most strategic opening here is the Ruy Lopez, resulting after 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bb5. Black's most popular and flexible response is 3 ... a6, after which White with 4 Ba4 can keep the "semi-pin" in place. This leads to complex, full play positions, with all pieces remaining on the board for a long time to come. But with 4 Bxc6! White can drastically alter the type of play. The maneuvers now are much more straightforward. In the most common variation White can achieve the exchange of queens in an attractive way. This subvariation of the Ruy Lopez Exchange Variation is considered in depth in Chapter 2.

The Sicilian Defense is currently Black's most popular response to 1 e4. The number of variations employed is so large that three or more books could easily be devoted

just to the Sicilian. One of Black's most important strategic and tactical systems is based on the fianchetto of his KB. This leads either to the Dragon Variation (1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Nxd4 Nf6 5 Nc3 g6) or to the Accelerated Dragon (1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Nxd4). An active, yet strategically healthy, system, often allowing White to reach a superior endgame, is presented in Chapter 3 for the Dragon and in Chapter 4 for the Accelerated Dragon.

Blacks often employ the French Defense because they look forward to beating back premature attacks. A way to cross up this strategy is to choose a positionally based set-up: the Tarrasch Variation (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nd2). Then after 3 ... c5, which is by far the most popular response, White can again head for clarity with 4 exd5 exd5 5 Bb5+. This move order will at worst lead to main lines and can easily give White the opportunity for a faultless queen exchange. The resulting endgames are covered in Chapter 5.

One of the most significant post World War II opening discoveries is the Pirc Defense (1 e4 d6 2 d4 Nf6 3 Nc3 g6), also often called the Yugoslav Defense. Black aims for a complicated, challenge-to-White's-center based approach, similar to the idea of the King's Indian against 1 d4. A simple, solid, trouble-free build-up for White is the Normal

Variation: 4 Nf3 Bg7 5 Be2 0-0 6 0-0, long the favorite of Anatoly Karpov. Black's most thematic plan is to apply pressure against d4 by 6 ... Bg4 7 Be3 Nc6 8 Qd2 e5. Now 9 d5 leads to complicated, unbalanced play and in fact Karpov has preferred this plan. However, in my estimation, Black's counter-chances are fully equal. Yet instead of 9 d5, White can head for a nice endgame type position with 9 dxe5! dxe5 10 Rad1 — as discussed in detail in Chapter 6.

The Pirc's sister defense is the Modern Defense which results after 1 e4 g6. In it Black looks for ways independent of both the Pirc and the King's Indian, in the hope that White will not be familiar with the resultant nuances. An excellent way of keeping full control of the situation from White's side is to employ the Averbakh Variation: 1 e4 g6 2 d4 Bg7 3 c4 d6 4 Nc3. Then if Black chooses the thematic 4 ... e5, White can bring about a favorable endgame with 5 dxe5! dxe5 6 Qxd8+. This is shown in Chapter 7.

For 1 d4 players the first important question is how to handle defenses based on Black's KB fianchetto in a clear consistent way. The basic position arises after 1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 g6. White's most flexible move now is 3 Nc3. If Black desires the King's Indian Defense, he will play 3 ... Bg7. White's "Queen

exchanging" method starts with choosing the Normal Variation with 4 e4 d6 5 Nf3 0-0 6 Be2 and then after the standard 6 ... e5, White plays 7 dxe5! dxe5 8 Qxd8 Rxd8 9 Bg5. Notice the similarity of this plan to that used for the Pirc Defense in Chapter 6. The King's Indian is covered in Chapter 8. If instead of playing 3 ... Bg7, Black chooses 3 ... d5, then the Grünfeld Defense has been reached. This is a very complicated and unbalanced defense. I recommend as the clearest plan against it the "Modern Exchange Variation": 4 Nf3 Bg7 5 cxd5 Nxd5 6 e4. In the currently main line, the queens are exchanged and White has a typical "White edge" — see Chapter 9.

The other class of Indian defenses against 1 d4 have Black playing an early ...e6, with the basic move order: 1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 e6. If White now selects 3 Nc3, Black can attain the rather complicated Nimzo-Indian Defense with 3 ... Bb4. However, if White develops the other Knight first, playing 3 Nf3, the resulting openings are more straightforward. After 3 ... b6 (the Queen's Indian Defense) White responds symmetrically with 4 g3 and in the main line given, again has the opportunity for exchanging maneuvers. These are demonstrated in Chapter 10.

As already discussed earlier in this chapter, White often employs 1 c4

or 1 Nf3 as methods of reaching desired 1 d4 opening variations or — in a few instances — even 1 e4 openings. But there are innumerable transpositional possibilities within the English/Reti systems themselves. A mutually popular set-up is the double fianchetto for both White and Black. The many opportunities for transposition and how White can attain a riskless, pleasant endgame are demonstrated in Chapter 11.

Many modern players like the Grünfeld so much that they aim for

it immediately after White has opened with the English: 1 c4 Nf6 2 Nc3, with Black now playing 2 ... d5. After 3 cxd5 Nxd5 strategists, led by Swedish GM Ulf Andersson, try to keep things clear by playing 4 Nf3 g6 5 e4 and after 5 ... Nxc3 they recapture with the d-pawn, 6 dxc3. The endgame resulting after 6 ... Qxd1+ 7 Kxd1 is very clear and slightly favorable for White. The sharp Grünfeld player will feel like a fish out of water when faced with it. This method comprises Chapter 12.

# 2

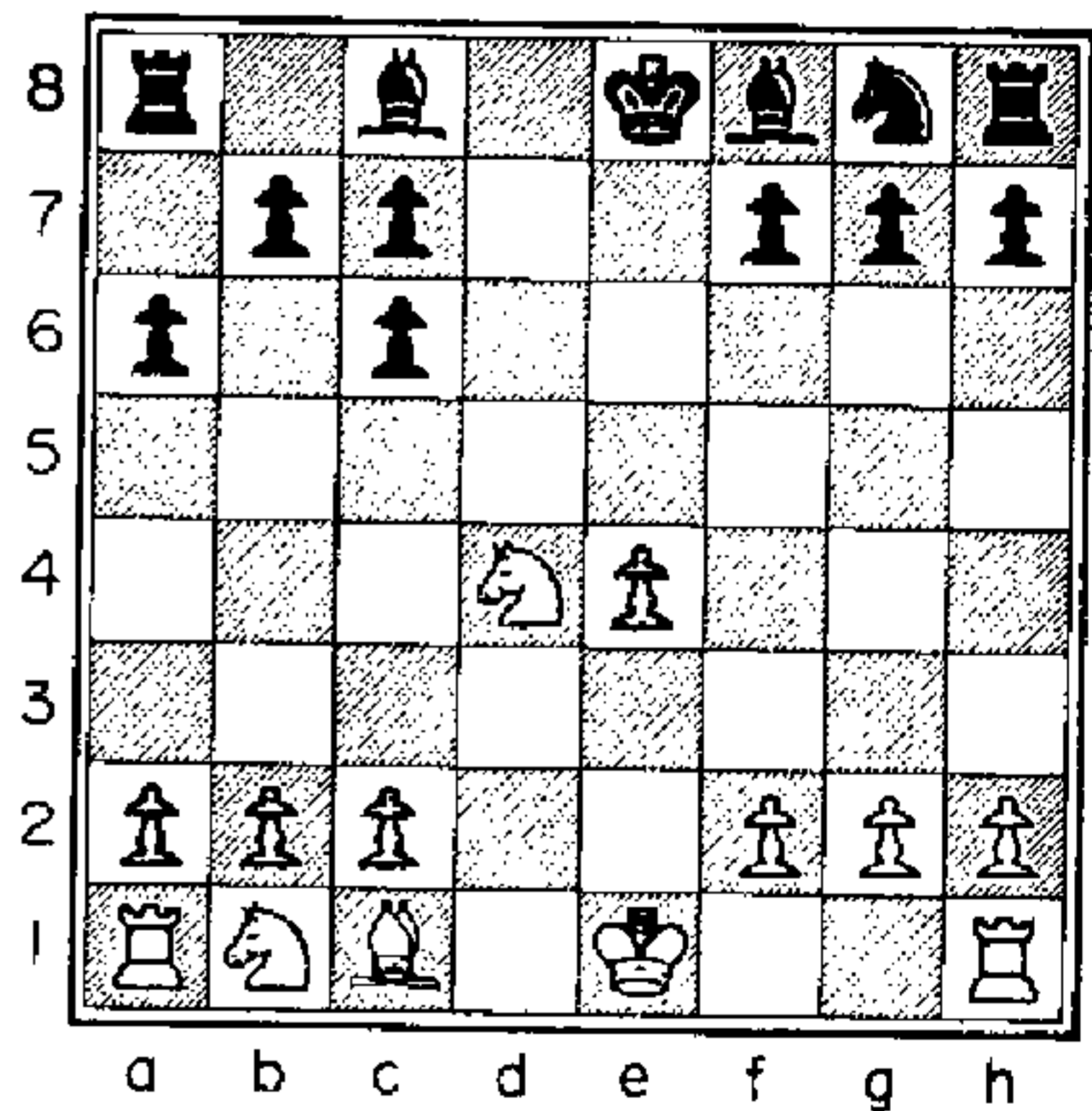
## Ruy Lopez: Exchange Variation

The basic position of the Exchange Variation of the Ruy Lopez results after

1 e4	e5
2 Nf3	Nc6
3 Bb5	a6
4 Bxc6	dxc6

The exchanges on move 4 have brought about a strategically very unbalanced position. White has devalued Black's pawn configuration and hopes that after an imminent d4 (e.g. 5 d4 exd4) he will have a sound kingside pawn majority, whereas Black's extra pawn on the queenside is in the form of a static doubled pawn. Black, on the other hand, has obtained open lines for his Bishop pair and expects that this will provide full compensation for his inferior pawn formation. Around the turn of the century Emanuel Lasker was the leading proponent of

the Exchange Variation and he was partially successful in winning the positions resulting after 5 d4 exd4 6 Qxd4 Qxd4 7 Nxd4.



White does have the superior pawn structure here, but Black can easily complete his development and by quickly castling queenside can bring both his king to safety and the QR into play. Master play convincingly showed that Black's

chances are no worse than White's. Thus the Exchange Variation fairly soon disappeared from tournament play and lay dormant for over 50 years. But in 1966, at the Havana Olympiad, Robert J. Fischer brought the slumbering giant back to active life by playing...

### 5 0-0!

Note that an immediate 5 Nxe5?! is premature because after 5 ... Qd4 Black wins the e-pawn back and thanks to the two bishops even obtains a slight advantage. Yet after the obvious 5 0-0, the threat to Black's e-pawn is real and attempts to neutralize the threat are not so easily carried out. Couldn't anyone else except Fischer have thought of 5 0-0? Well, in fact the Dutch master Barendregt had played it — with success — starting around 1910. Yet the rest of the world paid no attention to it — except for Hobby who quickly grasped its strategic value. Once he was convinced of its tactical soundness, he added it to his opening repertoire.

### 5 ... f6

Protecting the e-pawn in this simple way looks sensible and all of Fischer's Havana opponents played this. But as it became clear that it offers Black no bed of roses, other moves also were tried. By now almost anything reasonable has been investigated, including 5 ... Bg4 6 h3 h5, 5 ... Qd6,

5 ... Bd6, 5 ... Qe7 and 5 ... Ne7. Which is the best defense? There is no consensus of that yet, with personal taste often the decisive factor behind the choice of a particular sub-variation.

### 6 d4! exd4

A reasonable alternative is 6 ... Bg4, after which White can choose retaining the tension with 7 c3 or entering an endgame after 7 dxe5 Qxd1 8 Rxd1. Fischer has played both ways. According to the latest master experience, the endgame offers White more chances for an opening advantage. A recent example of each:

(1) **7 c3:** 7 ... Bd6 8 Be3 Ne7 9 Nbd2 exd4!? 10 cxd4 f5! 11 Qb3 fxe4 and now instead of 12 Ng5?! Nd5 13 Qxb7 0-0 14 Ngxe4 Be2! 15 Rfe1 Bb5 with advantage to Black in Petrushin-Zaharov, USSR 1980, correct is 12 Ne5!. After 12 ... Bxe5 13 dxe5 b6 14 Nxe4 Qd5 the chances are equal.

(2) **7 dxe5:** 7 ... Qxd1 8 Rxd1 fxe5 9 Rd3! Bd6 10 Nbd2 b5 11 h3! Be6 12 b3 Ne7 13 Ng5 Bd7 14 Rf3! c5 15 Nf7 Rf8 16 Nxd6+ cxd6 17 Rd3, Pokojowczyk-Klovans, Polonica Zdroj 1980. The weakness of Black's d-pawn gives White a small, yet comfortable, endgame edge.

### 7 Nxd4!

Much more sophisticated than 7 Qxd4. We'll see why in a moment.



7 ... c5

After it became clear that the resulting endgame is unpleasant, attempts were made to keep Black in a middlegame with both 7 ... Bd6 and 7 ... Ne7. Yet it soon became clear that after 7 ... Bd6 8 Qh5+ g6 9 Qf3! or 7 ... Ne7 8 Be3 White's superiority in the middlegame was even more marked than in the endgame.

8 Nb3

The most common move, though also worthy of consideration, is 8 Ne2, as recently played by Yugoslav GM Ljubojevic. The major point of this move is to enable White to oppose Black's ... Bd6 with Bf4. An important example: 8 ... Qxd1 9 Rxd1 Bd7 10 Nbc3 0-0-0 11 Bf4 Ne7 and now instead of the premature 12 Bg3?! Nc6! 13 Nd5 Ne5 14 f4 Nf7 with equality in Ljubojevic-Romanishin, 1979 Riga Interzonal, White could retain a slight plus with 12 Rd2.

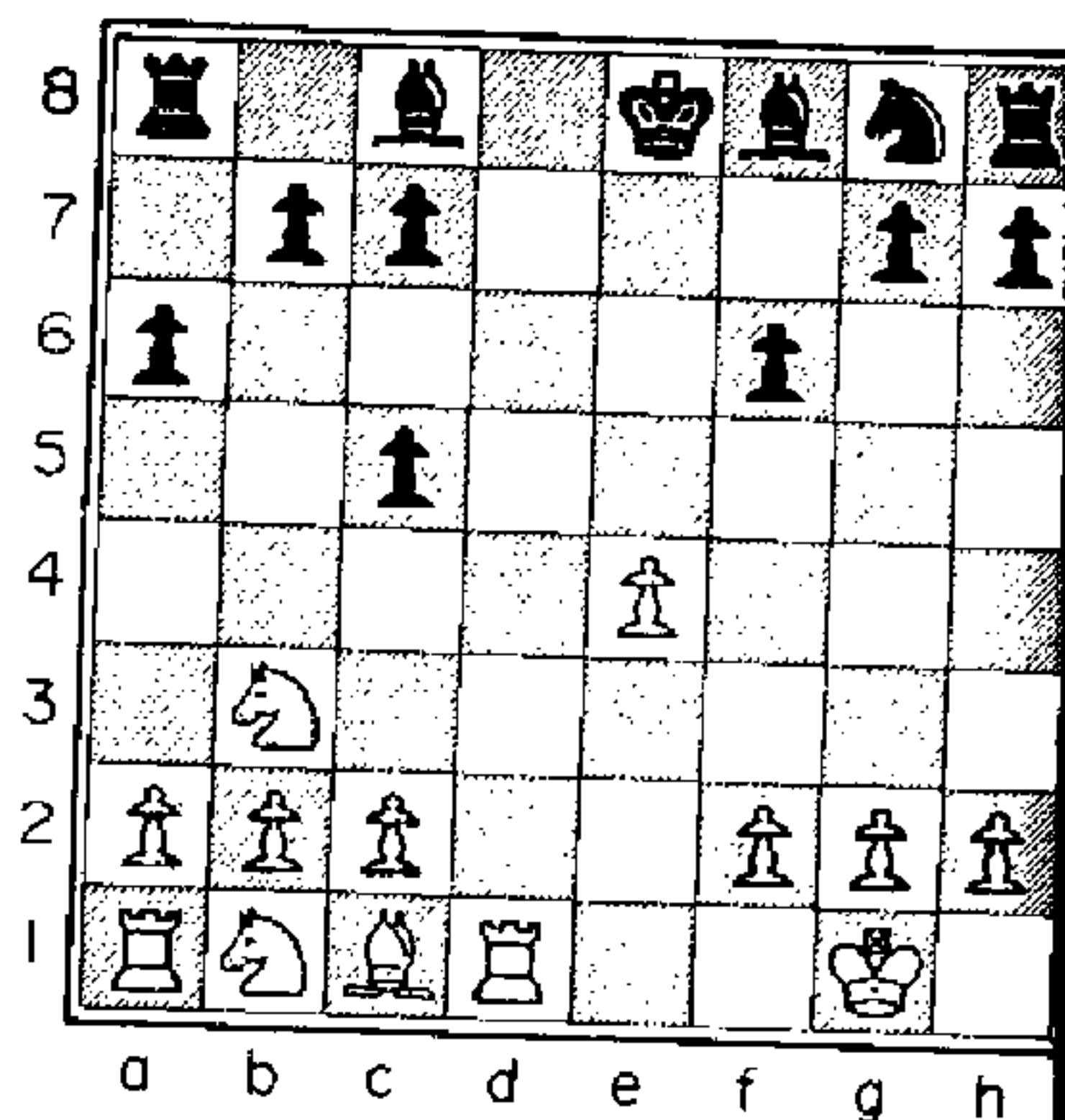
8 ... Qxd1

Here 8 ... Bd6? is tactically refuted by 9 Nxc5! Bxc5 10 Qh5+.

9 Rxd1

(See next diagram)

It is this position which is the hallmark of the Fischer-Barendregt idea. Compare it with Lasker's position of diagram 1. It is clear that White is at least two full tempi



ahead: he is castled and his KR is active on d1. In addition the KN is potentially more active on b3 than on d4. In the meanwhile all that Black has "accomplished" are the anti-developmental moves ... f6 and ... c5.

Are we now in a standard endgame? Not quite, because developmental factors are still of major significance. Yet soon enough we'll be there. Compared to diagram 1 there has been no change in the strategic considerations. White obviously has a sound 4P vs 3P kingside majority. Black must look for his two bishops as compensation. In general White wants to exchange pieces and in particular one of Black's bishops. The ideal endgame for White would be K + P and this would be a theoretical win.

Black should try to complete his development and the following four moves look sensible: 9 ... Bd6, 9 ... Be6, 9 ... Bd7 and 9 ... Bg4.

We'll look at each of these, assisted by full length games so that we can fully appreciate the endgame factors.

## 2.1 THE ORIGINAL 9 ... Bd6: FISCHER-PORTISCH, HAVANA OLYMPIAD 1966

Black's move looks quite logical: he not only puts his KB on its most active square, but also prevents White's 10 Bf4. If it wasn't for White's response, the text would be fully satisfactory.

### 10 Na5!

Again not an invention of Fischer's (it had been played already in Barendregt-Szabo, Marianska Lazne 1961 and Perez-Spassky, Havana 1962) but quickly appreciated by him for its strength. By attacking the b-pawn, White makes it difficult for Black to develop his QB and in addition White threatens the annoying 11 Nc4. Instead, harmless is the routine 10 Nc3, e.g. 10 ... Be6 11 Be3 b6 12 a4 a5 13 Nb5 0-0-0 14 Nxd6+ cxd6 15 Bf4 d5! with equality, Ciocaltea-Gligoric, Hamburg 1965.

### 10 ... b5

With the dual purpose of removing the b-pawn from attack and preventing White's Nc4. The cost, however, is a significant weakening of the queenside which White,

because of his superior development, has an excellent chance to exploit. Nevertheless, the text is the best there is. Immediately losing is the try for tactics with 10 ... Bg4? 11 f3 0-0-0? because of 12 e5! and White wins a piece, Hort-Zelandinov, Havana 1967. It is unclear to me why some theoreticians give preference to 10 ... Nh6. After 11 Bxh6 gxh6 12 Nc4 Be7 13 Nc3 Kf7 14 Nd5 Be6 15 Nxe7 Kxe7 16 Ne3, Bagirov-Keres, Moscow 1967, Black's pawns are in shambles and where is his compensation?

### 11 c4!

White should strike at Black's queenside while the iron is hot, i.e. while White is ahead in development. Clearly inferior now is 11 ... b4?! as that leaves Black's queenside majority in a straight-jacket. One example: 12 Nd2 Kf7 13 Ndb3 f5 14 exf5 Nf6 15 Be3 Ng4 16 Bxc5 Bxh2+ 17 Kf1 Be5 18 f3 with a significant advantage for White in Peshina-Romanishin, USSR 1968.

### 11 ... Ne7 12 Be3 f5

Black correctly tries for some counterplay before White has a chance to pile up against the front c-pawn. Inferior is 12 ... Rb8?! 13 Nd2 Be6 14 Rac1 Kf7 15 Ndb3 Rfd8 16 cxb5 axb5 17 Nxc5 with a

clear advantage to White in Lukin-Kaminsky, USSR 1970.

### 13 Nc3!

Interest in sound, active development is a characteristic of Fischer. According to a later analysis by the Soviet Latvian master Šmits, White can perhaps achieve more with 13 Nb3!?. He gives the following line as proof: 13 ... bxc4 14 Nxc5 Rb8 15 Na3 f4 16 Bd4 Nc6 17 Na4 Rb4 18 Nc3 Nxd4 19 Rxd4 Be5 20 Rd5. This final position is indeed favorable for White, but so are the "Fischer positions". In any case, 13 Nb3!? does deserve a practical test.

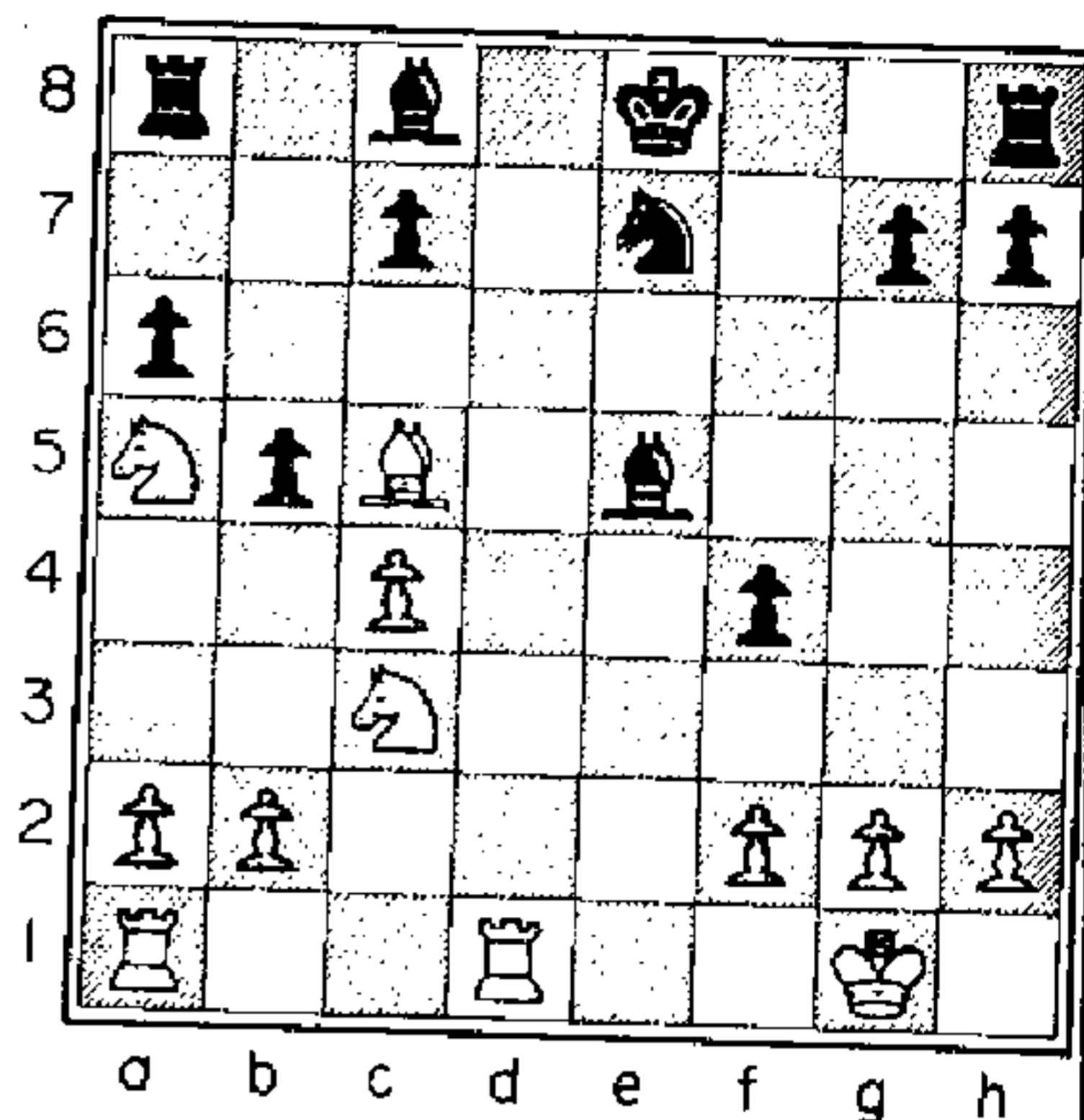
13 ...                    f4  
14 e5                    Bxe5

A serious alternative must be 14 ... fxe3 15 exd6 exf2+ 16 Kxf2 0-0+ 17 Kg1 cxd6 18 Rxd6 Bf5. At first glance Black appears to be out of difficulty, but this is not so, because White is more active and Black's queenside is still weak. With the developmental 19 Re1! White can increase the pressure on Black's position.

### 15 Bxc5

(See next diagram)

The position that Fischer had in mind when playing his 13th move. White has traded his qualitative pawn majority for the advantage of having the superior development in



an *open* position. (Of course the weakness of Black's queenside remains.) At this moment the position is like a middlegame without queens, where White has good attacking chances against Black's king. White's immediate threat is 16 Re1 winning a piece. Black's next move removes a potential strong attacker, though at the cost of removing one of his two bishops.

15 ...                    Bxc3  
16 bxc3                    Ng6

The threat again was 17 Re1. However, the text has the disadvantage of allowing White's knight to become active. Possibly better was 16 ... Kf7!? as in a correspondence game Grodzensky-Nazaretsky, 1973. After 17 Bxe7 Kxe7 18 Rd4 g5 19 Rd5 Kf6! Black was able to just hold on for a very laborious draw on Move 41.

17 Nc6                    Be6?!

As played, this leads to the loss of a pawn for less than no compensation. Black should have played either 17 ... Bd7 or braved the attack with 17 ... bxc4 (White could have prevented this by first playing 17 cxb5).

**18 cxb5            axb5**  
**19 Na7!**

Such a foray against a pawn appears amateurish and Portisch unquestionably underestimated it. Now 19 ... Bd7 is met by 20 Rd4! with the threat 21 Re1 + . Despite its obvious dangers, the best defense was 19 ... Bc4!? (20 Rd4 Rd8!).

**19 ...            Rb8?**  
**20 Rdb1!        Kf7**

Both 20 ... Bc4 and 20 ... Bd7 allow 21 a4.

**21 Nxb5           Rhd8**  
**22 Rb4!           Bxa2**  
**23 Nxc7**

So the skirmishes have ended with White up a passed c-pawn. Not wanting to accept a clearly unpleasant endgame after 23 ... Rxb4, Black prefers to play an even less promising queenless middlegame. It is difficult to criticize this decision, though the actual result is to accelerate the loss.

**23 ...            Rbc8**  
**24 h4!**

Fischer clearly realizes that he can still take advantage of his active

position. Black can't play 24 ... Rxc7? because of 25 Bb6.

**24 ...            Rd2**  
**25 Bb6            f3?**

This desperate push is easily parried. Only the positionally justified 25 ... h5 would have prolonged resistance.

**26 Be3            Re2**  
**27 Nb5            Ra8**

The only defense to the immediate dual threats of 28 Nd6 + and 28 Nd4. Now after 28 Nd4 Black could play 28 ... Bd5! 29 Rxa8 Re1 + 30 Kh2 Bxa8. Therefore Fischer first increases the pressure.

**28 h5            Ne5**  
**29 Rf4 +        Ke7?!**

Heading for the center in this middlegame-type position is suicide. The immediate end could have been postponed by 29 ... Kg8.

**30 Rd1!           Rc8**  
**31 Re4            Kf6**  
**32 Rd6 +        Kf5**  
**33 Rf4 +        Kg5**  
**34 Rxf3 +        Black resigns**

He's two pawns down with more losses to follow.

## 2.2 SPASSKY'S 9 ... Be6

When it became clear that 9 ... Bd6 is unsatisfactory because of 10 Na5!, the interest switched to developing the QB. Its most active

central square is e6, yet theoreticians gave this move short shrift until Spassky rehabilitated it in a *practical* game.

**10 Bf4 c4!**

In deciding on whether or not to trust the evaluation of a line as presented in a book of openings, make sure that the line given as representative actually makes at least some strategic sense. For instance, many books (including ECO I) dismiss 9 ... Be6 by continuing here 10 ... Bxb3 11 axb3 Bd6 12 Bxd6 Rd8 13 Na3 cxd6 14 Nc4 and the chronic weakness of the backward d-pawn gives White a clear advantage. If White doesn't want to undouble Black's pawns he can also keep an edge with 12 Be3. But the correct question is how can 10 ... Bxb3?! be the right idea behind 9 ... Be6? Why should Black rush to exchange off his *only* developed piece, thereby also negating the potential two bishop advantage? Especially as Black gains not a thing from such an exchange!

**11 Nd4**

Spassky's plan is designed to neutralize this obvious move. To keep an opening advantage White must resort to the less obvious 11 Na5!, as recommended by Pachman. After 11 ... b6 12 Nc6 Bd7 13 Nd4 0-0-0 14 Nc3 White has succeeded

in de-activating Black's QB and has the typical advantage characteristic of this endgame.

**11 ... 0-0-0!**

The tactical point behind Spassky's idea — because of the pin on the knight Black gets in the desired queenside castling. Of course White can't try the tactical 12 Bxc7 (12 ... Kxc7?? 13 Nxe6+) because 12 ... Rxd4! 13 Rxd4 Kxc7 gains material for Black.

**12 Nc3 Bf7**  
**13 Nf5**

There is nothing better. The active 13 Nd5?! runs into difficulties because of pins along the d-file after 13 ... Bc5!. In Smuda-Smejka Bratislava 1974 Black was better after the subsequent 14 Nf5 Bxd5 15 exd5 g6 16 Ng7 Ne7 17 Ne6 Rxd5.

After the text, Black has two logical ways to continue. Both lead to interesting and important endgames.

2.21 13 ... Re8:  
Spiridonov-Spassky,  
Sochi 1973

Understandably enough, Spassky is interested in a win and he hopes to achieve this by keeping the position as complicated as possible.

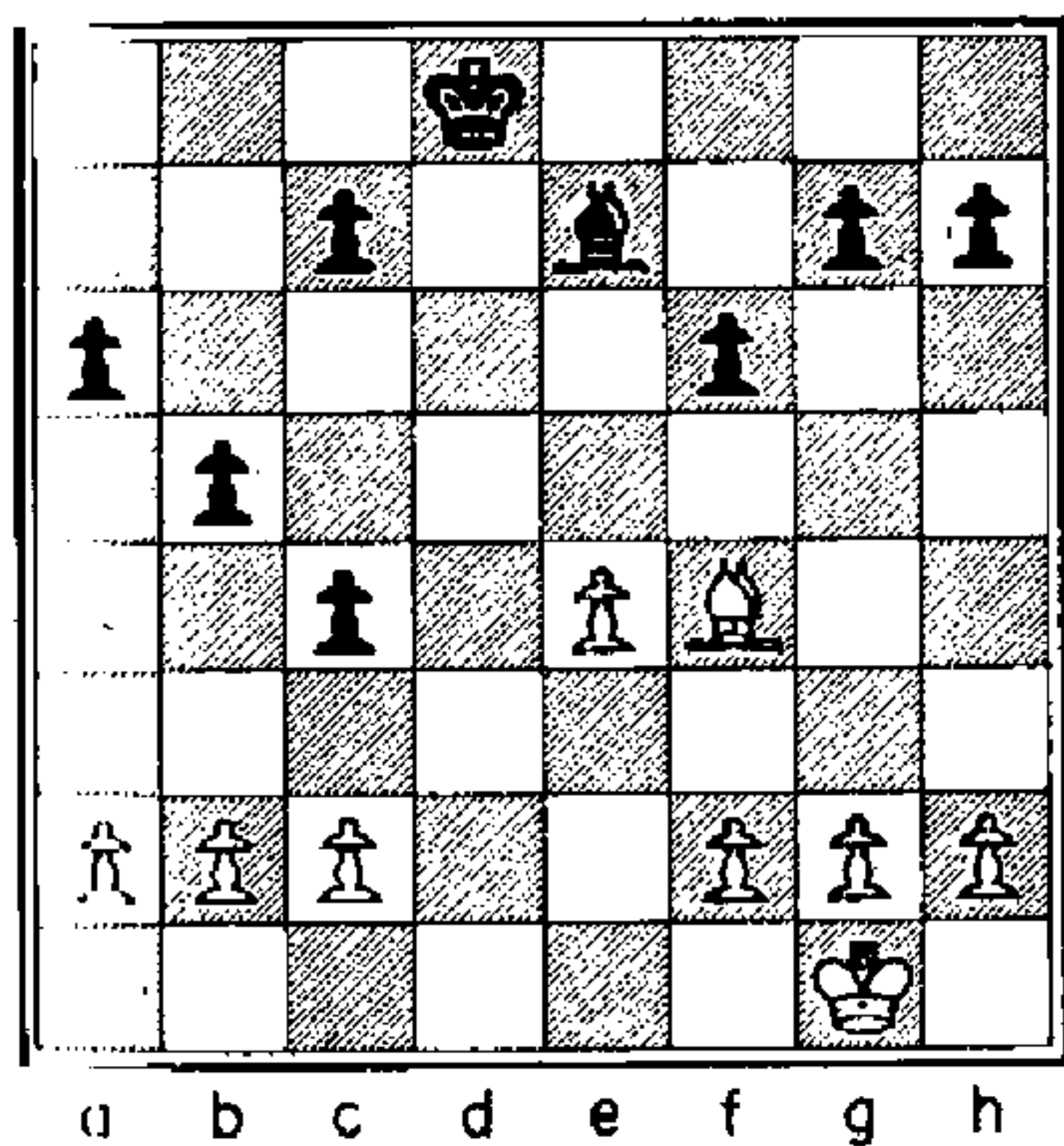
**14 Rd2 Ne7**  
**15 Nxe7+ Bxe7**  
**16 Rad1 Rd8**

Because of White's domination of the d-file and the potential threat of Rd7, Black must oppose the rooks. Yet with his kingside development now complete, he can do this on comfortable terms.

17 Nd5            Bxd5  
18 Rxd5            b5!

As White is intent on exchanging rooks anyway, Black utilizes this time in mobilizing his queenside pawns.

19 Rxd8+        Rxd8  
20 Rxd8+        Kxd8



A characteristic and important endgame position from the Ruy Lopez Exchange Variation. Based on purely static pawn configuration considerations, White should be much better — after all he has the sound 4P vs. 3P kingside majority. Yet there are a number of dynamic factors favorable to Black: his

queenside pawn majority has been activated while White's on the kingside is still dormant and Black's king is already well centralized. Over-all I would rate the chances about equal. White now correctly starts to mobilize his kingside.

21 Be3            a5  
22 f4            a4  
23 Kf2            Kd7  
24 g4?!

Playing the pawns without provision for the full participation of the king is in general poor practice. There is here a particular problem. Correct was the obvious 24 Kf3 with balanced chances.

24 ...            g5!

By undermining the stability of White's pawn chain, Black greatly increases the opportunities for active work for his king + bishop.

25 e5?!

This just serves to oil Black's K + B. White's position is somewhat unpleasant already and his first objective should have been to establish for defensive purposes a sound pawn set-up. Therefore logical was 25 f5! and after 25 ... b4, 26 b3!

25 ...            gxf4  
26 Bxf4        Ke6!  
27 exf6        Bxf6  
28 Bc1?!

Hardly an attractive spot for the bishop. It is true that 28 Bxc7? Bxb2 and 28 c3? a3! were worse, but after the logical 28 b3! the position should be holdable.

28 ...	Kd5
29 Kf3	b4
30 g5?!	

Here too 30 b3 looks sounder. Because Black's bishop is the wrong color for his h-pawn, White can draw if he succeeds in "exchanging" his Q-side pawns + bishop for Black's queenside pawns.

30 ...	Be5
31 h4	b3!
32 axb3	cxb3
33 cxb3	axb3

Black now has a very favorable queenside pawn formation, with White's bishop stuck to protecting his b-pawn. Obviously White's only chance is the threat of a passed pawn on the kingside.

34 h5	Bg7
35 g6??	

It is possible that White doesn't have a theoretically satisfactory defense, but by exchanging off a pair of pawns while leaving himself with an easily stoppable g-pawn, he simply ensures the loss. An absolute necessity was 35 Kf4! having in mind counterplay opportunities such as 35 ... Kd4 36 Kf5 Kd3 37 h6!

Bd4 38 g6! hxg6+ 39 Kxg6 K  
40 Bg5 Bxb2 41 h7!. And if Black retreats with 35 ... Ke6, White can activate his king with 36 Ke4.

35 ...	h6??
--------	------

A difficult to comprehend error. The only "logic" behind it is that it prevents the exchange of a pawn. But the disadvantages are severe. White's g-pawn is now secure and — most importantly — Black's h-pawn now is as weak as White's b-pawn. Correct was the simple 35 ... hxg6 36 hxg6 c5. Sokolov then gives the following convincing win for Black: 37 Ke2 c4 38 Kf3 (38 Bd2 Bxb2 39 Bh6 Ke6 is obviously hopeless) 38 ... Ke5 39 Bd2 Kf4 40 Bc1 Bd4! 41 Ke2 Kxg6 42 Kf3 Kf5 (Black has won the g-pawn while retaining the active king. Thanks to *zugzwang* he will penetrate further) 43 Ke2 Ke4 44 Ke1 Kd3 45 Kd1 Bg4 46 Ke1 Kc2 etc.

36 Ke2!	c5
37 Bd2!	c4

Acquiescing to the draw. There is nothing in 37 ... Ke6 38 Kd3. Trickier is 37 ... Bxb2 38 Bxh6 Ke6 39 Kd4 Bd4 40 Bc1 Kd5!? (Or 40 ... b3 41 Bxb2 Bxb2 42 Kc4 Bd4 43 g7 Kf4 44 h6 and the pawns hold the king while White's king binds down the bishop.) 41 h6 c4+ 42 Ke2 Ke4 43 g7! Kf7 44 Kd2 b2 45 Bxb2 Bxb2 46 Kc2 though again Black will not be able to make any progress.

38 Bc3            Bxc3  
 39 bxc3           Ke6 Draw

After 40 Kd2 each king is bound to the respective passed pawn.

2.22 13 ... Rxd1+ :  
 Pinter-Smejkal,  
 Budapest 1975

Black feels that the best way of neutralizing White's edge in development is to exchange a pair of rooks, followed by development of his King-side.

14 Rxd1           Ne7  
 15 Ne3

With 15 Nxe7+ Bxe7 16 Nd5 White could have obtained the type of position reached in the previous game. He feels, however, that thanks to his superior development he can go for more. This will be shown to be not true.

15 ...            Ng6  
 16 Bg3            h5!  
 17 Ncd5?!

By attacking both c-pawns simultaneously White hopes to win one of them. Yet Black easily shows that this is not to be. Therefore White should have been satisfied with the modest 17 h3 (17 ... h4) or with 17 Ned5 (17 ... Ne5). In either case a dynamic position with equal chances would have resulted.

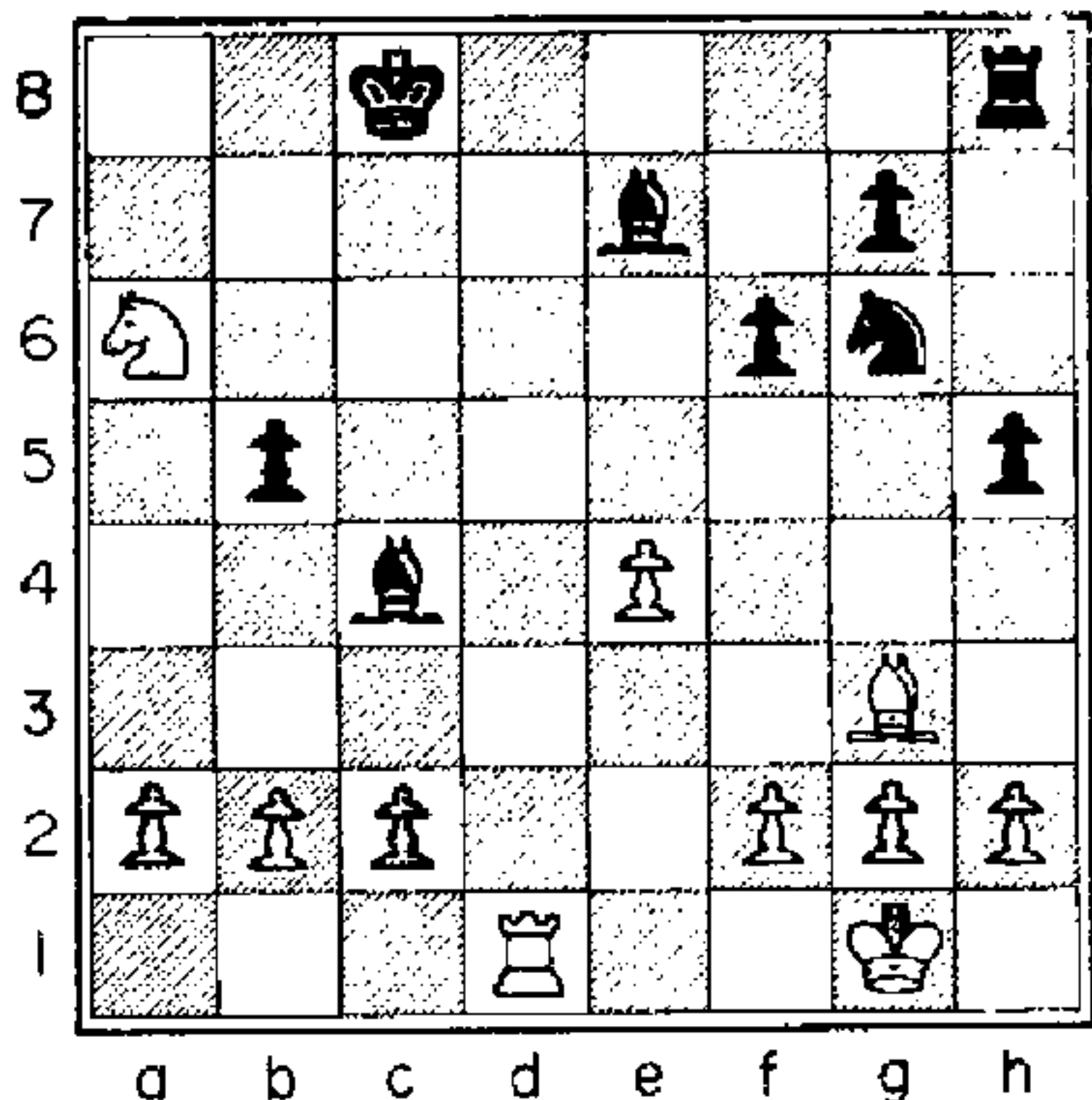
17 ...            Bc5!  
 18 Nxc4?

White's position already is somewhat unpleasant because Black has a very active position, but why lose/sacrifice a piece? The obvious 18 h3 was correct with Black only slightly better. Of course 18 Bxc7?? also loses a piece: 18 ... Bxe3 19 fxe3 Bxd5 20 Rxd5 Kxc7.

18 ...            b5

If White now plays 19 Na5, Black wins a piece after 19 ... Bxd5! 20 Rxd5 Bb6 21 Nb3 h4. The refutation of 19 Nce3 is equally elementary: 19 ... h4 20 Bf4 c6. Since a piece must be lost, White correctly tries to get as much material as possible for it.

19 Nxc7!           Bxc4  
 20 Nxa6            Be7



It is time to take stock of what the complications have wrought. We are in an endgame where White has three pawns for the missing piece.



Three pawns are sufficient static compensation and often in routine endgame positions the pawns are even superior to the piece. However, this is a most non-routine position. As is obvious, Black's pieces are very active, while White's N + B are in some potential danger. Most importantly, there is no prospect that White's pawns will be able to accomplish something of offensive value. The best that White can hope for is that his pawns will have defensive strength, i.e. they won't be lost.

Over-all Black is significantly better, though a 100% theoretical win is uncertain. Whatever, the technical difficulties in gaining the win are considerable.

**21 b3                      Be2!**  
**22 Rd2**

White must try to keep Black's pieces at bay. Inferior is 22 Re1?! because of 22 ... Rd8! and Black has full control of the d-file.

**22 ...                      Rd8!**

After the exchange of rooks, Black's light square bishop will be in a great position to attack White's queenside pawns.

**23 Rxd8 +                  Kxd8**  
**24 Bc7 +                    Kc8**  
**25 Ba5                      Bd1**  
**26 c3                        Bc2**  
**27 f3                        Bb1**  
**28 Bb4!?**

It has become quite clear that White must lose a pawn. With the text move White is able to set up formation on the queenside where Black's king can not penetrate and where Black's remaining bishop — the QB — will have an absolute minimum of offensive punch. This situation gives White good practical chances for the draw.

**28 ...                      Kb7!**

Stronger than 28 ... Bxa2 29 Bxe7 Nxe7 30 Nc5 which would have left White with a nimble knight, rather than the impotent bishop now remaining.

**29 Nc5 +                    Bxc5**  
**30 Bxc5                      Bxa2**  
**31 b4**

The defensive position that White had in mind. Black's king can not penetrate into the queenside (or anyplace else for that matter) and White can protect the c-pawn from Black's knight. To win Black must somehow create a breakthrough on the kingside, but without exchanging too many pawns. The following play is both interesting and instructive.

**31 ...                      Kc6**  
**32 Kf2                      Nf4**  
**33 Be3                      Ng6**  
**34 Bc5                      Kd7**  
**35 Ke3                      Ne5**  
**36 Bf8                      g6**

**37 Bc5            Bc4**  
**38 Bd4            Ke6**  
**39 Kf4?!**

There is nothing that White can do and any attempts at action will boomerang. Keeping the status quo with 39 Kf2 etc. was the best policy.

**39 ...            Bf1**  
**40 Bxe5**

As 40 Kg3 Nd3 is very unattractive, White's choice is between the text and 40 g3. After the latter White's f-pawn would be vulnerable and Black could proceed with 40 ... Nc4! followed by ... Be2, Bd1 and Nd2. The text does have the advantage of containing an interesting strategic trap.

**40 ...            fxe5+**  
**41 Kg3**

Note that Black's bishop is still impotent and Black's king has no chance of entering on the queenside. To win Black's king has to penetrate via the kingside. Therefore Black must make sure that the kingside pawn formation remains such that his king is not blocked out. A logical starting point now was 41 ... h4+! 42 Kf2 Bc4. Black would then play his king to f4 to force g3, exchange pawns, play his king to h5 and then advance the g-pawn to g4. Then the way would be free for Black's king to penetrate.

**41 ...            Kf6?**  
**42 Kf2            Bc4**  
**43 h4!**

Now Black's king can be kept out and the position is drawn.

**43 ...            g5**  
**44 g3            g4**

Black's king still can't penetrate so the only practical question now is whether Black's bishop can win White's e-pawn. Black on his part is not about to play 45 ... gxf3 because after 46 Kxf3 White's king has three potential squares (d3, e3, f3) from which to protect the e-pawn and thus Black has no hope of forcing White into *zugzwang*. For Black to hope to win he must first force White to play fxf3 as this then gives Black's pawn access to f3 and therefore takes this square from White's king. But this by itself isn't yet sufficient for the win. Black's bishop must also be able to attack the e-pawn from b1 (or c2) as this then takes away d3 from the king and because of *zugzwang* White's king will have to give up the e3 square. Note that Black can not win by putting his bishop on f3, because then White's king can shuttle between e3 and d3. With this background in mind, White's drawing method is not difficult to find: 45 Ke3 Ba2 (After 45 ... Bb3 White can play first 46 Ke2 or can continue with 46 fxf3 hxg3 47 Kd2!.) 46 Ke2

Bb1 47 Ke3 Bc2 48 Ke2 Kg6! 49 Ke3  
Bd1 50 fxg4 (finally forced)  
50 ... hxg4! 51 Kd2 Bb3 52 Kc1!.  
White's king can prevent Black's  
bishop from getting to b1 or c2 and  
therefore Black can make no pro-  
gress.

### 45 fxg4??

In light of the previous discus-  
sion, this move is chessically incom-  
prehensible.

45 ...	hxg4
46 Ke3	Ba2
47 c4	

Desperation. After the "normal"  
47 Kd3 Bb1+ 48 Ke3 Bc2 White is  
in *zugzwang* and must lose the  
e-pawn.

47 ...	bxc4!
--------	-------

But not 47 ... Bxc4? 48 Kd2! Ba2  
49 Kc2 with a draw! White's c-pawn  
is not at all important in the posi-  
tion, but preventing Black's bishop  
from getting to b1/c2 is.

48 b5	Ke7
49 h5	c3
White	
resigns	

After 50 h6 Bg8 51 Kd3 Bh7  
52 Kxc3 Bxe4 53 Kb4 Kd6 54 Ka5  
Kc7 55 Ka6 Kb8! White's pawns are  
stopped and Black's passed e-pawn  
will win.

## 2.3 THE STANDARD

### 9 ... Bd7

Black's most common continua-  
tion has been the text whereby he  
hopes to immediately complete his  
queenside development by castling  
there.

### 10 Bf4!

Of course other moves also are  
playable (e.g. 10 Nc3, 10 a4, 10 c4),  
yet this active developmental one  
offers the best promise of some  
advantage.

10 ...	0-0-0
11 Nc3	

White's prospects now are bright:  
his development is complete and  
12 Nd5 is a definite threat. How  
should Black defend? The normal  
11 ... Be6 and the "attacking"  
11 ... c4 will be covered in the  
illustrative games. Two other  
reasonable looking possibilities are:  
(1) 11 ... g5?! 12 Bg3 Be6  
13 Rxd8+ Kxd8 14 Rd1+ Kc8  
15 Nd5 Bxd5 16 Rxd5 Nh6 17 f3 b6  
18 Nd2 Nf7 19 Nc4 Be7 20 Kf1,  
O'Kelly-Westerinen, Malaga 1967.  
The additional weakness created by  
11 ... g5?! means that Black has  
even greater difficulties than in the  
"normal" line.

(2) 11 ... Re8? 12 Nd5! Bc6  
(Black's position is also dismal after  
12 ... Rxe4 13 Bxc7 or 12 ... Bd6  
13 Bxd6 cxd6 14 Nb6+ Kc7 15 Nxd7

Kxd7 16 Rd2! followed by 17 Rad1.)  
 13 Nxc7 Rxe4 14 f3!! Re2 (After  
 14 ... Rxf4 15 Ne6 Black loses the  
 exchange.) 15 Na8! b5 16 Nb6+  
 Kb7 17 Nd7 Bxd7 18 Rxd7+ ,  
 Barendregt-Sliwa, Marianske Lazne  
 1961 and Black resigned after  
 18 ... Kc6 19 Rc7+ Kb6 20 Rc8 Nh6  
 21 Rb8+ . After 21 ... Kc6 22 Rd1!  
 or 21 ... Ka7 22 Na5! Re6 23 Rd1 his  
 situation is hopeless.

17 Rxd6+ Kxa5 18 Nc5 and White  
 recovers the piece with a winning  
 advantage. Note how the  
 weaknesses of Black's queenside  
 show up in these variations. Black  
 therefore tries an indirect defense,  
 but it also only holds a few moves.

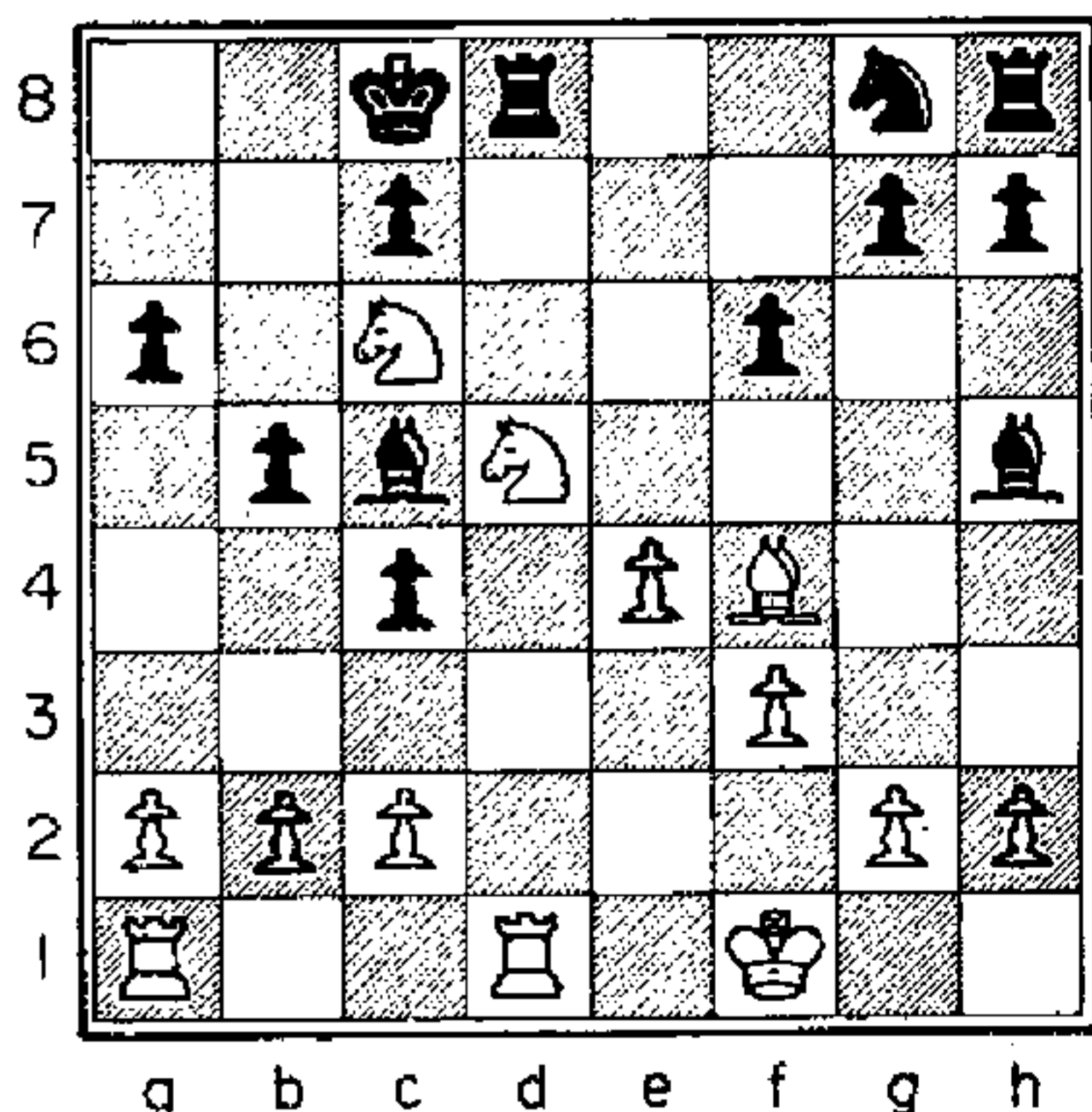
- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| <b>13 ...</b>  | <b>Bg4</b>  |
| <b>14 f3</b>   | <b>Bc5+</b> |
| <b>15 Kf1</b>  | <b>Bh5</b>  |
| <b>16 Nc6!</b> |             |

2.31 11 ... c4?: Ribli-Medina,  
 Wijk aan Zee II 1972

This attacking move worked out  
 well as part of the system with  
 Spassky's 9 ... Be6. Yet here the  
 result is significantly worse,  
 because Black is a tempo or so  
 behind. The dividing line between  
 whether a position weakening move  
 is playable or not (i.e. in positions  
 where that side is already behind in  
 development) is a very thin one.  
 Here Black is on the wrong side of  
 the line.

- |                |           |
|----------------|-----------|
| <b>12 Na5!</b> | <b>b5</b> |
| <b>13 Nd5</b>  |           |

Black's last was forced to protect  
 the forward c-pawn but how is he to  
 guard his back c-pawn? Advancing  
 it, e.g. 13 ... c6?? allows 14 Nb6  
 mate. Direct defense with  
 13 ... Bd6 leads to the following  
 untenable situation: 14 Bxd6 cxd6  
 15 Nb4! Kc7 16 Nxa6+! Kb6



There was nothing wrong with  
 16 Bxc7, but the text is even  
 stronger because it brings in  
 another piece to swarm over Black's  
 position. The fundamental  
 weaknesses in Black's queenside  
 have come home to roost with  
 vengeance. Always be very careful  
 with pawn pushes and particularly  
 when already behind in develop-  
 ment!

- |                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| <b>16 ...</b>   | <b>Rd7</b> |
| <b>17 Nxc7!</b> |            |

The tactical justification behind the logic of White's 16th. If now 17 ... Rxc7 18 Rd8+ Kb7 19 Na5+ Kb6 20 Rb8+ Kxa5 21 Bxc7+ Ka4 22 a3! (Florian) and White wins easily as he is threatening 23 Ra8 whereas Black is playing without his KN + KR. Black's response, acquiescing to a lost position two pawns down, is no better. Yet, understandably he was reluctant to resign so soon.

<b>17 ...</b>	<b>Ne7</b>
<b>18 Nxa6</b>	<b>Bb6</b>
<b>19 Rxd7</b>	<b>Kxd7</b>
<b>20 Nab8+</b>	

White's knights have most unusual locations, yet they are quite safe and White is two solid pawns up.

<b>20 ...</b>	<b>Ke6</b>
<b>21 Rd1</b>	<b>Nc8</b>
<b>22 Rd5</b>	<b>g5</b>
<b>23 Rxb5</b>	<b>Bg6</b>
<b>24 Bg3</b>	<b>h5</b>
<b>25 a4!</b>	

"Passed pawns must be pushed" is also the right motto when three pawns up! Black could have resigned here in clear conscience.

<b>25 ...</b>	<b>h4</b>
<b>26 Bf2</b>	<b>Bxf2</b>
<b>27 Kxf2</b>	<b>Nd6</b>
<b>28 Rb6</b>	<b>f5</b>
<b>29 Nd4+</b>	
<b>Black resigns</b>	

If 29 ... Ke5, it's mate after 30 Nd7+! Kxd4 31 Rxd6.

2.32 11 ... Be6:  
Browne-Hübner,  
Wijk aan Zee 1975

Because nothing else is playable, this defensive/exchanging move is forced. However, Black will wind up at least one tempo behind the Spiridonov-Spassky game.

<b>12 Rxd8+</b>	<b>Kxd8</b>
<b>13 Rd1+</b>	

Why not? Some books give preference to an immediate 13 a4 but it is unclear to me why White should want to have his queenside pawn formation devalued after 13 ... Bxb3, especially as he can have the same basic endgame with his queenside still intact.

<b>13 ...</b>	<b>Kc8</b>
<b>14 Nd5</b>	<b>Bxd5</b>
<b>15 Rxd5</b>	

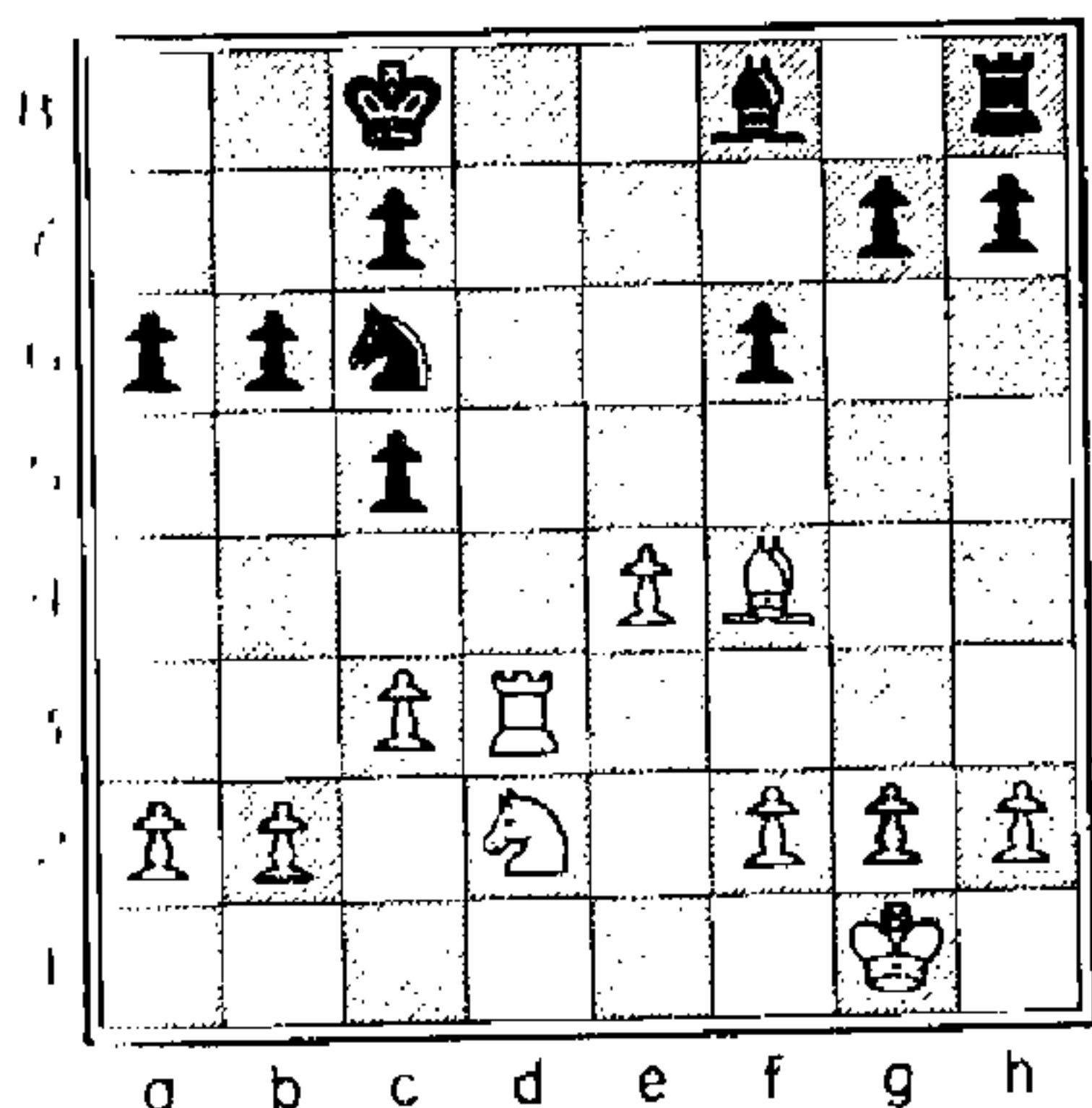
To keep his advantage White must retain his kingside pawn majority. Only equality is offered by 15 exd5?! Bd6!.

<b>15 ...</b>	<b>b6</b>
<b>16 Nd2</b>	

Obviously the knight now had nothing to do on b3.

<b>16 ...</b>	<b>Ne7</b>
<b>17 Rd3</b>	<b>Nc6</b>
<b>18 c3</b>	

(See next diagram)



(Quite clearly we are in an endgame and this endgame is favorable to White: he's ahead in development, has the superior pawn formation and the superior bishop. The best that Black can hope for is a laborious draw — an excellent practical situation for White.

**18 ... Nd8?**

In comparison to Spiridonov-passky, Black suffers from not having mobilized his queenside pawns and there is no good opportunity for getting this done because e.g. 18 ... b5 is met by 19 b3! and all that Black has "achieved" is a weak front c-pawn. Nevertheless, the text is a complete waste of time as the coming regrouping achieves nothing. Black's best was to complete development with 18 ... Be7.

**19 Be3! Bd6**  
**20 f4 Ne6**  
**21 g3 Rd8?!**

Exchanging rooks is in White's interest as he then has an easier time making progress on the kingside. Instead Black should put some pressure on the e-pawn with 21 ... Re8. However, unsatisfactory is the active 21 ... g5?! because of 22 e5! gxf4 (Or 22 ... fxe5 23 fxg5 followed by 24 Ne4.) 23 exd6 fxe3 24 Rxe3, with Black's f-pawn now a chronic weakness.

**22 h4 Bf8?!**

Here and on move 24 Black should play ... h5. White on his part should have played the immediate 24 g4!.

**23 Rxd8+ Nxd8**  
**24 Kf2?! Kd7?!**  
**25 g4!**

White has a big edge now. His kingside majority is well mobilized while Black is nowhere on the queenside. Again a 25 ... b5 is parried by 26 b3.

**25 ... Nf7**  
**26 g5! Bd6**  
**27 Kf3 Bf8**  
**28 Nf1 Nd6**  
**29 Ng3 Nc4**  
**30 Bc1 Ke6**  
**31 Kg4 b5**  
**32 Nh5?!**

Because of time trouble White's play now becomes inexact with the text giving Black the chance for an exchanging combination. As

pointed out by Browne, the accurate plan was 32 b3! Nb6 33 f5+ Kf7 34 h5!, followed by 35 h6. That would undermine Black's kingside pawn base and give White a won position.

<b>32 ...</b>	<b>Nd6!</b>
<b>33 Ng3</b>	<b>Nxe4</b>
<b>34 Nxe4</b>	<b>f5+</b>
<b>35 Kf3</b>	<b>fxe4+</b>
<b>36 Kxe4</b>	<b>g6</b>
<b>37 Be3?</b>	

This could throw away all winning chances. It was necessary to stymie Black's queenside with 37 b3! followed by 38 c4, as later in the game. Black was in no position to respond with 37 ... c4? because 38 bxc4 bxc4 39 Kd4 wins: 39 ... Kf5 40 Kxc4 Kg4 41 Kd5 Kxh4 42 Kc6 Bd6 43 c4 Kg4 44 c5 Bxf4 45 Bxf4 Kxf4 46 Kxc7 (Browne).

**37 ... Bd6??**

A major strategic blunder. Here was Black's first (and last!) chance for the indicated 37 ... c4!. Black's position then is fully defensible.

**38 b3!**

All is well again as White can now immobilize Black's queenside majority.

<b>38 ...</b>	<b>Bf8</b>
<b>39 c4</b>	<b>b4</b>
<b>40 Bf2</b>	<b>Bd6</b>
<b>41 Bg3</b>	<b>Bf8</b>

<b>42 Bf2</b>	<b>Bd6</b>
<b>43 Be3</b>	

Of course this endgame is still favorable to White: he has the more active king, superior bishop and pawn formation. Yet to win it will require a Herculean effort because Black's bishop and king are just able to guard all weak spots. White's progress will be slow as if measured in fractions of an inch for each step forward. The first step is to activate his bishop while shunting Black's king off to some side. White achieves this with some instructive bishop tempo maneuvers. Note that Black's king must remain on e6 as long as White's is on e4.

<b>43 ...</b>	<b>Bf8</b>
<b>44 Bc1!</b>	<b>Bg7</b>
<b>45 Bd2!</b>	<b>Bf8</b>
<b>46 Be3!</b>	<b>Bd6</b>
<b>47 Bc1!</b>	<b>Bf8</b>
<b>48 Bb2</b>	<b>Bd6</b>
<b>49 Bg7</b>	<b>c6</b>
<b>50 Bb2</b>	

The first step has been accomplished: White's bishop controls the major central diagonal. The next step is to further mobilize the kingside pawns.

<b>50 ...</b>	<b>Bb8</b>
<b>51 h5!</b>	<b>Bc7</b>

Not 51 ... gxh5? 52 f5+ and White's king will walk over to win Black's forward h-pawn and have then an easily won endgame.

52 h6!

And not 52 hxg6?! which by exchanging a pair of pawns would lighten Black's defensive task. After the text White has his pawns in excellent position for a potential breakthrough via f5. As his next step White tries to get at Black's front c-pawn by maneuvering his bishop around the side and back of

52 ... Bb8  
 53 Bh8 Bd6  
 54 Bg7 Bc7  
 55 Bf6 Bd6  
 56 Bd8 Bb8  
 57 Ba5 Bd6

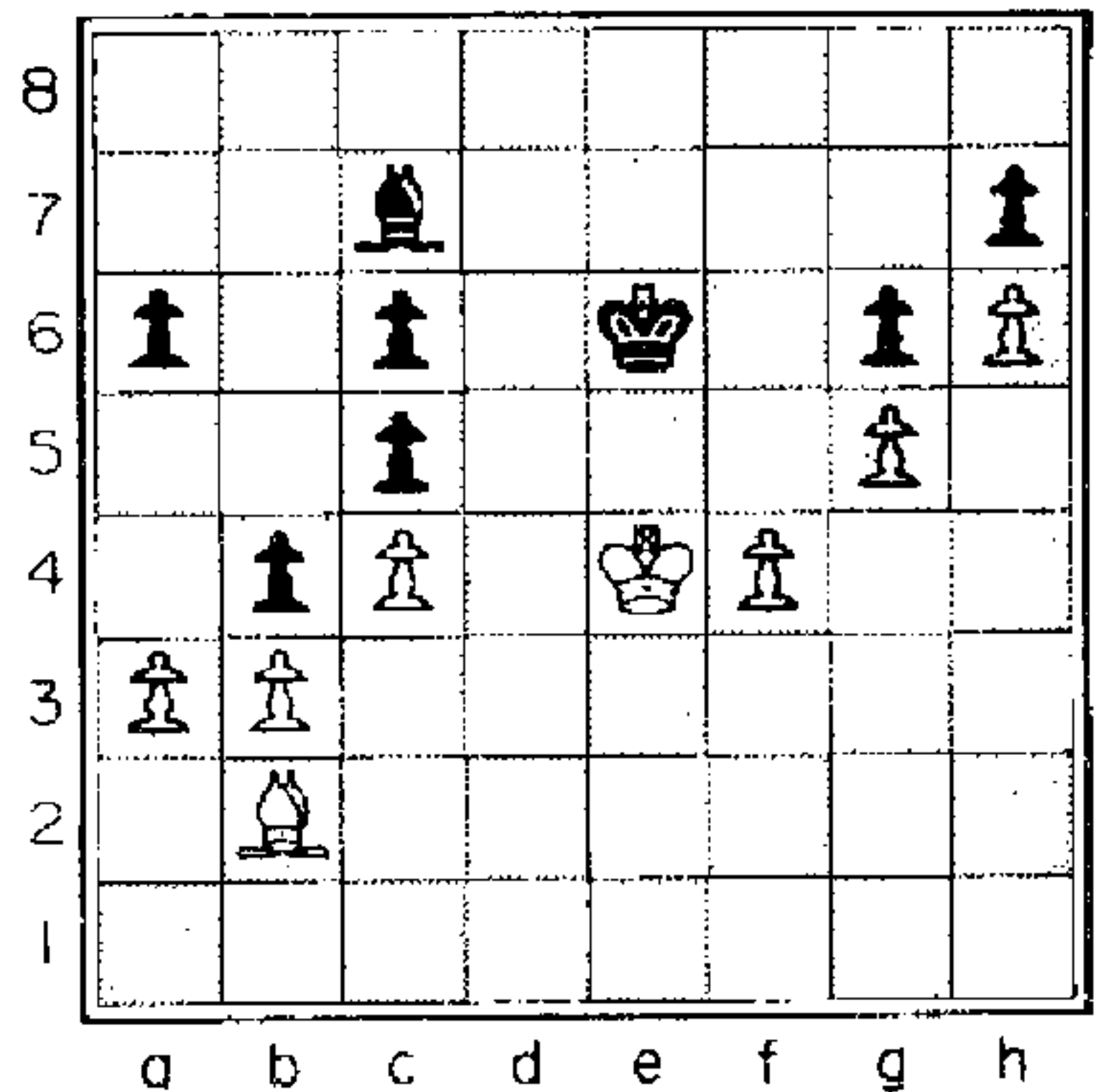
After 57 ... Ba7?? 58 Bc7 Black's bishop would be stalemated and after 58 ... Kd7 White would win (see 1915!).

58 Bb6 Be7  
 59 Bc7 Kd7  
 60 Bb8 Ke6  
 61 Be5 Bd8!

Again Black must watch where he puts his bishop. Thus 61 ... Bf8? allows 62 f5+! gxf5 63 Kf4 and White wins. If 63 ... Be7, 64 g6! is decisive and after 63 ... Kf7 Browne gives the following line: 64 Kxf5 Be7 65 Bf8 Bf8 66 Bd8 Bd6 67 Bf6! Bc7 (Black is in *zugzwang* after 67 ... Bf8 68 Ke5!.) 68 g6+! hxg6+ 69 f5 Bf4+ 70 Kxf4 Kxf6 71 Kg4 g6 72 Kh5 and the K + P endgame

is a routine win. After the text, 62 f5+?? would be a blunder because of 62 ... gxf5+ 63 Kf4 Bxg5+.

62 Bb2 Bc7  
 63 a3!



It has become clear that the bishop by itself can't bring Black down so that a new theatre of war must be opened. Quite wrong now is 63 ... a5? as after 64 a4! Black's a-pawn is a fixed weakness which White can take advantage of. Browne gives the following convincing proof: 64 ... Bd6 65 Bg7! Be7 66 Be5 Bd8 67 Bb8 Bb6 and with Black's bishop shunted to the side, now comes 68 f5+! gxf5+ 69 Kf4 Bd8 70 g6! hxg6 71 h7 Bf6 72 Bc7. White wins the a-pawn and has an unstoppable passed pawn — a perfect example of the power of the *outside* passed pawn. How should Black defend after the text move?



**63 ... bxa3?**

Browne credits this move with an exclamation mark, but as the move ultimately should lead to a forced loss, I don't see its supposed merit. From a strategic standpoint the only move that makes sense is 63 ... Bd6.

<b>64 Bxa3</b>	<b>Bd6</b>
<b>65 Bb2</b>	<b>Bb8</b>
<b>66 Bf6</b>	<b>Bc7</b>
<b>67 Bc3</b>	<b>Bd6</b>
<b>68 Ba5</b>	<b>Be7</b>
<b>69 Bb6</b>	<b>Bd6</b>
<b>70 Bd8</b>	<b>Bb8</b>
<b>71 Ba5</b>	<b>Bd6</b>
<b>72 Bb6</b>	<b>Be7</b>
<b>73 Bc7</b>	<b>Kd7</b>
<b>74 Bb8</b>	<b>Ke6</b>

Again it has become clear that White's bishop by itself can't do enough damage and that the help of White's king is required. Obviously the only penetration route is via the queenside and that's where the king — after a dippy doodle dance on the kingside — heads.

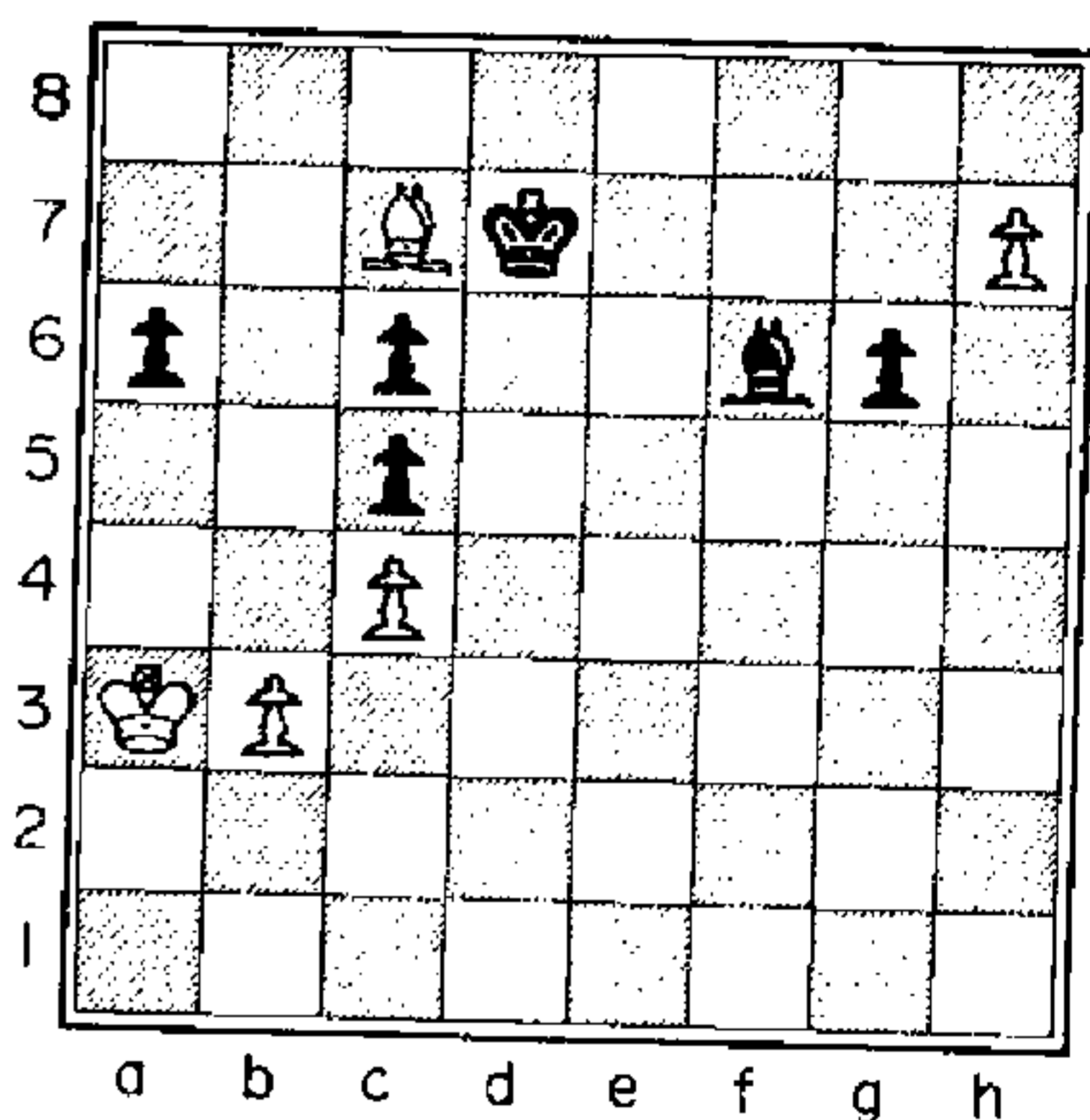
<b>75 Kf3</b>	<b>Kf5</b>
<b>76 Bc7</b>	<b>Bf8</b>
<b>77 Ke3</b>	<b>Be7</b>
<b>78 Kd3</b>	<b>Ke6</b>
<b>79 Kc2</b>	<b>Kf5</b>

Black must keep watching the f5 square for as long as possible, e.g. if 79 ... Kd7?! 80 f5! Bxg5 81 fxg6 hxg6 82 h7 Bf6 83 Ba5 followed by 84 Bc3 and White wins.

<b>80 Kb2</b>	<b>Ke6</b>
<b>81 Ka3</b>	<b>Kd7</b>

By now Black had no choice as otherwise White's king just walks in. White now is able to execute his thematic break, but under less favorable circumstances than in the note to Black's 79th move.

<b>82 f5!</b>	<b>Bxg5</b>
<b>83 fxg6</b>	<b>hxg6</b>
<b>84 h7</b>	<b>Bf6</b>



Now Black's bishop can hold his ground on the diagonal and White's win is only possible with the sophisticated 85 Bb6! which ties Black's king to the protection of the front c-pawn and gives White's king just enough time to get to Black's pawns and do sufficient damage thus: 85 ... Kd6 86 Ka4 g5 (if 86 ... Bc3 87 Ba5 Bf6 88 Bd2 Ke6 89 Ka5 and White is well ahead of the game continuation) 87 Ka5 g4 88 Kxa6 g3 89 Kb7 g2 90 Bc7 + Kd7

91 Bh2 Bd4 92 Kb6 and White will win on the queenside. For example, 92 ... Ke6 93 Kxc6 Kf7 94 Kd5 Kg7 95 b4 g1=Q 96 Bxg1 Bxg1 97 bxc5! Kxh7 98 c6 Bh2 99 Ke6 Kg7 100 Kd7.

**85 Bf4?**

But this apparently logical move spoils all of White's previous play. Black's king now can quickly get at White's h-pawn and Black's passed g-pawn then is full compensation for White's active king.

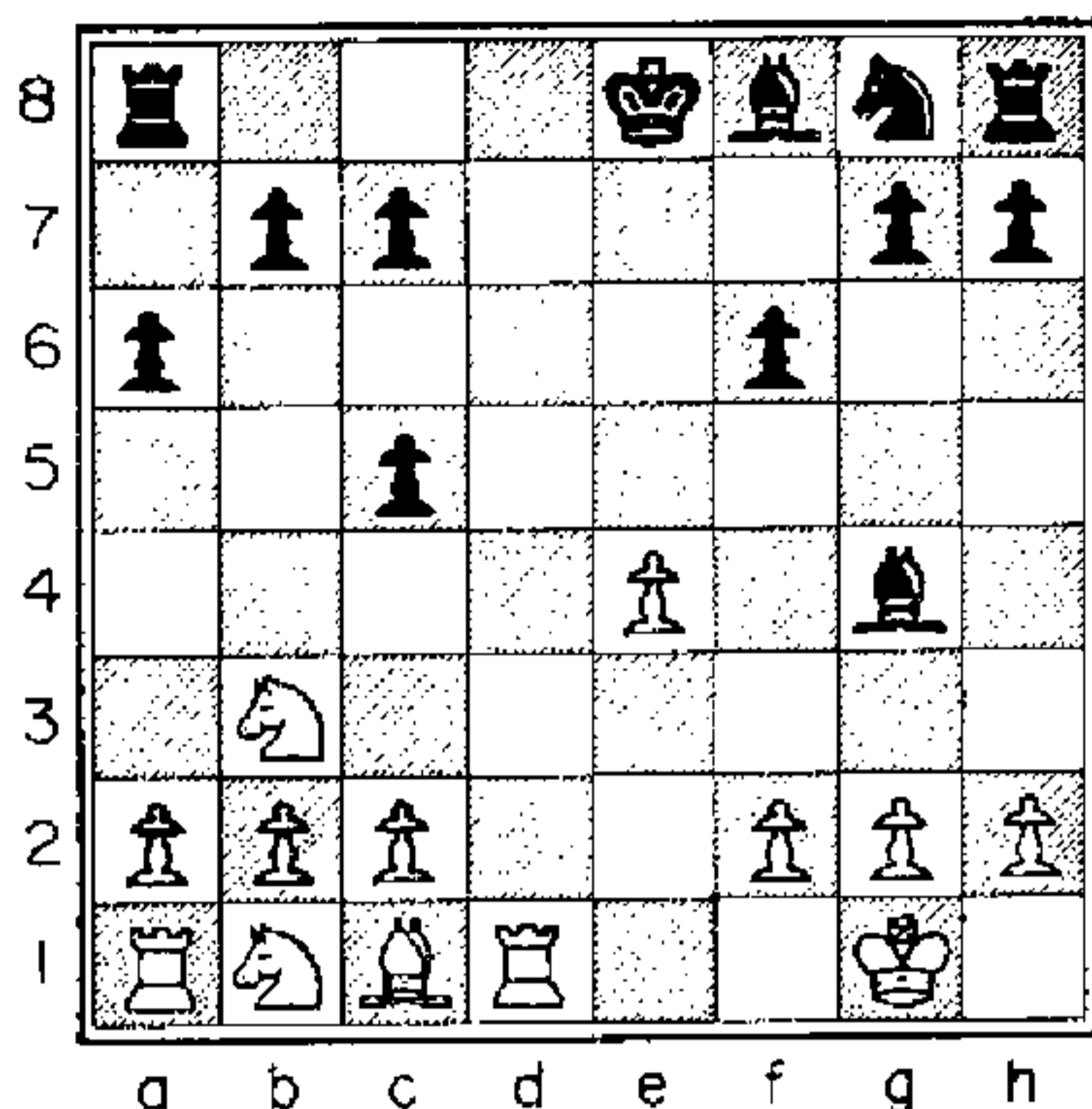
85 ... **Ke6!**  
 86 **Ka4** **Kf7**  
 87 **Ka5** **Kg7**  
 88 **Kxa6** **g5**  
 89 **Be3** **Be7**  
 90 **Kb6** **g4**  
**Draw.**

A likely continuation would be 91 Kxc6 Kxh7 92 Kd7 Bf8 93 Ke8 Bb6 94 Kd7 Bf8 etc. Neither side has any winning chances.

**2.4 THE LATEST 9 ... Bg4!?**

*(See next diagram)*

When the other moves were found to have deficiencies, experimentation started with the paradoxical looking 9 ... Bg4!?. At first glance this may appear pointless as the forced 10 f3 looks to be only in White's interest, but as will be seen that move also has a negative side.



**10 f3**

**Be6!**

Black does best in playing this sophisticated version of the basic Spassky idea (9 ... Be6). There is no reason to select the passive 10 ... Bd7, after which Ribli-Zuidema, Wijk aan Zee 1973 continued: 11 Nc3 0-0-0 12 Bf4 c4 13 Na5 Bc5+ 14 Kh1 b5 15 Nd5! c6? 16 b4! with a clear advantage for White. Trifunovic suggests 15 ... Ne7! as a necessary improvement, though 16 Be3! should still be a bit better for White.

**11 Be3**

The major point of 9 ... Bg4!? is that the obvious 11 Bf4 can be parried by 11 ... c4 as now 12 Na5? is an error because after 12 ... Bc5+ (with a gain of time because of 10 f3) 13 Kf1 Bb6 14 Nxb7? Rb8 White's knight is trapped. And after 12 Nd4 0-0-0 13 Nc3 Black can simplify with 13 ... Rxd4! (another

point of forcing 10 f3 and more accurate than 13 ... Bc5 14 Be3 with a slight edge for White) 14 Rxd4 Bc5 15 Be3 Bxd4 16 Bxd4 Ne7 and the opposite color bishops and equivalent development mean even chances, as in Adorjan-Tatai, Las Palmas 1977.

**11 ...                    b6**

White now has two logical continuations.

2.41 12 Nc3: Timman-Korchnoi, Match Game No. 7, Leeuwarden 1976

**12 ...                    Bd6**

It has become clear that thanks to the "loss of time" by 9 ... Bg4 Black has succeeded in developing *both* of his bishops to their most active squares. This has been achieved at the very small cost of allowing White's 10 f3 to protect his e-pawn with no loss of time. The net result is that Black's chances for full equality are excellent.

**13 a4**

If White wants to go for queen-side activity he should do so immediately on move 12. At this point worth considering is 13 Nd5!?. After 13 ... Bxd5?! 14 exd5 (stronger is 14 Rxd5!) Ne7 15 a4 White did have a slight edge in Epshtein-Ahmilovskaya, 1977

USSR Women's Championship Black should have continued with the normal 13 ... 0-0-0 and it is then unclear how White can improve her position. This suggestion was employed in the subsequent game Savereide-Ford, 1977 U.S. Women's Championship. After 14 Rd2 Ne7 15 Nxe7+ Bxe7 16 Rad1 Rxd2 17 Rxd2 Rd8 Black's chances were fully equal (0:1 in 43)

**13 ...                    Kf7!**

Since we are close to an endgame, if the king can find a secure position in the center, so much the better. The "typical" 13 ... 0-0-0 would lead by transposition to the position covered in the next illustrative game. Playable also seems the developmental 13 ... Ne7 Poutiainen-A. Petrosian, Erevan 1976 led to equality and a draw after 14 a5 Bxb3 15 Cxb3 b5 16 Nd4 0-0-0 17 Rac1 Kb7 18 Kf2 Nxd5 19 Rxd5 c6 20 Rf5 Be5 21 Rxc5 Bxb2 22 Ke2 Ba3 23 Rc2.

**14 a5                    c4**  
**15 Nd4                    b5**  
**16 Nf5??**

An exceedingly overoptimistic move based on a very careless look at the position. White is ready to accept a devaluation of his kingside pawn formation because he expects to be compensated by establishing a knight on e4. However, Black can easily attack the forward f-pawn

and protection of it will lead to an irreparable weakness of the kingside.

Also dubious is 16 Nd5?! since after 16 ... Bxd5! 17 exd5 Ne7 18 Bf2 Rhd8 19 f4 Rd7 20 Ne2 Re8, White's kingside majority has disappeared and his d-pawn is more of a weakness than a strength. Black's position is already slightly preferable and in Wells-Biyiasas, Lone Pine 1981, he went on to win on move 41. Correct is the simple 16 Nxe6 Bxe6 17 Nd5 Ne7 with equality, D. Evans-Biyiasas, New York 1977.

16 ... Bxf5  
17 exf5 Ne7  
18 g4 h5

White "voluntarily" gives up the h-pawn in the hope of gaining a bit of time for reorganizing his defenses.

19 Bf2 hxc4  
20 fxg4 Bxh2+  
21 Kg2 Be5

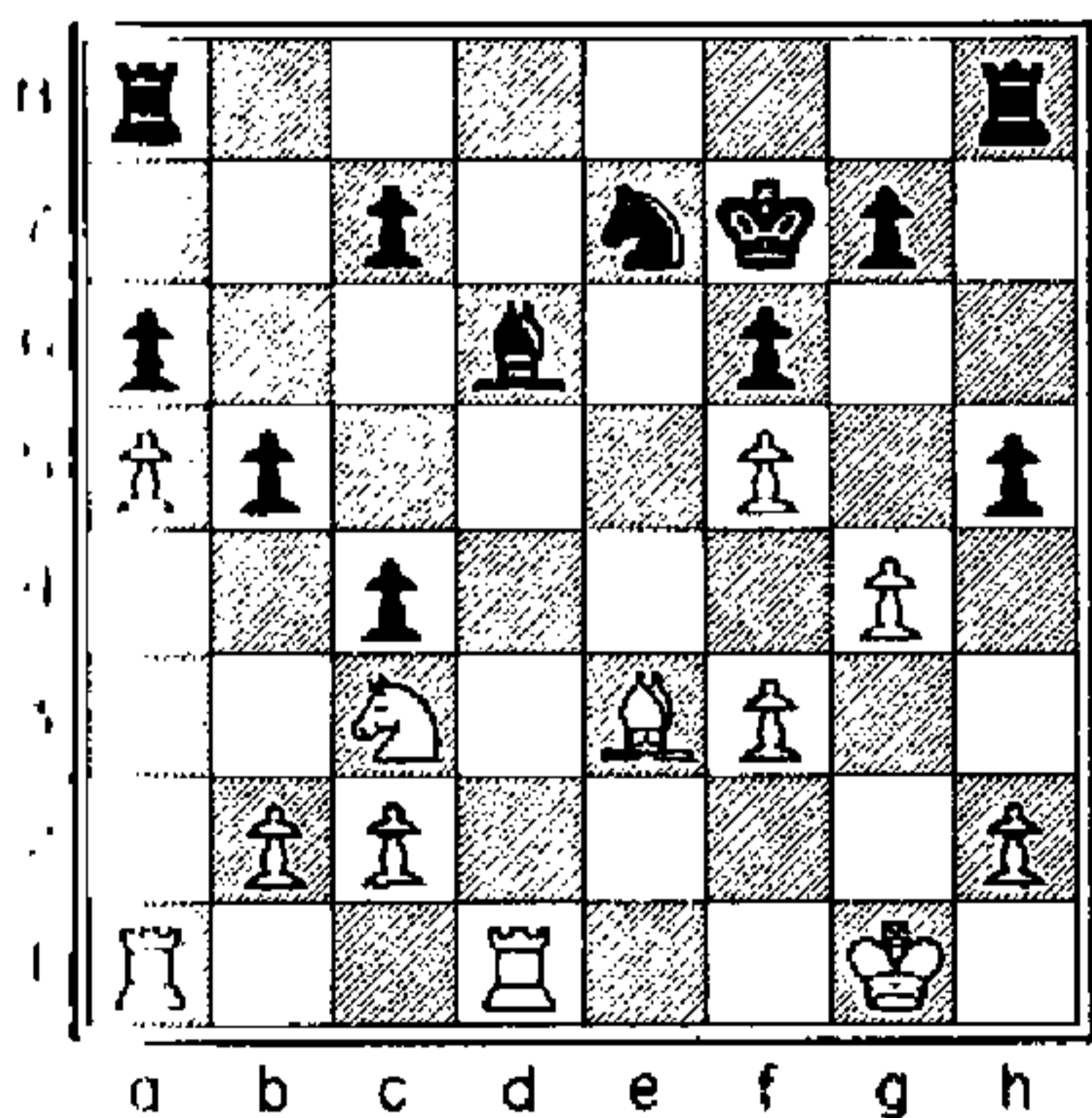
White could perhaps tolerate the material disadvantage of a doubled c-pawn, but when coupled with Black's active piece deployment the net result is a clearly won endgame for Black.

22 Bg3 Bxc3!  
23 bxc3 Rac8  
24 Kf3

The active king will be of no help but there is nothing satisfactory for White. As pointed out by Hartoch, the minor piece endgame resulting after 24 Rd7 Rhd8 25 Rad1 Rxd7 26 Rxd7 Ke8! 27 Rxc7 Rxc7 28 Bxc7 Nd5 is hopeless for White.

24 ... Rhd8  
25 Ke4 c6  
26 Rd6 Rxd6  
27 Bxd6 Rd8

Because Black's knight is somewhat superior to White's bishop, Black could well have decided to hold on to it. His reason for bringing about the resulting R + P endgame is to achieve clarity—always an excellent practical approach in "how to win a won game".



Suddenly White is lost! The "thematic" 19 h3 is of no help because of 19 ... hxc4 20 hxg4 Rh3 and 19 Rd2 fails to 19 ... hxc4 20 fxg4 Rh4 21 Rg2 Rgh8. Therefore

28	Bxe7	Kxe7
29	Ke3	Rh8
30	Re1	Kd6
31	Rd1+	Kc7
32	Rd2	c5!

Black's extra pawn is on the queenside and he logically starts to exploit this. In the meanwhile White is without realistic counterchances. Korchnoi plays the rest simply and well.

33	Rf2	Kc6
34	g5	b4!
35	cxb4	cxb4
36	g6	Re8+
37	Kd4	Kb5
38	Kd5	Re5+
39	Kd4	c3
40	Rh2	Rxf5
41	Rh7	Rg5
42	Rxg7	Kxa5
43	Kc4	Ka4

White  
resigns

He's two pawns down and the g-pawn is not a serious threat. He had actually played 44 Ra7 but then resigned without awaiting Black's reply (44 ... a5).

2.42 12a4: Adorjan-Ivkov,  
Skopje 1976

As there is no way to prevent the effective positioning of Black's bishops, White tries to exploit his edge in development by loosening

up Black's queenside. Black's defense must be very exact.

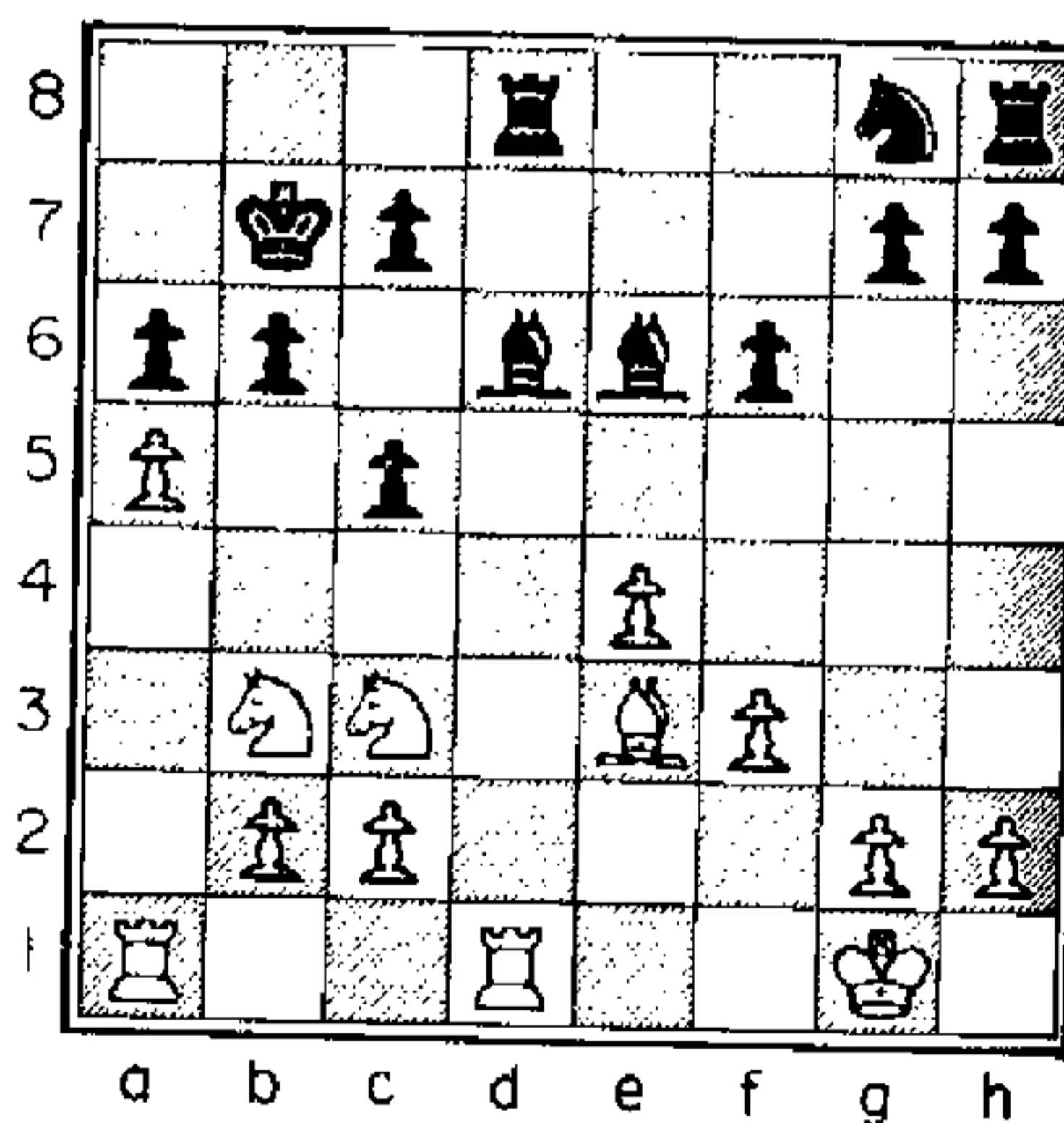
12 ... Bd6

Developing the bishop to the indicated square. In the following play Black's position appears precarious, yet he seems to hold. In any case, the try at improvement for Black here was not successful in Timman-Matanovic Yugoslavia 1978: 12 ... Ne7 13 Bf4! c4 14 Nd4 0-0-0 15 Nc3 Bg6 16 Bg3! Ng6 17 Nf5 and White was better.

13 a5 0-0-0!

Protecting his queenside by tactical means (14 axb6? Bxh2 and White's compensation for the Exchange is insufficient).

14 Nc3 Kb7



15 e5!?

There are a number of other logical continuations at this point

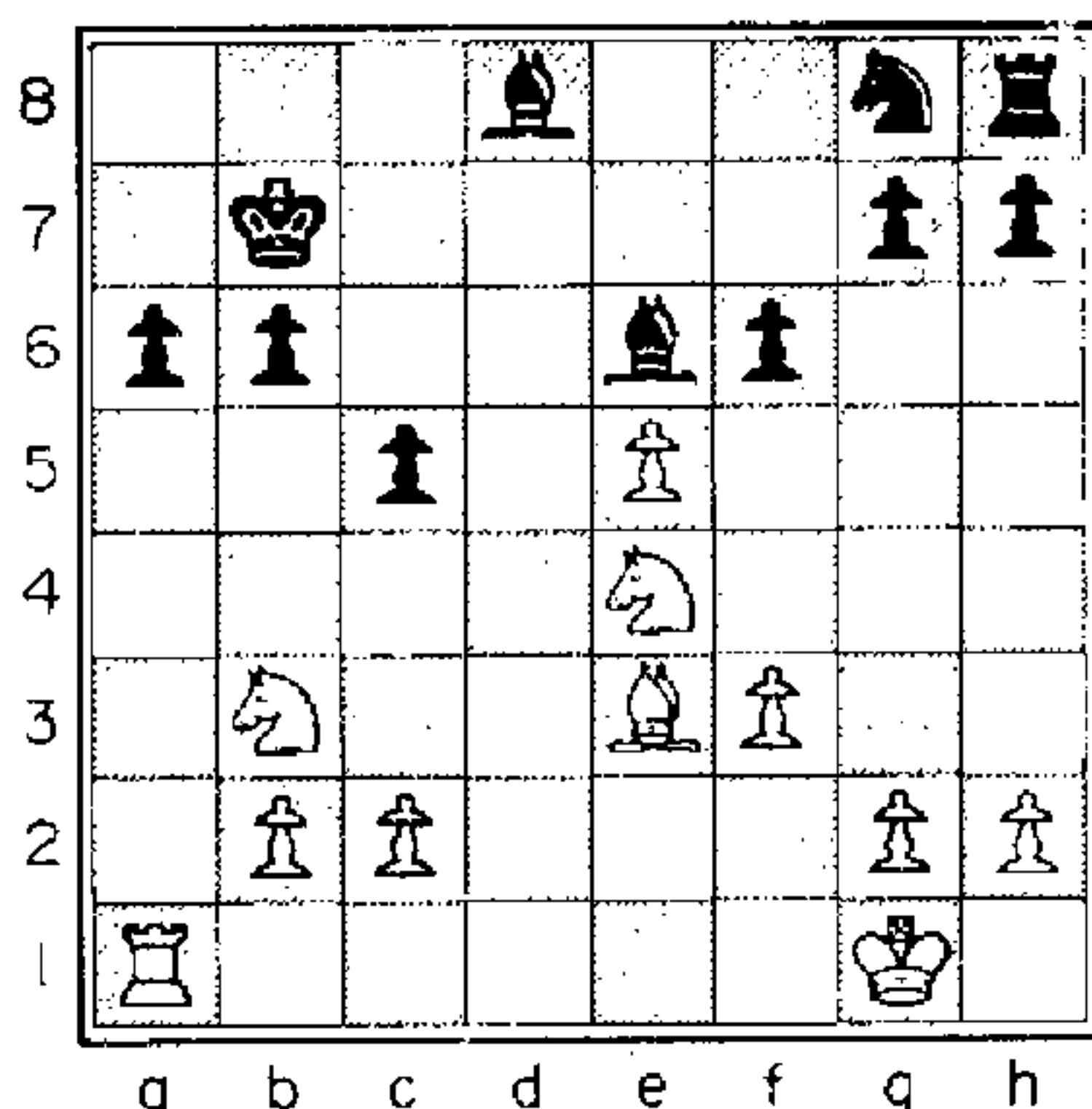
(a) 15 Bf4 Ne7 16 Bxd6 cxd6 17 axb6 Bxb3! 18 cxb3 Kxb6 with equality and a draw agreed in Velimirovic-Matanovic, 1975 Yugoslavian Championship. (b) 15 axb6 cxb6 16 Bf4 Be7 17 Rxd8 Bxd8 18 Rd1 Bb7 19 Bxc7 Kxc7 20 Nd5 Bxd5 21 exd5 Nh6 22 Re1 with equality and a draw agreed in Ligterink-Hellin, Wijk aan Zee II 1976. (c) 15 Na4!? (Adorjan) and now neither 15 ... Ne7? 16 axb6 cxb6 17 Bxc5! nor 15 ... Bxb3?! 16 cxb3 Ne7 17 axb6 cxb6 18 b4! cxb4 19 Bxb6 are satisfactory for Black. However, after the paradoxical 15 ... Bc8! (Adorjan) Black can safeguard his position and soon complete his development with ... Ne7 etc.

**15 ... Be7!**

Here too Black must work at consolidation. 15 ... fxe5? loses to 16 axb6 cxb6 17 Ne4 Bc7 18 Nxc5+! and 15 ... Bxb3? fails to 16 exd6 Bxc2 17 Rdc1 Bg6 18 dxc7.

**16 Rxd8            Bxd8**  
**17 axb6            cxb6**  
**18 Ne4**

Very interesting here is 18 Bxc5!? with the points 18 ... bxc5?? 19 Nxc5+ and 18 ... Bxb3? 19 Bf8!. According to Adorjan, required therefore is 18 ... Nh6! which leads to an unclear situation. A practical test here would be worthwhile.



**18 ... Bxb3!**

The best way of coping with the tactical threat of 19 Nxc5+. Unsatisfactory is 18 ... Be7?! because of 19 Bxc5! Bxb3 20 Bxe7 Nxe7 21 cxb3 fxe5 22 Nd6+ Kc6 23 Nf7 and White is sure to have an endgame with an extra pawn.

**19 Nd6+            Kc6**  
**20 cxb3            Ne7!**  
**21 Rxa6            Nd5**  
**Draw**

A somewhat surprising abortion of the struggle. While true that after Black recovers the pawn, the chances are in *dynamic* balance, the position can well be played out. Here too a "follow-up" practical test is in order.

In summary, after 9 ... Bd6, 9 ... Be6 and 9 ... Bd7 White can keep a small yet riskless advantage. Black's counterchances must come from utilization of the bishop pair.

The latest, sophisticated 9 ... Bg4!? that most of the theoretical  
appears to allow Black eventual developments are expected to  
equalization. It is in this sub-line occur.

# 3

## Sicilian Defense: Dragon Variation

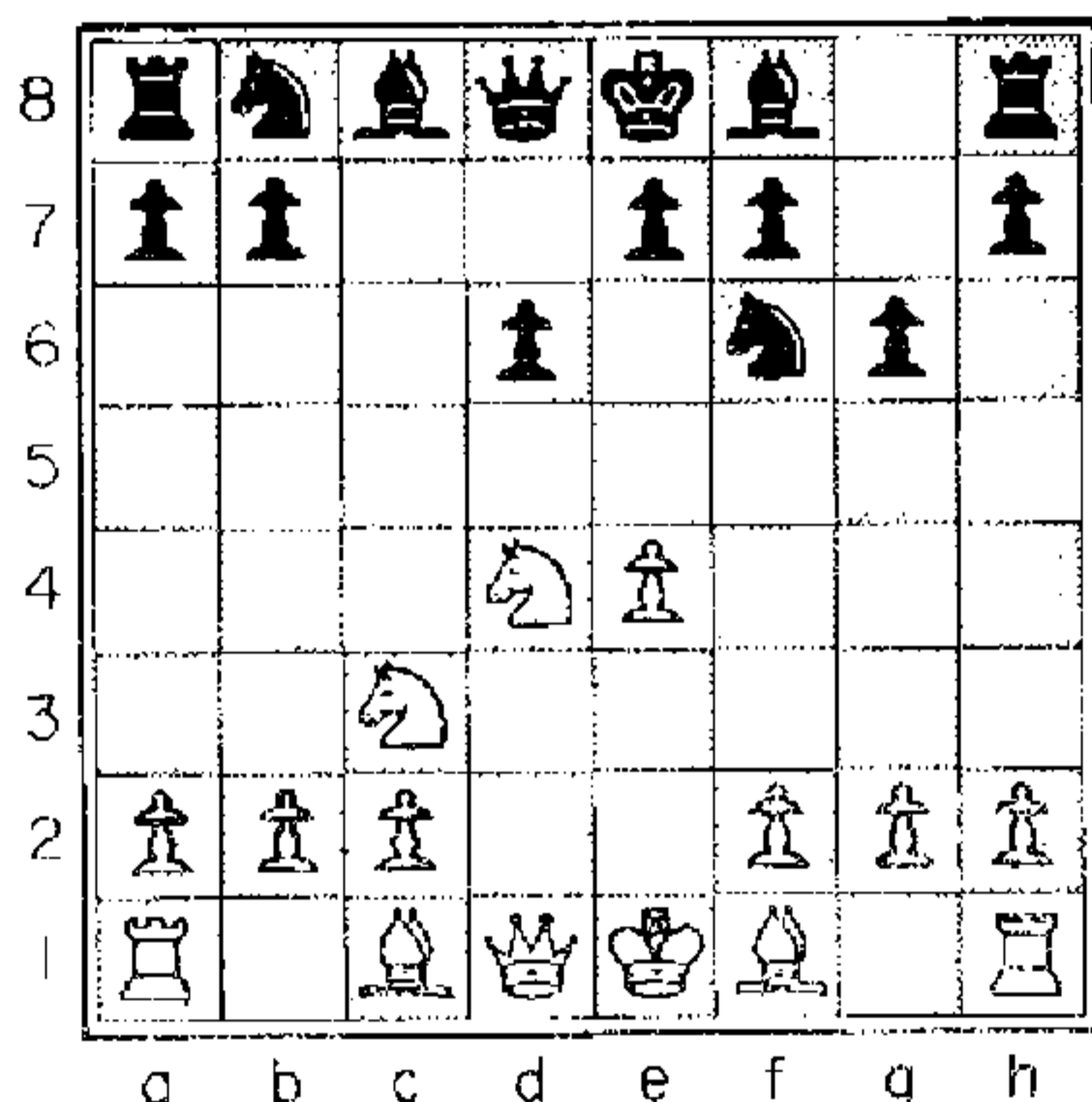
1 e4 c5  
2 Nf3 d6

If Black wants to play the normal Dragon, he must use the accurate move order. If he plays 2 ... Nc6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Nxd4 Nf6 5 Nc3 d6, with the idea of continuing 6 ... g6, White can cross up this strategy via 6 Bb5 (The Richter–Rauzer Attack) since 6 ... g6?! then leads to the isolation of Black's pawn formation after 7 Bxf6.

3 d4 cxd4  
4 Nxd4 Nf6  
5 Nc3 g6

*(See next diagram)*

Thinking about the Dragon variation, a theoretically sound and strategically logical system. The fianchettoed KB will act on White's center and potentially the queenside, and Black's king is quickly confined to relative safety. Because



of the unbalanced nature of the coming force deployment, the play often becomes extremely sharp and tactical.

### 6 Be3

Getting ready to complete the development of the queenside while tempting Black into the following trap: 6 ... Ng4? 7 Bb5+! and Black must lose significant material. The alternative approach is kingside



development with 6 Be2 Bg7 7 0-0 0-0 and now either the standard 8 Be3 or the more recent 8 Bg5.

6 ...                    Bg7  
7 f3

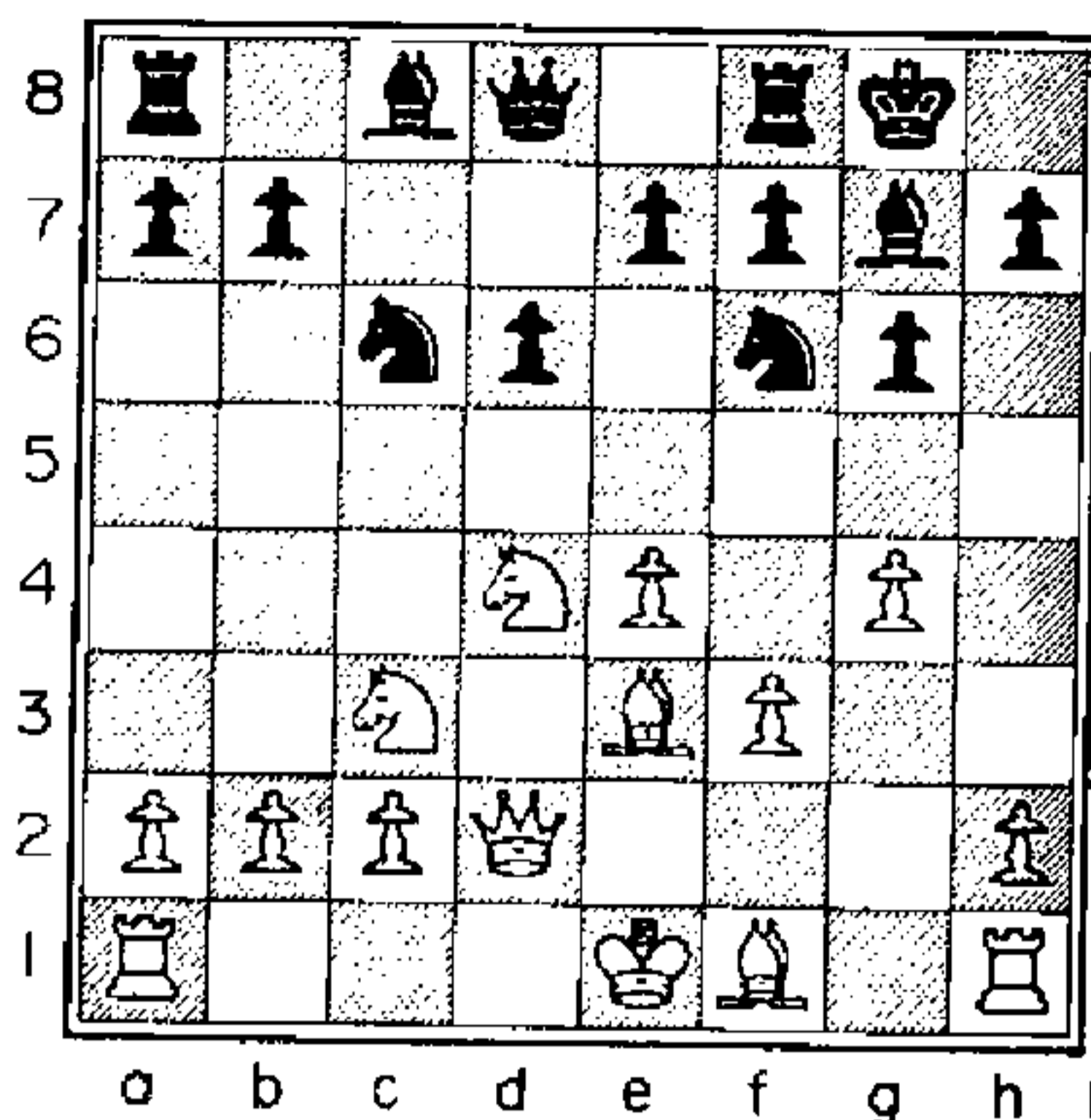
The beginning of the Yugoslav Attack, inherently a very sharp line, in which White castles on the queenside, Black on the kingside and each attacks the other as violently as possible. The move 7 f3 has three objectives: (1) protection of the e-pawn, (2) prevention of ... Ng4, (3) enabling of a later g4.

7 ...                    0-0  
8 Qd2                    Nc6

Over the last 25 years this position has occurred thousands of times in master play. By far the two most popular plans for White have been 9 0-0-0 and 9 Bc4. After 9 0-0-0 Black has the option of a promising pawn sacrifice with 9 ... d5!? or development with 9 ... Nxd4 10 Bxd4 Be6. The real theoretical tiger has been (and still is!) 9 Bc4. Some variations have been analyzed up into move 30 and beyond and the play is invariably extremely complicated, mutual king attacks.

It seems to me that White, however, has a perfectly reasonable, practical alternative:

9 g4!?



Quite a deceptive move: though it may appear to be the start of an attack, its major points are strategic in nature. In the first place the freeing ... d5 is prevented since after 9 ... d5? 10 g5 Nh5 11 exd5 Black can not recover the "sacrificed" pawn. For instance 11 ... Nb4 12 Bc4 e6 13 dxe6! Bxd5 14 exf7+ Rxf7 15 0-0-0! Bxe6 16 Qxe3 Qf8 17 Ne4! Bf5 18 Nd5 Nxc2 19 Qc3 Qe7 20 Bxf7+ and Black resigned in Semenova-Rozlapa, Tiflis (USSR) 1976.

The over-all long range plan of 9 g4!? is to achieve one of a number of favorable *endgames*. These will be our major objects of attention. Black now has the following possibilities:

- (1) 9 ... Nxd4: Our main line.
- (2) 9 ... Nd7?: 10 h4! Nde6 11 Be2 Nxd4 12 Bxd4 Be6 13 f4! Nc6 14 Bxg7 Kxg7 15 h5! with a killing attack for White, Littlewood-Miles, England 1973.

(3) **9 ... Bd7?!**: 10 0-0-0 Qa5 11 h4 Rfc8 12 h5, with White's attack being the stronger one.

(4) **9 ... e6?!**: 10 0-0-0! d5 11 Kb1! Re8 12 Bb5 Bd7 13 g5 with a large edge for White in Trollalden-Parksson, Norway-Sweden 1976.

(5) **9 ... e5!?**: Black was successful with this after 10 Ndb5? and 11 Nxd6 Nd4! 12 Bxd4 exd4 13 Nxc8 Rxc8!, Savereide-Taburdanidze, Women's Olympiad, Malta 1980. Black has very strong pressure for the sacrificed pawn and went on to win on move 14. White's critical 10th move is 10 Nb3!, after which it is doubtful if Black has sufficient compensation for the weak d-pawn.

(6) **9 ... Be6!?**: 10 0-0-0 (After 10 h4? d5! Black has at least equalized.) Now Black can transpose into our main line with 10 ... Nxd4 11 Bxd4 Qa5. However, worthy of serious consideration is 10 ... Ne5!?. In Weinstein-Tarjan, Los Angeles 1974, Black reached an equal endgame after 11 g5 Nh5 12 f4 h4 13 Nxe6 Nxd2 14 Nxd8 Nxf1 15 Rhxf1 Rfxd8 16 Nd5 Rd7 17 Bd4 h5 18 f5.

**9 ... Nxd4**

With this exchange Black aims to achieve the smooth development of the rest of the queenside and, in particular, the active placing of the king on e6. This plan is by far the

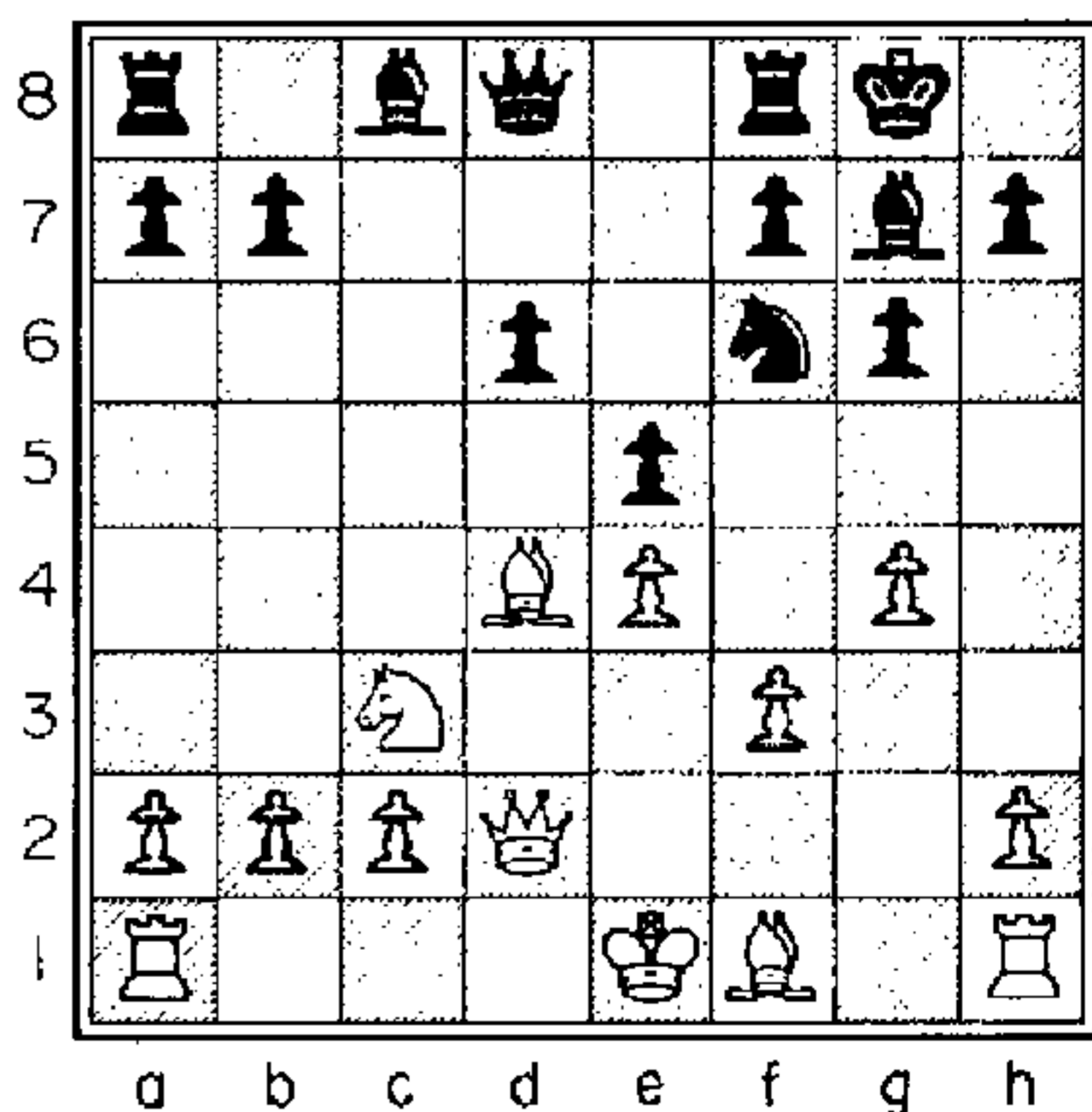
most popular one and constitutes our main line.

### 10 Bxd4

Again 10 ... d5? fails because of 11 g5. If 10 ... Qa5, White can either transpose into our main line with 11 0-0-0 Be6 12 Kb1, or try to exploit the fact that Black is no closer to counterplay via the thematic ... d5, by starting an immediate kingside attack with 11 h4!?. The moves most commonly seen in practical play are 10 ... e5? and 10 ... Be6 and I shall examine each in detail.

#### 3.1 10 ... e5?:

**E. MEDNIS-R. SPRAGUE,  
NATIONAL CHESS LEAGUE  
(USA) 1977**



A common enough response, particularly in games by amateurs and computers. It seems so worthwhile to chase back White's bishop.

Yet the plan is erroneous since the short term gain is very much outweighed by the long term demerits of a backward, chronically weak d-pawn and a locked-in KB.

11 Be3            Be6  
12 0-0-0        Qa5  
13 a3!

By safeguarding the queenside White is immediately able to menace Black's d-pawn.

13 ...            Rfd8

Acquiescing to a horrible ending. The alternative is a cheerless middle-game after 13 ... Rfc8 14 g5! Nh5 15 Nd5! Qd8. In Vasyukov-Gufeld, USSR 1971, White won quickly as follows: 16 Kb1 Bxd5 17 Qxd5 Nf4 18 Qxd6 Qxg5 19 Bh3! Rd8 20 Qc7 Qf6 21 Bd7! Ng2 22 Bc1! Qxf3?! 23 Rhf1 Qh5 24 Bg4! Rxd1 25 Qxf7+ Kh8 26 Bxh5 and Black resigned.

14 Nb5!            Qxd2+  
15 Rxd2            Ne8

A pawn must go lost. After 15 ... d5 White has 16 g5 Ne8 17 Bxa7.

16 Nxa7            d5  
17 exd5            Bxd5  
18 Be2            Rxa7!?  
19 Rfd1!

Frustrating Black's attempts at counterplay after 19 Bxa7?! Bh6 20 Rfd1 Bc6 and the pin is unplea-

sant. After the text move White can consolidate easily since 19 ... Ra5 is refuted by 20 Bb6!.

19 ...            Nc7  
20 Bxa7            Bh6  
21 Kb1            Bxd2  
22 Rxd2            Ne6  
23 Be3?!

For the play to come White could have saved a tempo by 23 Bb6! Rd7 24 c4!. White's two bishops + extra pawn should then win easily.

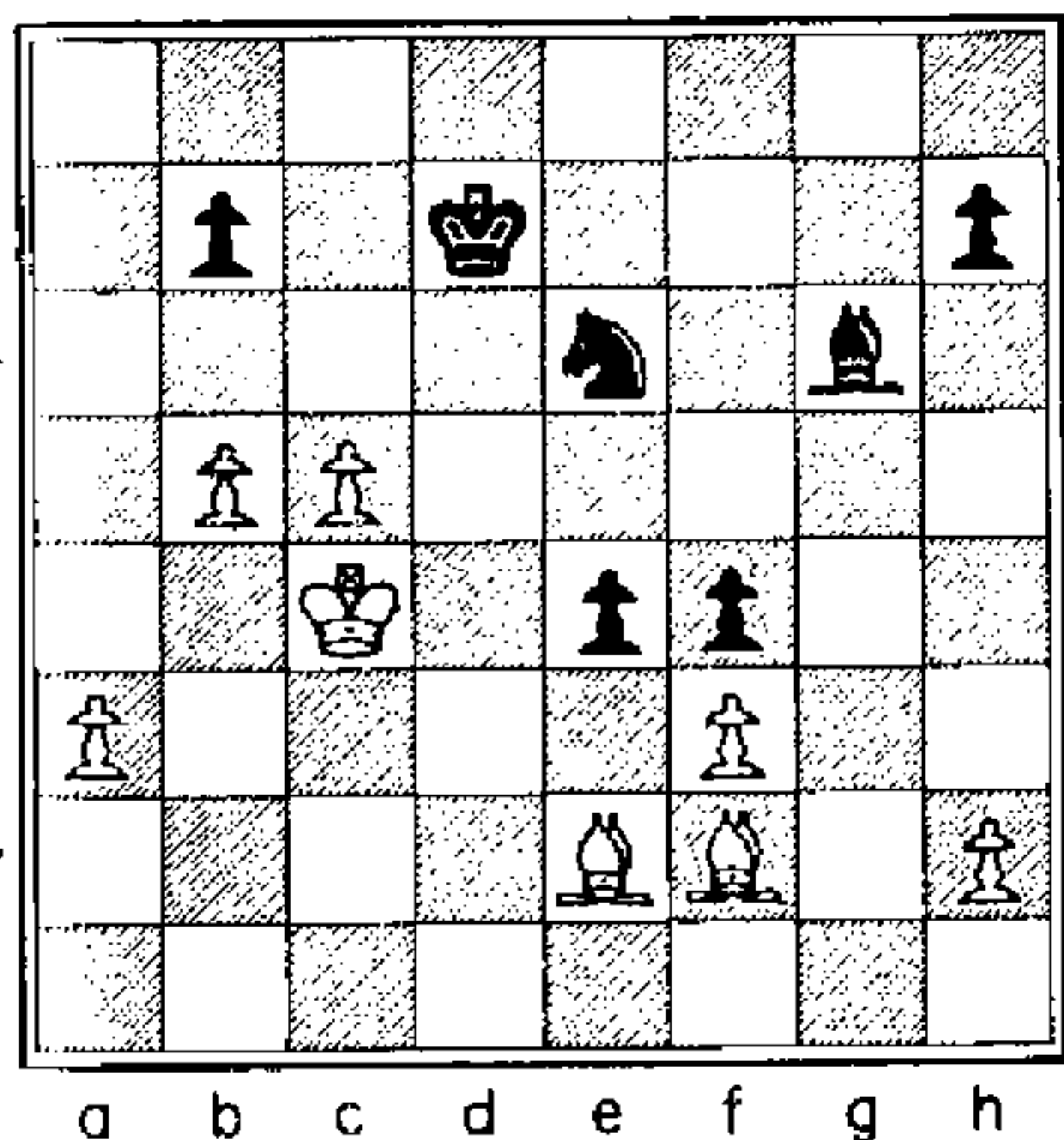
23 ...            f5!  
24 gxf5            gxf5  
25 c4            Bc6  
26 Rxd8+        Nxd8  
27 b4!            f4  
28 Bb6?!

This loses a clear tempo. There was no need to be afraid of 28 Bf2 e4 29 fxe4 Bxe4+ 30 Kb2 since 30 ... f3 31 Bd1 allows White to easily blockade the f-pawn. The bishop pair can then effectively assist in the mobilization of the queenside pawn majority.

28 ...            Ne6  
29 b5            Be8  
30 Kc2            Kf8  
31 Bf2            Ke7  
32 c5            Kd7  
33 Kd3            Bg6+  
34 Kc4            e4?

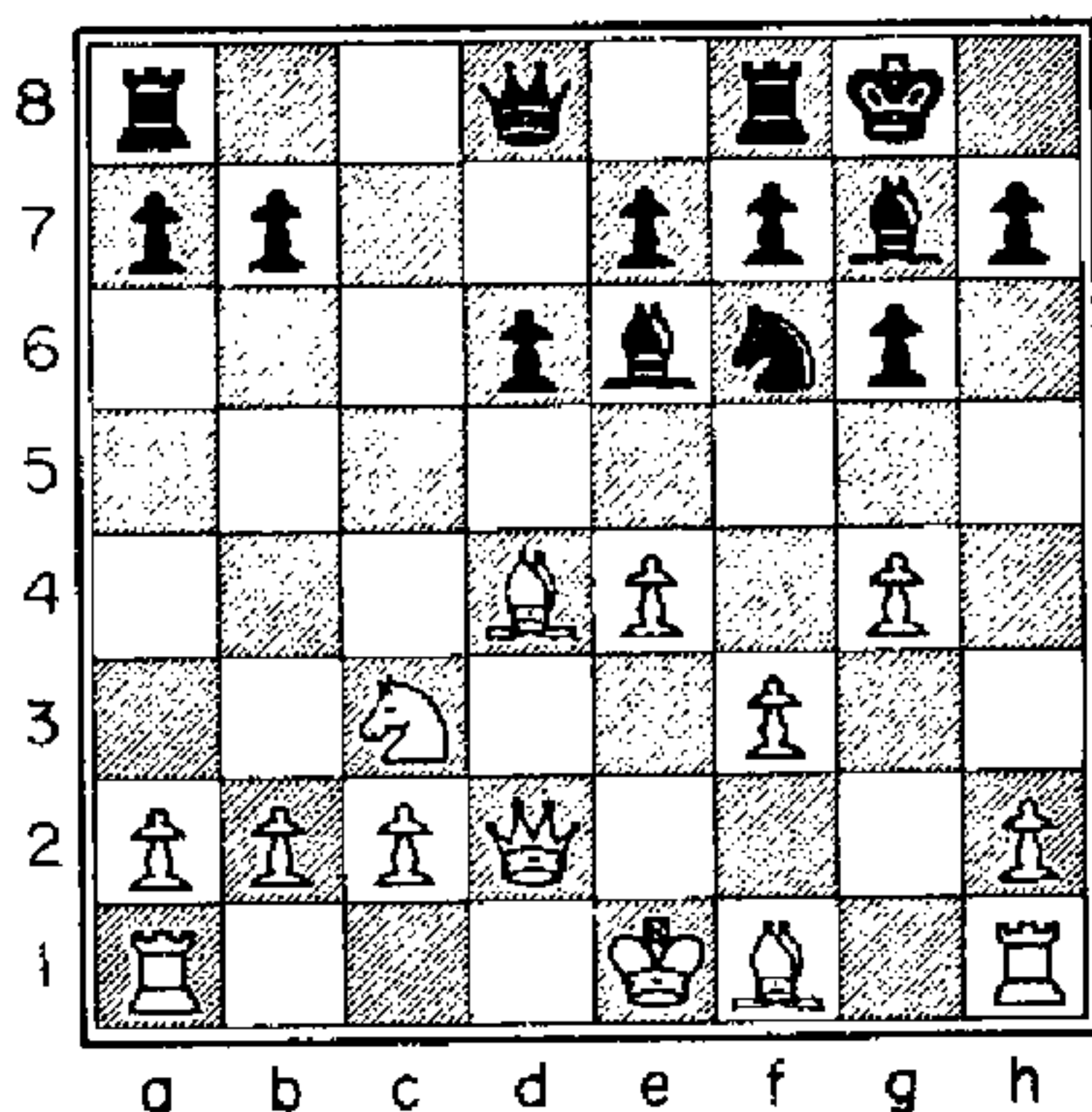
(See next diagram)

This is absolutely hopeless since White is rid of his weak f-pawn



43 a6!  
 44 b6  
 45 Ka3  
 46 b7  
 47 Ka2!  
**Black  
 resigns**

3.2 10 ... Be6



The normal move. Black develops the bishop to the best central square and gets ready to start play against White's queenside — where White's king is expected to head.

11 0-0-0 Qa5  
 12 Kb1!

To reasonably safeguard the White king position, chances are that both Kb1 and a3 will be required. The order of playing them, however, is important. Inaccurate is 12 a3?! since with 12 ... Rfb8! Black can immediately start an attack

and White's bishops now get powerful diagonals. White's task would be exceedingly difficult after 14 ... Bf7!, e.g. 35 Kb4 Bh5, threatening both ... Ng5 and ... e4 or 35 Kd3 Bg6+ 36 Kc3 Bh5! and again it is not clear how White will make progress.

35 fxe4 Bxe4  
 36 Bg4! Ke7  
 37 Bh4+! Kf7  
 38 Bh5+ Kg7  
 39 a4! Bg2  
 40 Bg4 Kf7  
 41 a5!

Pawn majorities must be mobilized! Notice how White's bishops both make Black's f-pawn harmless and prevent any meaningful king activity. Therefore Black neither gets counterplay, nor is able to cope with White's queenside advance.

41 ... Bf1+  
 42 Kb4 Nc7

against the newly created vulnerable a3 point. This was first played in Mednis–Rajkovic, Kragajavec 1977, with the continuation being 13 g5 Nh5 14 Bxg7 Kxg7?! 15 f4! b5 16 Be2! b4 17 Nd5 and a slight advantage for White. However, with the correct 14 ... Nxg7! Black would have full equality as White has nothing better than to head for an equal endgame with 15 Nd5.

Of course, after the text move, 12 ... Rfb8 would be pointless since the rook then points nowhere.

**12 ... Rfc8**  
**13 a3 Rab8**

After 13 ... Bc4 White's best approach is to again head for a slightly superior endgame with 14 g5! Nh5 15 Nd5, e.g. 15 ... Qxd2 16 Rxd2 Kf8 17 Bxg7+! Nxg7 18 Bh3.

**14 g5!**

It is the plan associated with this move that adds the *strategic* meaning to 9 g4!?. After 14 h4?! b5! a mutual attacking race results where Black's chances are no worse.

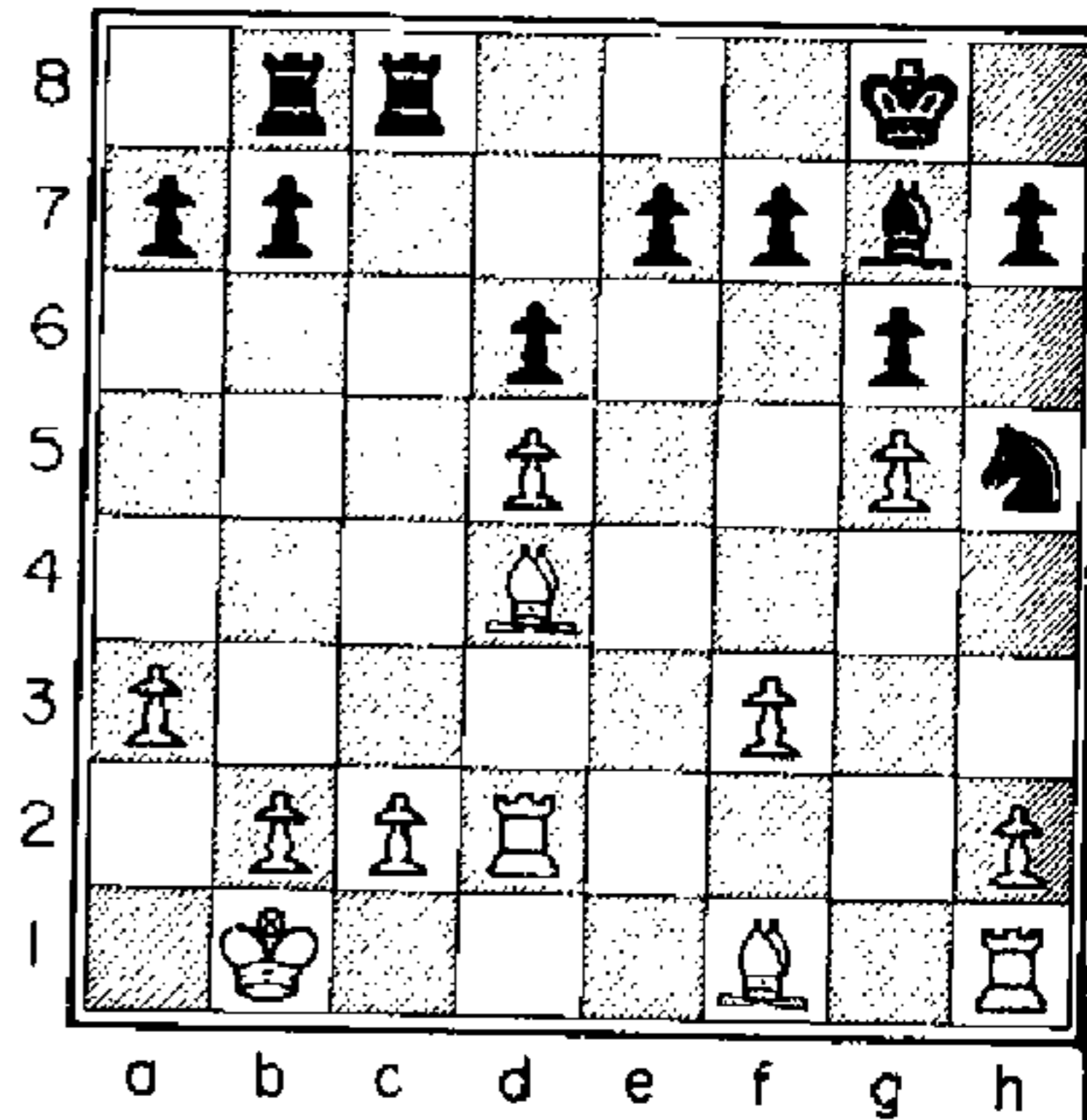
**14 ... Nh5**  
**15 Nd5! Qxd2**  
**16 Rxd2**

The "elegant" *zwischenzug* 16 Nxe7+?? loses the knight after 16 ... Kf8.

**16 ... Bxd5**

Forced because of the dual threats 17 Bxa7 and 17 Nxe7+.

**17 exd5**



The endgame position that White has been striving for. It is slightly superior for him because of the opportunity to create a passed pawn on the queenside and the pressure against Black's backward e-pawn. Moreover, if Black chooses not to exchange bishops, White will retain the two-bishop advantage. Black's two basic approaches are to keep his bishop, or to exchange and I shall look at each of them with an illustrative game.

3.21 17 ... a6:

A. Karpov–J. Dueball,  
Skopje Olympiad 1972

With this and the next moves Black aims for an immediate attack against White's king. But, as will be

seen, with the queens off the attack is not dangerous.

<b>18 Rg1</b>	<b>b5</b>
<b>19 c3</b>	<b>a5</b>
<b>20 Ba7!</b>	<b>Rb7</b>
<b>21 Be3!</b>	

The point of the QB maneuver is not only to keep the bishop but, more importantly, to prevent Black's ... b4 advance. If now 21 ... b4?, 22 axb4 axb4 23 Ba6 and White wins. White also threatens 22 f4 followed by 23 Be2. Therefore Black's response is best.

<b>21 ...</b>	<b>Be5!</b>
<b>22 Ka2!</b>	

Karpov characteristically starts moving the king, though here mainly for defensive purposes to help keep back Black's queenside pawns. Instead, poor is the win of the Exchange after 22 a4? bxa4! 23 Ba6, since after 23 ... Rxc3! Black gets more than sufficient compensation for it.

<b>22 ...</b>	<b>Rcc7</b>
<b>23 Kb3!</b>	<b>Rb8</b>
<b>24 Bd3</b>	

An immediate 24 Rg4 (threatening 25 f4) would give Black counterplay after 24 ... f5 25 gxf6 e.p. exf6 26 f4 Bb etc.; thus Karpov develops the king fully prior to the start of active operations.

<b>24 ...</b>	<b>Nf4</b>
<b>25 Be4</b>	<b>f5?!</b>

White was now threatening 26 Rg4, and if 26 ... Nh5, 27 f4, etc.; so Black had to do something about this. The text move, however, leads to a significant weakening of the kingside. Dueball subsequently recommended 25 ... Rc4! and rated the position after 26 Rg4 a4+ 27 Ka2 Nh5 28 Bd3 Rxc4 29 fxc4 Nf4 30 Be4 Rc8 as equal.

<b>26 gxf6 e.p.</b>	<b>exf6</b>
<b>27 Rg4</b>	<b>g5</b>
<b>28 Rg1</b>	

A good precaution against 28 ... b4 which is now stopped by 29 axb4 axb4 30 c4 Ra8 31 Rdd1 and White will have the initiative on both flanks. Yet the move also has disadvantages as Black demonstrates. With the sharper 28 Bf5! White would retain his advantage.

<b>28 ...</b>	<b>Nh3!</b>
---------------	-------------

With this and the following move Black achieves equality.

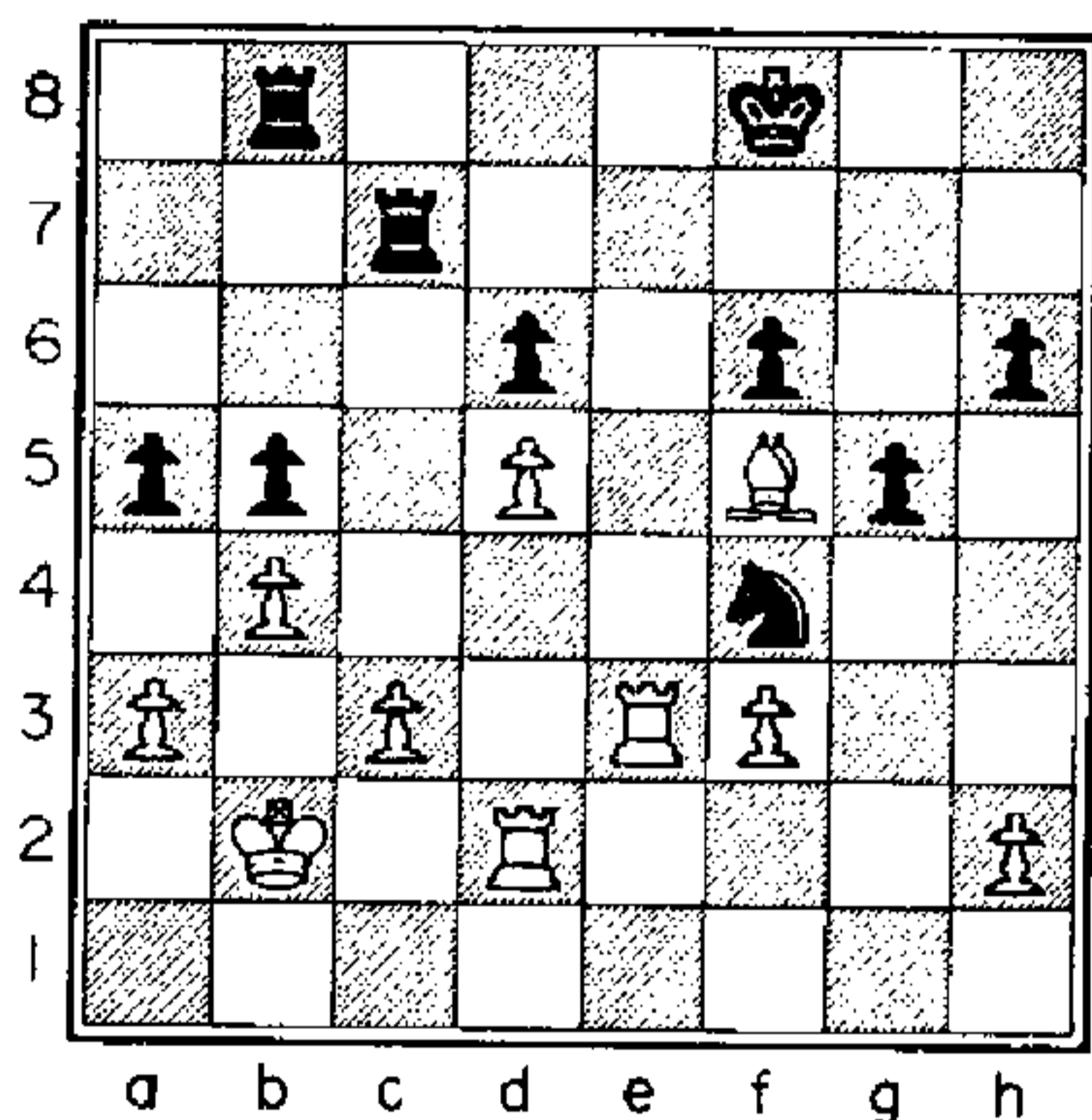
<b>29 Re1</b>	<b>Bf4!</b>
<b>30 Bf5</b>	<b>Bxe3</b>
<b>31 Rxe3</b>	<b>Nf4</b>
<b>32 Ka2</b>	<b>Kf8?!</b>

A routine and logical move, but nevertheless the first misstep. Black's basic situation is quite good since his knight is at least equal to White's bishop. Here was the moment to fix White's queenside pawn majority with 32 ... a4!.

**33 b4!**

Karpov quickly jumps at the opportunity to achieve a healthy pawn formation, which gives him fine theoretical chances for a passed pawn on the queenside.

**33 ... h6**  
**34 Kb2**



**34 ... Re7?**

Black now will be left without counterplay and Karpov will efficiently demonstrate how to create a powerful passed b-pawn. The correct approach is to aim for play along the a-file via 34 ... Ra8 and 35 ... Rca7. That seems sufficient to keep the game in balance.

**35 Rxe7 Kxe7**  
**36 Kb3! Ra8**  
**37 c4! axb4**  
**38 axb4 bxc4+**  
**39 Kxc4**

It is most instructive to see the straightforward way in which Karpov has cleared the queenside to emerge with a passed pawn there. Notice how he proceeds to make his king — already in an active location — even more useful and active.

**39 ... Kd8**  
**40 Kb5! Kc7**  
**41 Rc2+ Kb7**  
**42 Bd7!**

Up to now the only White piece not participating in active operations was the bishop; it simply had nothing to attack since all the Black pawns were on dark squares. With this move the bishop becomes quite valuable in bothering and containing the Black king.

**42 ... Ra3**  
**43 Rc6! Rd3**

Clearly unsatisfactory at 43 ... Ne2 44 Bc8+ Kb8 45 Kb6 and 43 ... Rxf3 44 Ra6! followed by 45 Bc6+, etc. However, worthy of note is 43 ... Nxd5!? 44 Rxd6 Nxb4 45 Kxb4 Rxf3. The almost total elimination of White's pawns makes the win technically quite difficult.

**44 Rb6+ Kc7**  
**45 Bc6 Nxd5**  
**46 Rb7+ Kc8**

Or 46 ... Kd8 47 Rd7+ Kc8 48 Rh7 with the winning threat 49 Bxd5 Rxd5+ 50 Kc6, attacking the rook and threatening 51 Rf7 mate.

**47 Rf7**

Not bad; yet the rook feels a bit contained here since the Black king can get close to it. Stronger is 47 Rh7! to get into the variation mentioned above.

- |                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| <b>47 ...</b>  | <b>Kd8</b> |
| <b>48 Rd7+</b> | <b>Kc8</b> |
| <b>49 Rf7</b>  | <b>Kd8</b> |
| <b>50 Kc4</b>  | <b>Nf4</b> |
| <b>51 Rxf6</b> | <b>d5+</b> |

After 51 ... Kc7 White's king, sheltered by a pawn, returns with 52 Kb5. After the text move, faulty 52 Bxd5?: 52 ... Nxd5! 53 Rd6+ Kc7 54 Rxd5 Rxf3 with an easy draw.

- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| <b>52 Kc5</b>  | <b>Ke7</b>  |
| <b>53 Rxf6</b> | <b>Rc3+</b> |

But here 53 ... Rxf3? is no good since after 54 Bxd5 Nxd5 55 Kxd5, Black only has one kingside pawn and White wins with his extra b-pawn.

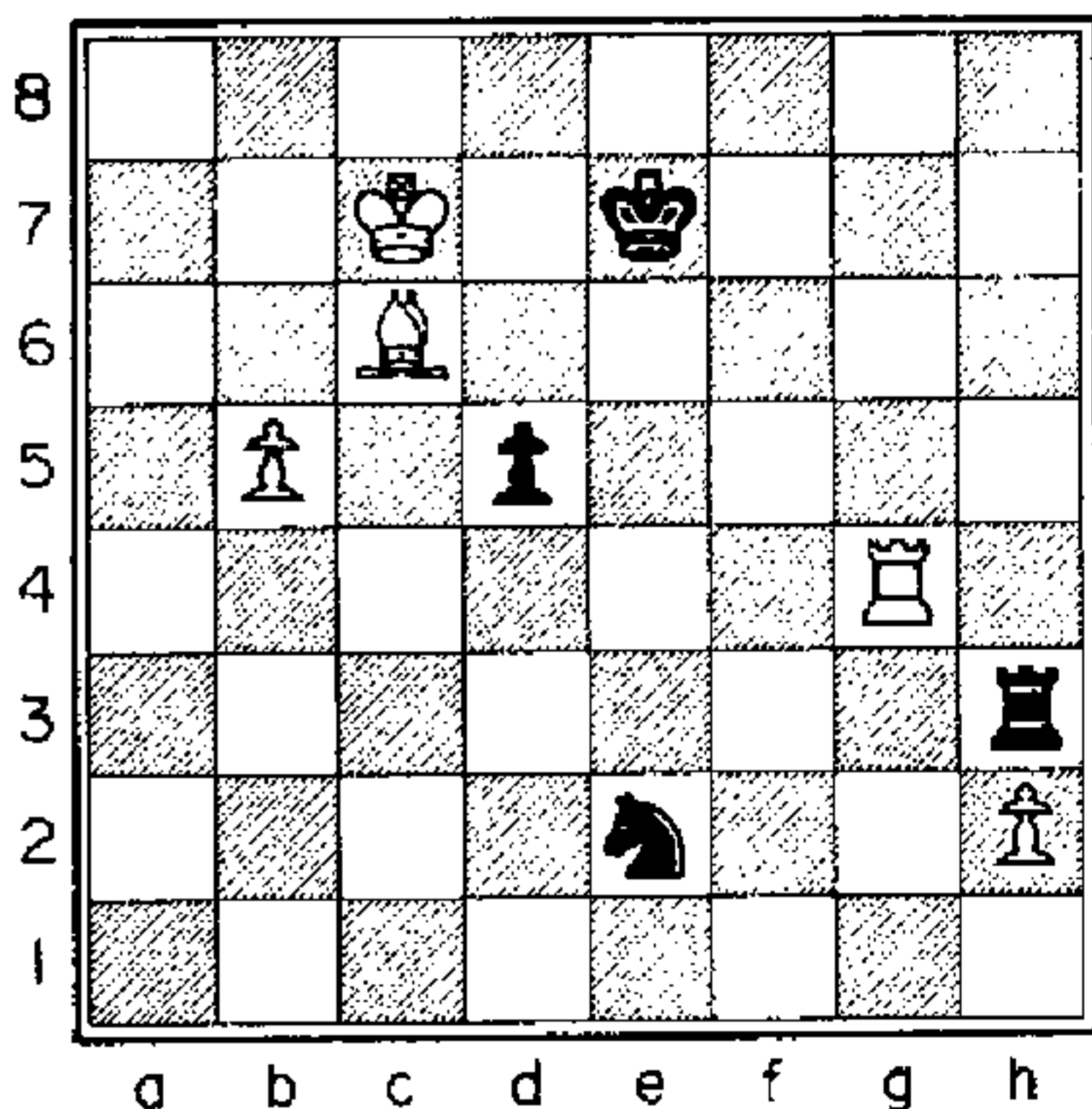
- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| <b>54 Kb6</b> | <b>Rxf3</b> |
| <b>55 b5</b>  | <b>g4?</b>  |

With the logical plan of exchanging the g-pawn for White's h-pawn, but the pawn quickly goes lost for nothing. Black could put up tough resistance with 55 ... Rb3!, which places the rook *behind* the passed b-pawn while freeing his own d-pawn for advance.

- |                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| <b>56 Rh4!</b> | <b>Rh3</b> |
| <b>57 Rxf6</b> | <b>Ne2</b> |

There is nothing better: 57 ... Nd3 loses to 58 Rg3 and 57 ... Ne6 to 58 Bxd5 Rxf2 59 Re4. After the text move, however, the hasty 58 Bxd5? would be an error because after 58 ... Nc3! Black could sacrifice his knight for White's b-pawn and the capture White's h-pawn, thereby achieving a theoretically drawn endgame.

**58 Kc7!**



The b-pawn, supported by the king and the other pieces, will be decisive.

- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| <b>58 ...</b>  | <b>Rh7</b>  |
| <b>59 b6</b>   | <b>Ke6+</b> |
| <b>60 Kd8!</b> | <b>Nd4!</b> |

Both sides show fine imagination at this point. White's win is prosaic after 60 ... Kd6 61 Rg6+ Kc5 62 b7.

- |                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| <b>61 Rxd4</b>  | <b>Kd6</b> |
| <b>62 Bxd5!</b> |            |



Karpov's tactics are wonderfully sharp to the very end. Of course he wants to be left with a pawn to go with his extra bishop. If now 62 ... Rh8+ 63 Bg8+ (check!) Kc6 64 Rg4! Kxb6 65 h4. Or the pretty variation 62 ... Rxh2 63 b7 Rh8+ 64 Bg8+ Kc6 65 b8=N+! Kb7 66 Rb4+ Ka7 67 Kc7 and 68 Ra4 mate. Dueball chooses the third way of losing.

**62 ... Kc5**  
**63 Rd2 Kxb6**  
**64 Rc2!**  
**Black**  
**resigns**

With the Black king cut off, the h-pawn wins very easily.

3.22 17 ... Bxd4:  
 E. Mednis-J. Fedorowicz,  
 New York 1977

Black makes sure that White will not have the bishop pair. However, White's rook now finds an excellent home on the fourth rank.

**18 Rxd4 Rc5**  
**19 Bh3!**

Not so much to prevent the doubling of rooks as ... Ng7 followed by ... e5 or ... Nf5.

**19 ... b5**  
**20 Re1 Kf8**  
**21 Re3 a5**

After White had guarded his third rank with 21 Re3, the "threat" was to chase away the Black rook with 22 b4. Black prevents that but at the cost of a permanent weakening of the b-pawn.

**22 c3! Rc7?**

Black doesn't recover after the coming 23 b4!; therefore the text must be rated as wrong. Therefore for better or worse 22 ... a4! is required. Black's b- and a-pawn cannot turn out to be very vulnerable. White's bishop and his hopes for queenside counterplay vanish. On the other hand the mobilization of White's queenside is made extremely difficult.

**23 b4! Ra7**  
**24 Kb2 Rba8**  
**25 Rh4! Kg8**  
**26 Rhe4 Kf8**  
**27 Bf1!**

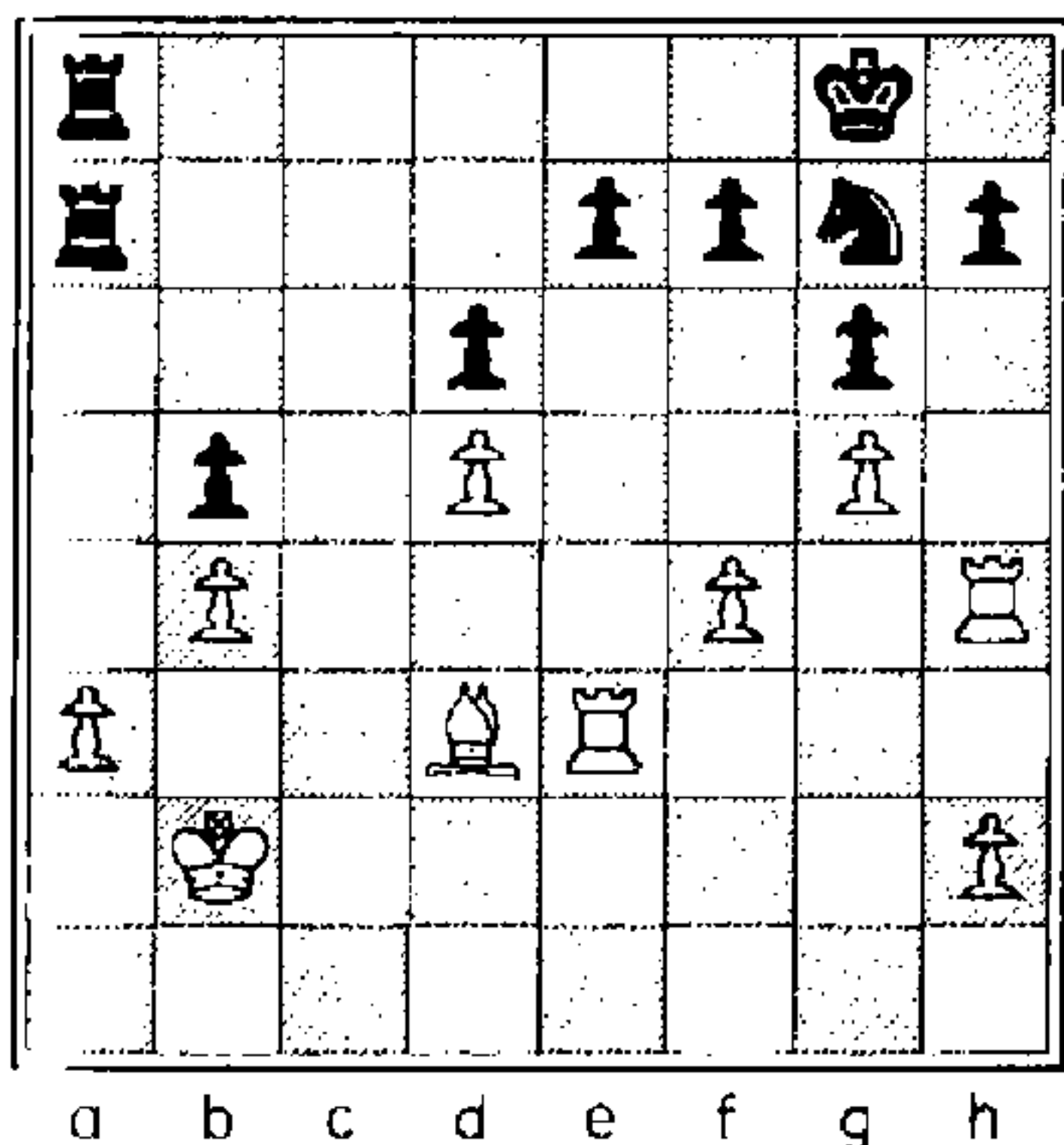
With Black's b-pawn a chronic weakness now, the bishop returns to his home diagonal.

**27 ... Rb7**  
**28 Rh4 Ng7**  
**29 Bd3 Kg8**  
**30 f4!**

White combines play against the b-pawn with that against Black's h-pawn. The threat is simple: 31 Reh3 Nh5 32 Be2. Note that White's kingside play is only possible because both pairs of rook

remain on the board. Since the above plan can not be defended against, Black tries to create some play by opening the a-file.

30 ...                    axb4  
31 cxb4!                Rba7



Because of the vulnerability of Black's b- and h-pawns, White's advantage is evident. But how to proceed? My initial plan was to immediately head for Black's b-pawn as follows: 32 Bc2 Rc8 33 Rb3 Nh5 34 Bd1. Black then must play 34 ... Rac7 and White wins for starters one pawn with the simple 35 Bxh5 gxh5 36 Rxh5. While trying to visualize this position in my mind, it seemed that Black gets "too much play" along the c-file. When actually setting this position up on the board at home, it became clear enough that Black's play is more dangerous than actual and in fact White threatens the decisive 37 Rxh7.

Black's only chance for some defense would have been the immediate 36 ... e6.

Nevertheless, the diagrammed position seemed so strong to me that I wanted to come up with a fruitful plan that offers "no chances" for Black and after some reflection I decided on:

32 Bxb5!                Nf5  
33 Rhh3                Nxe3  
34 Rxe3

After the sacrifice of the Exchange, this is the starting position. On a purely materialistic balance, White does not have quite enough compensation. However, on positional considerations White has more than enough. Two connected passed pawns which can be assisted by the bishop in their advance — this packs a tremendous punch. Of course, White's pre-sacrifice advantages also were considerable. Still, the master always looks for a dynamic way to exchange one set of advantages for a new set consisting of expanded advantages. I felt confident that this was being achieved with 32 Bxb5!

Theoretically this position must be rated as won for White. This does not mean, however, that it plays itself. Accuracy is required to both prevent counterplay and the establishment by Black of a viable defensive formation. Black's extra pawn is on the kingside so that his

next move is a logical attempt at creating some counterplay.

**34 ... e6**  
**35 Bc4 exd5**

This allows the bishop a strong stable location. However, the attempt to pressure the bishop with 35 ... Rc7 36 Kb3 Rac8 is refuted by 37 dxe6! Rxc4 38 e7, leading to a won R + P endgame for White.

**36 Bxd5 Rb8**  
**37 Kb3 Kf8**  
**38 a4!**

Passed pawns must be pushed! White's K + R + B stand well enough so that White should immediately start to exploit the strength in his position: the passed pawns. If Black does nothing the pawns will move inexorably forward: b5, Kb4, a5, b6 etc.

With his reply Black hopes to either activate the rook — or in case of the exchange — to bring the king over to the queenside for defense. It does not work out, but there is nothing satisfactory.

**38 ... Re8**  
**39 Rxe8+! Kxe8**  
**40 a5! Kd8**  
**41 Ka4 Kc8**

Also 41 ... Kc7 is met by 42 Kb5! and Black's K + R are in *zugzwang*.

Neither is there time for rook active e.g. 41 ... Re7 42 a6 Re1 43 K Ra1 44 Kb6 followed by 45 a7.

**42 Kb5!**

The king is a fighting piece in endgame and therefore should be made active and *kept* active. The king is particularly helpful when in front of or to the side of passed pawns, as this way he can be of greatest assistance in their advance. Less clear is 42 b5 Rc7! 43 b6 R with Black getting counterplay.

After the text, if Black plays 42 ...Kc7, then 43 a6 puts him in *zugzwang*.

**42 ... Kb8**  
**43 Kb6! Re7**  
**44 a6 Rc7**

There is no hope. If 44 ... R 45 b5 and the rook must move whereupon 46 Bb7 wins.

**45 Bb7!**

The threat of 46 a7 mate requires the reply, which leads to an elementary K + P endgame win.

**45 ... Rxb7 +**  
**46 axb7 d5**  
**47 Kc5**  
**Black resigns**

# 4

## Sicilian Defense: Accelerated Dragon Variation

1 e4	c5
2 Nf3	Nc6
3 d4	cx d4
4 Nxd4	g6

This position establishes the Accelerated Dragon (AD) Variation. As the name implies, in the AD Black tries to fianchetto his KB as quickly as possible, but without allowing White's queen to capture on d4 (as would occur after 2 ... g6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Qxd4). Black's idea in the AD is to postpone playing ... d6 in the hope that later on he will be able to play ... d7-d5 in one step, thus gaining a significant tempo over the lines where it takes Black two moves to realize this liberating advance.

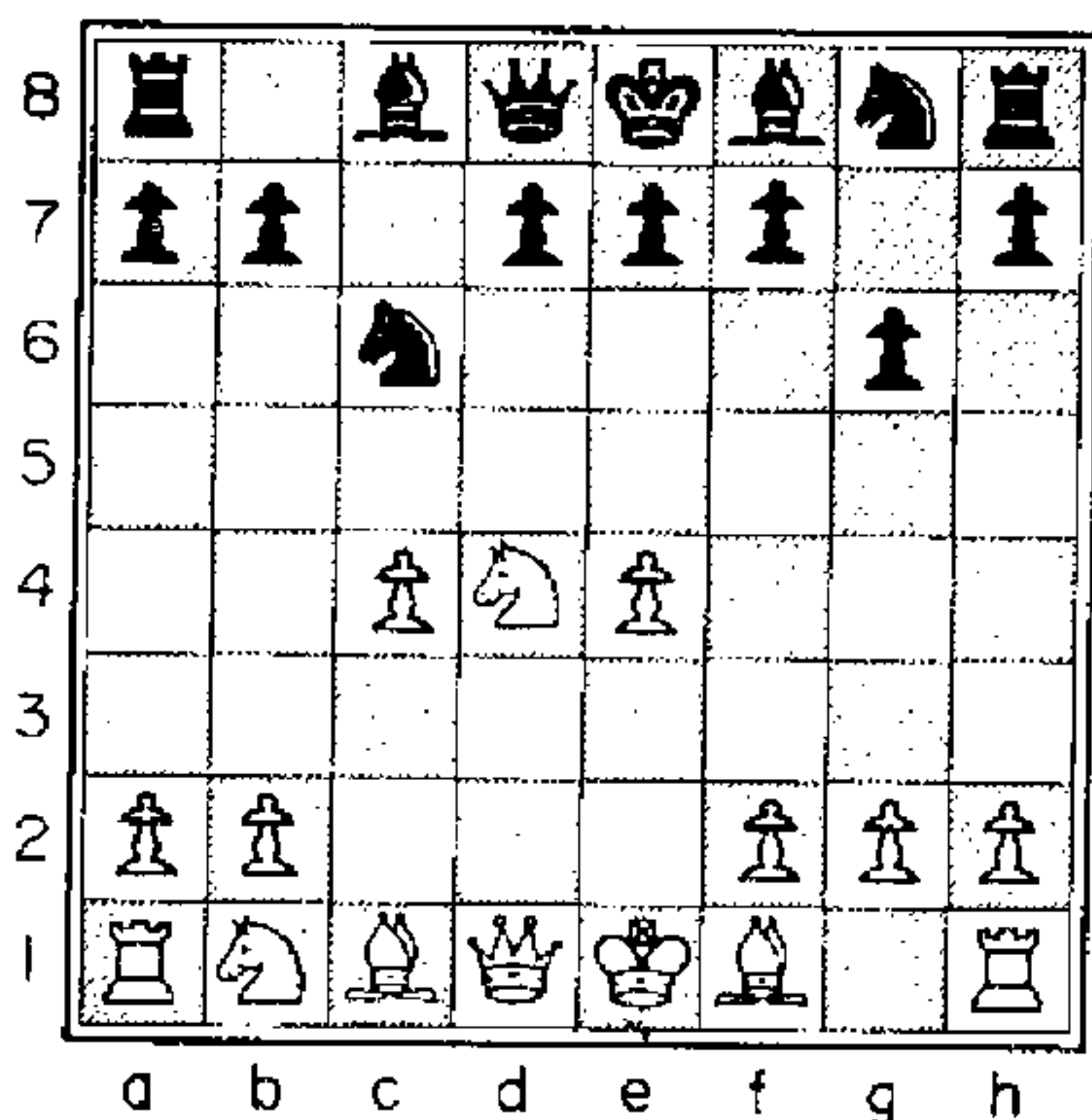
If White now plays the routine 5 Nc3 Bg7 6 Be3, the best that he can obtain is some normal variation in the Dragon. And he must be very

careful with the variation that he chooses, lest he not be unfavorably surprised by a one step ... d7-d5. Even though 4 ... g6 has given Black maximum flexibility regarding when to play ... d6, it also has a sophisticated disadvantage: since Black has avoided an early ... Nf6, White has had no need to play Nc3. Instead he can expand his central influence by first playing:

**5 c4!**

*(See next diagram)*

With this move White brings about a characteristic Maroczy bind position. Named after the Hungarian GM, the key ingredient of the "Maroczy bind" is White pawns on c4 and e4. This makes it exceedingly difficult for Black to free his position by playing ... d5 — the typical freeing advance in the



Sicilian. Thus White can look forward to a definite central superiority for a long time to come. Unlike the typical sharp tactical variations of the Sicilian, the play and planning after 5 c4! is essentially strategic in nature. Therefore many strategists gladly transpose into this position, even though they have opened with 1 c4. This was already briefly alluded to in Chapter 1.

Even though the advantages of 5 c4! clearly outweigh the negatives, there are two slight minuses associated with it. Firstly, White's control of d4 is permanently weakened since he has no pawn left to protect it. Moreover, White's c4-e4 pawn duo has significantly decreased the scope of his KB. White has to be careful that as a result of a series of minor piece exchanges he is not left with *the* inferior minor piece: a cooped up, impotent KB.

5 ...

Nf6

The significant alternative 5 ... Bg7 6 Be3 Nf6 7 Nc3 8 Qxg4 Nxd4. This way the K diagonal is "lengthened" and exchange of a set of minor pieces has freed Black's position somewhat. Nevertheless, with paradoxical retreat 9 Qd1! White keeps a typical advantage. An attempt by Black to retain the knight on d4 with 9 ... e5 can either be ignored with 10 Bd3 followed by 11 0-0 or sharply reacted against with 10 Nb5! 0-0 11 Qd2!. After both 11 ... Nxb5 12 cxb5 11 ... Qh4 12 Bd3! d5 13 cxd5 White has a steady strategic superiority.

Therefore Black usually retreats the knight to e6 (9 ... Ne6), after 10 Rc1!, White keeps some edge because of his central superiority. One recent example 10 ... d6 11 b4! 0-0 12 Be2 13 Qd2 Bb7 14 f3 f5 15 exf5 g6 16 Nd5, as in Smejkal-Radulovic European Team Championship Skara 1980.

However, the lines starting with 5 ... Nf6 are of somewhat greater *practical* importance, because quite often they result via transposition from 1 c4 or 1 Nf3 openings. For instance, the move order in Ivkovic-Webb, Moscow 1977 was 1 Nf3 2 c4 c5 3 Nc3 g6 4 d4 cxd4 5 Nf6 Nc6 6 e4.

**6 Nc3            Nxd4**

A very popular continuation: Black exchanges knights at the moment that White is forced to recapture with the queen. Since White's queen will soon have to retreat from d4, Black hopes that this will lead to a gain in developmental time for him.

The independent alternative is to exchange nothing and continue with 6 ... Bg7 7 Be3 d6 8 Be2 0-0. However, after 9 0-0 Black is very cramped and it is very difficult for him to do without the exchange on d4. After both 9 ... Nxd4 10 Bxd4 and 9 ... Bd7 10 Rc1 Nxd4 11 Bxd4 White has a nice advantage.

**7 Qxd4            d6**  
**8 Bg5!**

The plan suggested with White's 8th and 9th moves has the dual characteristics of being aggressive and solid. The aggressiveness feature has the additional psychological advantage that Black may well feel "safer" in allowing an inferior endgame. This is, of course, exactly our goal!

As far as theoretical considerations go, White has, of course, also other perfectly reasonable plans. He can play 8 f3, followed by 9 Be3 or 8 Be2 followed by 9 0-0.

**8 ...            Bg7**  
**9 f3!**

If White wants to play the solid f3, it is most efficient to do so immediately. Though White's KB in a majority of cases will be developed to e2, in a few instances this can be replaced with something better — as will be seen subsequently in Byrne-Garcia Padron, Torremolinos 1977. There is another subtle point behind White's 8-9th moves. If Black chases the annoying bishop away with 9 ... h6, then after 10 Be3 0-0 11 Qd2! White can retreat his queen with gain of time by attacking the h-pawn.

**9 ...            0-0**  
**10 Qd2            Be6**

With the e-pawn securely fastened, the only presently vulnerable point in White's position is the c-pawn. Therefore the plan associated with the active text move makes much more sense than something like the passive 10 ... Bd7.

**11 Rc1!**

White's first objective must be to safeguard his queenside, since this is where Black's chances for counterplay lie. White will have to protect his c-pawn by playing b3 and therefore the QR must be removed from the diagonal of Black's KB.

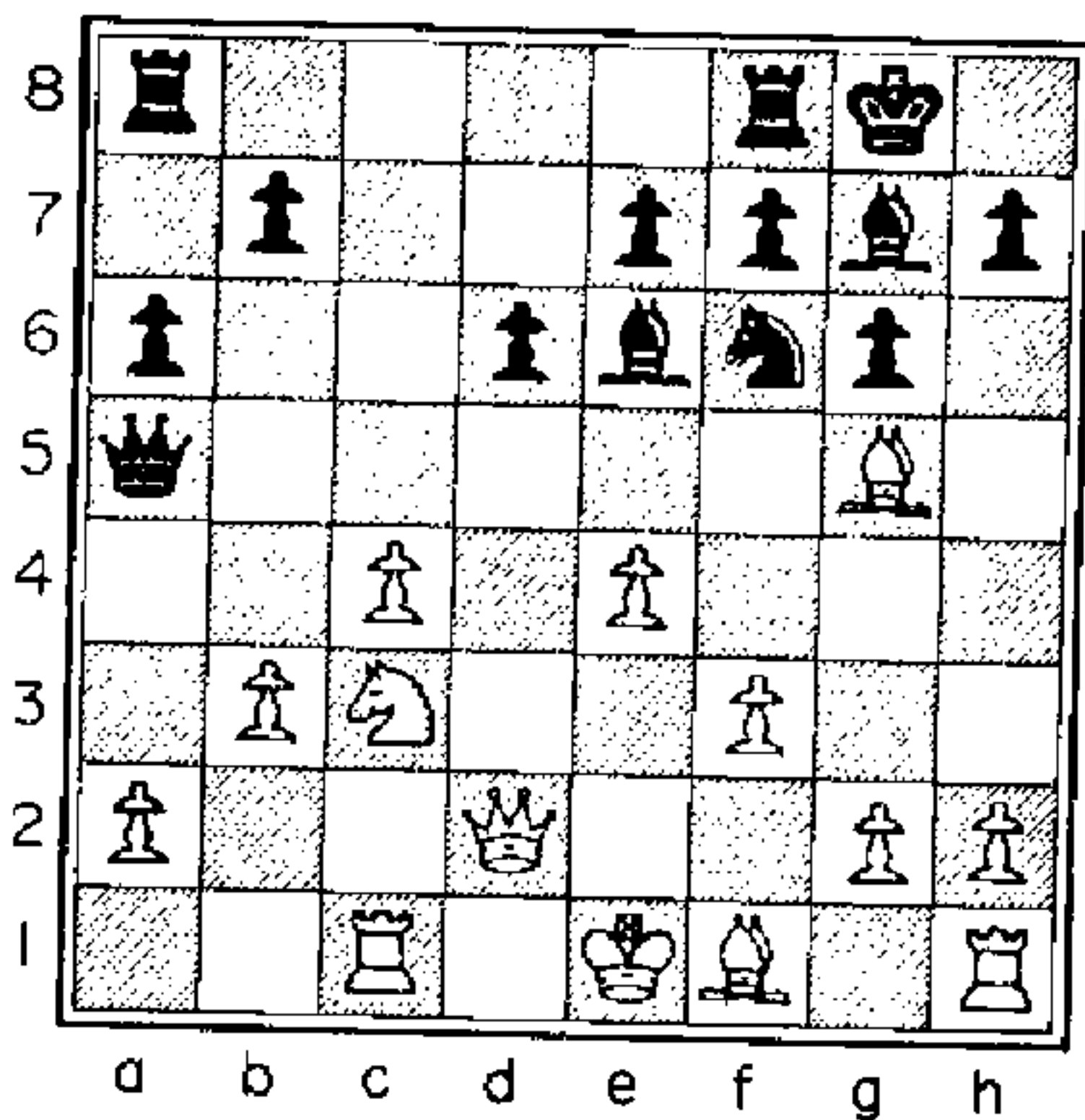
**11 ...            Qa5**  
**12 b3**

Black's counterplay can only come from ... a6, followed by

... b5. Yet the timing of these moves is very critical. The two major alternatives now are: 12 ... a6? and 12 ... Rfc8. Each of them will be considered in detail.

#### 4.1 12 ... a6?:

R. BYRNE-GARCIA PADRON,  
TORREMOLINOS 1977



Strategically Black's move makes sense, but with his response White achieves an extremely favorable endgame.

**13 Nd5!                    Qxd2+**

Equally unappetizing is the retreat 13 ... Qd8 since 14 Nxf6+ ruins Black's pawn formation.

**14 Kxd2!**

Since we are about to enter an endgame, the king belongs in the center. Moreover, White's QB remains actively placed on g5.

**14 ...                    Bxd5**

Worse is 14 ... Nxd5?! 15 cxd5 Bd7 16 Rc7 with a won endgame. However, Black's position after the text move is both very unpleasant and lifeless. From a *practical* standpoint probably the best try is 14 ... Rae8!?

**15 cxd5                    Rfc8**  
**16 Rxc8+!                Rxc8**  
**17 g3!!**

A simple looking move, yet with exceptional power. As a consequence of not having developed his KB earlier, White now threatens to activate it to h3, followed by challenging the c-file with Rc1. Since it can not be prevented, the only viable approach is to minimize the effect and for this the best way is 17 ... e6! 18 Bh3 Re8 19 dxe6 fxe6 20 Rc1! Kf7. White has a very active position, the bishop pair and play against Black's weak pawns. Yet Black has some hope of holding on. In the game he has none.

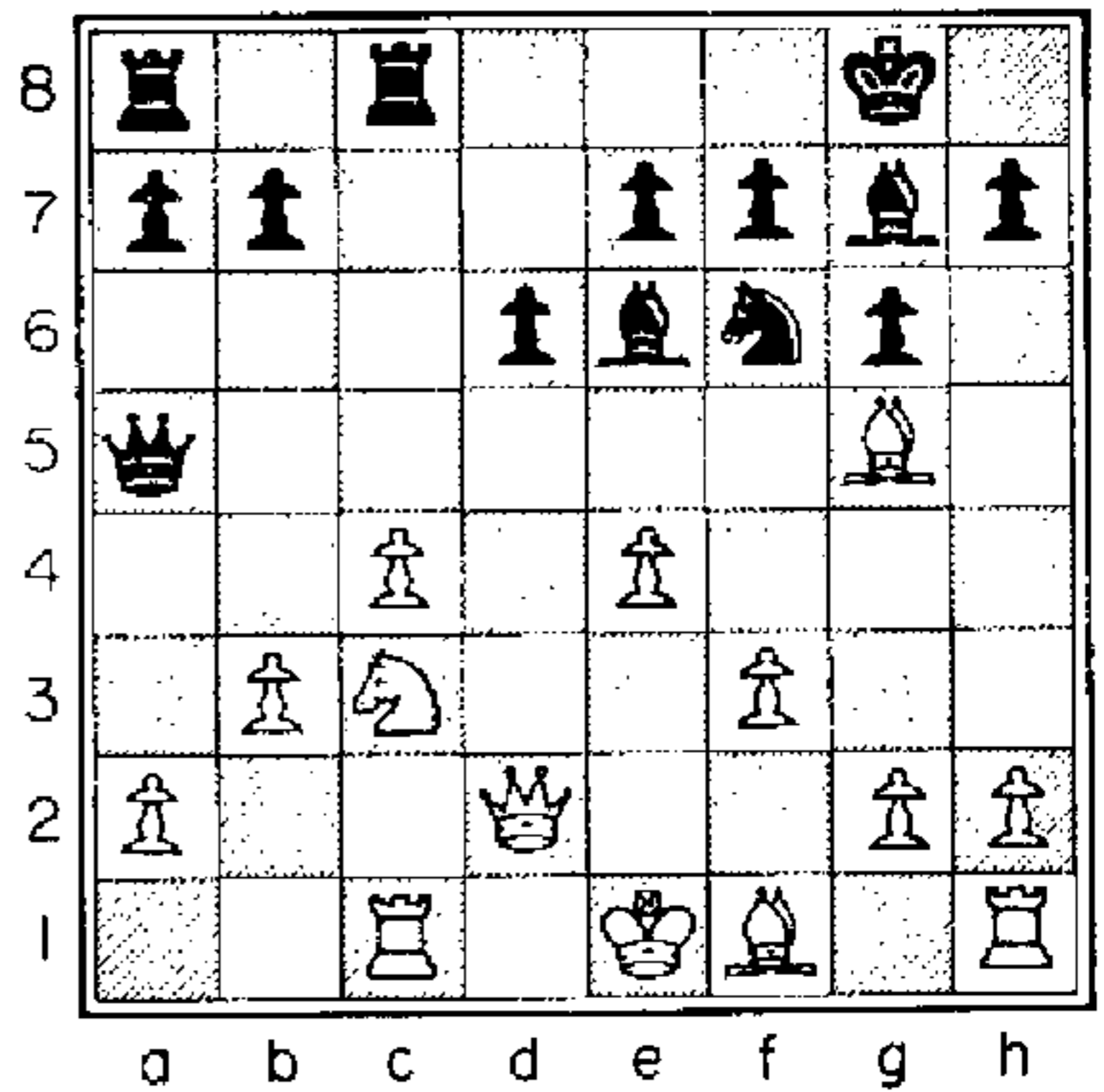
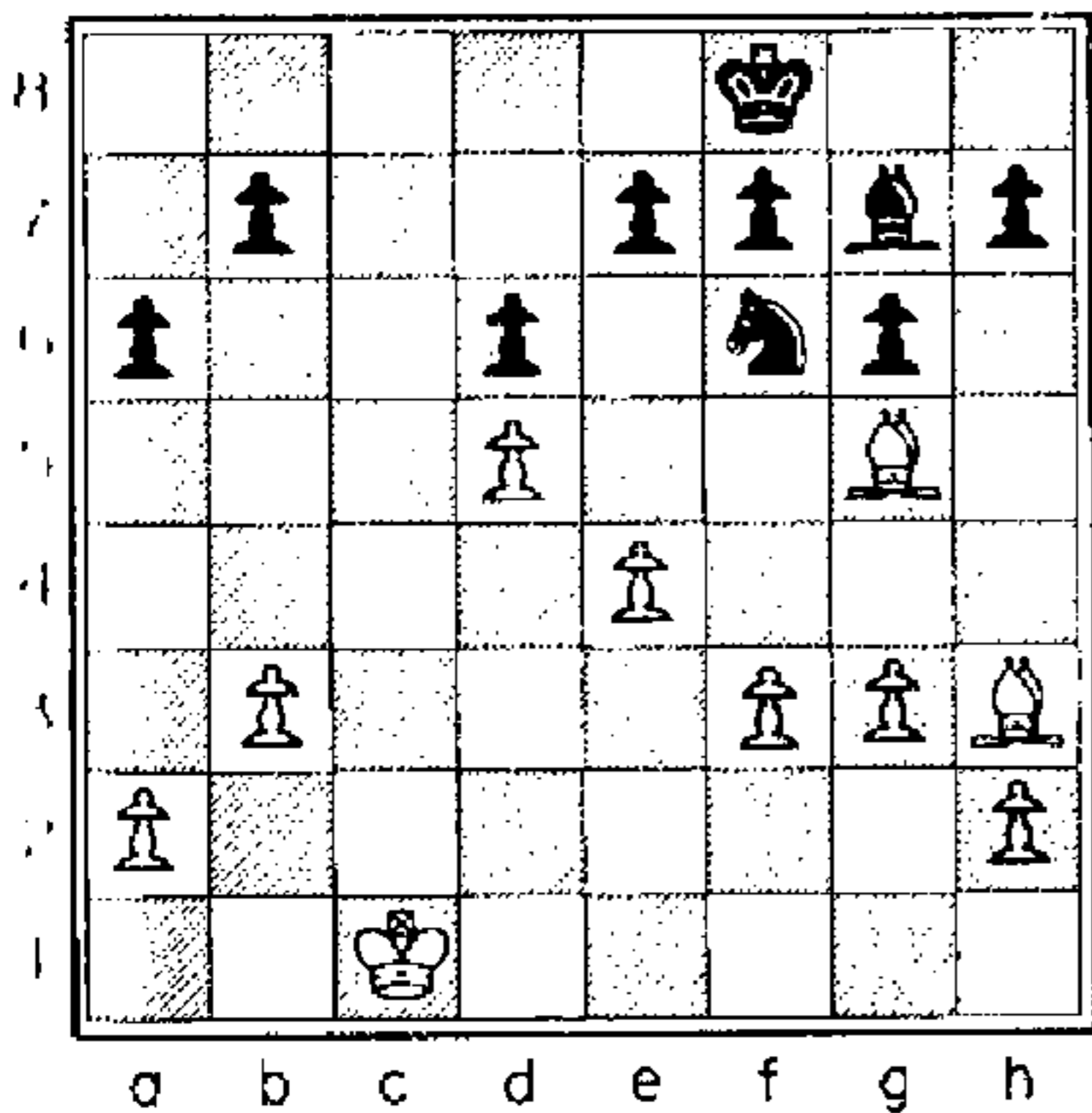
**17 ...                    Kf8?**  
**18 Bh3                    Rc7?!**

The passive 18 ... Rb8 is a bit better.

**19 Rc1!                    Rxc1**  
**20 Kxc1**

(See next diagram)

There is no way that Black can now defend his queenside against



the combined power of White's bishops and king. For instance, 20 ... b5 21 Bd2! Ne8 22 Bc8 Nc7 23 Ba5.

- |         |     |
|---------|-----|
| 20 ...  | Ke8 |
| 21 Bc8  | b6  |
| 22 Bxa6 | Kd8 |
| 23 Bb5  | h6  |
| 24 Be3  | Kc7 |
| 25 Kc2  | e6  |
| 26 Bc6! |     |

Keeping the bind while freeing b5 for White's king.

- |         |     |
|---------|-----|
| 26 ...  | g5  |
| 27 Kd3  | Ng8 |
| 28 Kc4  | Ne7 |
| 29 Kb5  | Nc8 |
| 30 Ka6! | Bc3 |
| 31 Bb7  |     |

**Black resigns.**

Black's b-pawn also will go lost.

**4.2 12 ... Rfc8**

By immediately being in a position to challenge the c-file, Black takes most of the sting out of White's successful plan of the previous game. There are two reasons why the KR is the more logical one to go to c8: (1) The rook had nothing to do on f8, and (2) Since Black plans queenside play with ... a6 and ... b5, the QR could have good prospects on the a-file.

**13 Be2**

With the queenside shored up, it is in order to complete the development of the kingside. True that White could get a bit of an endgame edge with 13 Nd5 Qxd2+ 14 Kxd2 Nxd5 15 exd5 f6!, but he can hope for somewhat more with the text.

At this moment it should be instructive to demonstrate how this position can easily occur from closed openings. For the two games considered in the subsequent section, the actual move orders were:



(1) Karpov-Kavalek, Nice 1974: 1 c4 c5 2 Nf3 g6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Nxd4 Nc6 5 e4 Nf6 6 Nc3 d6 7 Be2 Nxd4 8 Qxd4 Bg7 9 Bg5 0-0 10 Qd2 Be6 11 Rc1 Qa5 12 f3 Rfc8 13 b3.

(2) Averbakh-L. Popov, Polanica Zdroj 1976: 1 c4 c5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 Nc3 d6 4 d4 cxd4 5 Nxd4 Nc6 6 e4 Nxd4 7 Qxd4 g6 8 Bg5 Bg7 9 f3 0-0 10 Qd2 Be6 11 Rc1 Qa5 12 b3 Rfc8 13 Be2.

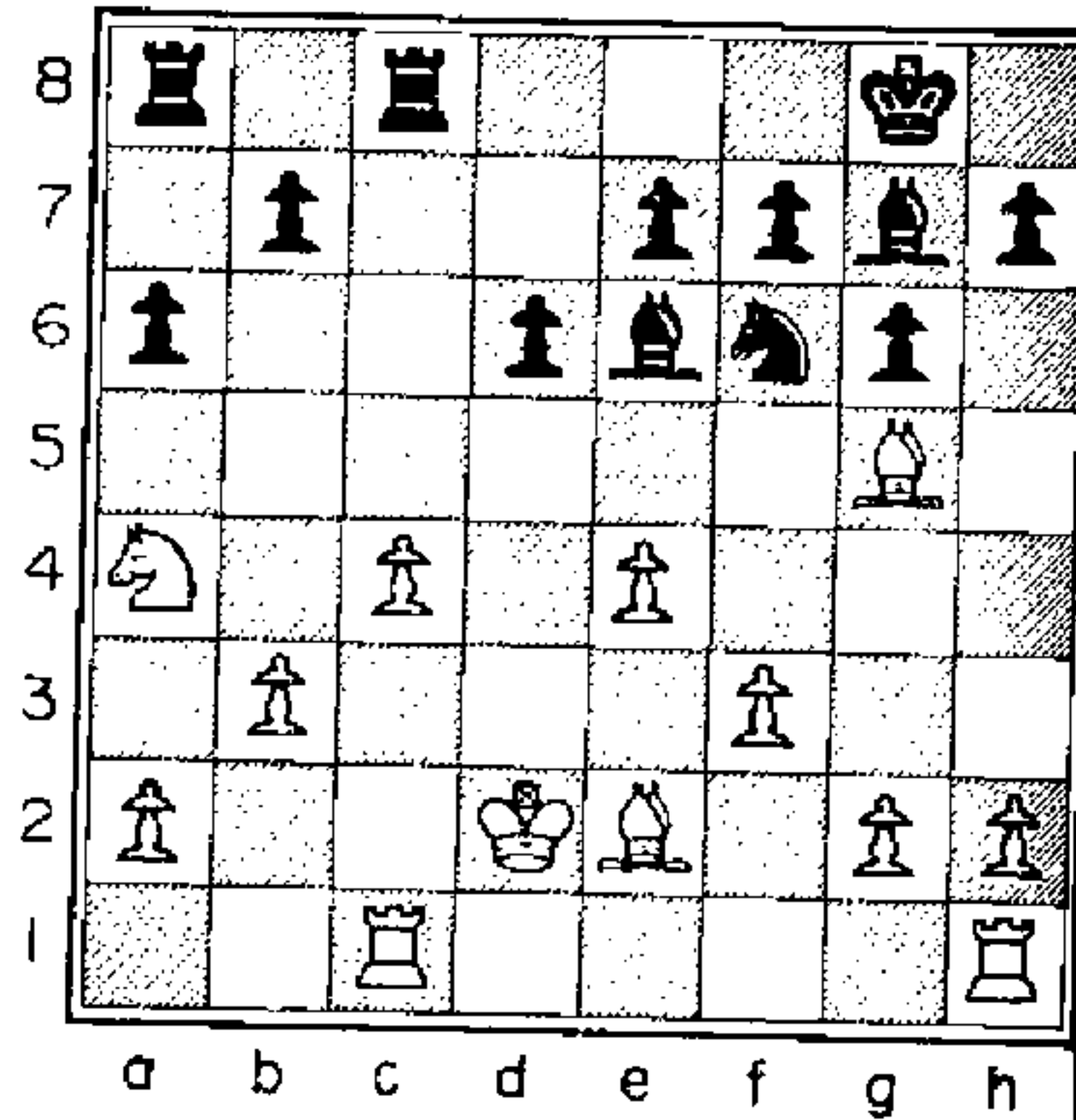
13 ... a6  
14 Na4!

White immediately takes advantage of the weakening of the b6 square and thereby the insecure placement of the Black rooks, to bring about a slightly, yet pleasantly favorable, endgame. At this moment harmless would have been 14 Nd5, because of 14 ... Qxd2+ 15 Kxd2 Nxd5! 16 cxd5 (16 exd5 f6!) 16 ... Bd7. Then 17 Rxc8+?! Rxc8 18 Bxe7? Bh6+! 19 Ke1 Rc1+ 20 Bd1 f5! leads to potential trouble only for White (Averbakh).

14 ... Qxd2+

After the logical enough 14 ... Qd8, Karpov suggests 15 c5! with the idea: 15 ... dxc5 16 Qxd8+ Rxd8 17 Nb6, again with an endgame advantage.

15 Kxd2



White's threat is the simple 16 Nb6. The two most logical defensive plans for Black are 15 ... Rc6 and 15 ... Nd7. Each will be illustrated by a complete game.

4.21 15 ... Rc6:

A. Karpov-L. Kavalek,  
Nice Olympiad 1974

Directly guarding b6 while getting ready to double rooks. Nevertheless, this is an awkward location for the rook.

16 Nc3!

The kind of move that only someone who understands chess at the highest level would make. The knight on the edge of the board has fulfilled its function, and White immediately pulls it back so that it can be utilized for the play indicated in the center. The position after Black's 15th occurred twice in the 1974 U.S. Championship (which

took place immediately after Nice). In Reshevsky-Browne, White continued with 16 Be3 and in Benko-Browne with 16 Rc2. Though playable of course, neither move is as incisive as 16 Nc3!

**16 ... Rac8**  
**17 Nd5! Kf8?!**

Since Black soon both captures the knight and returns with his king to g8, time could have been saved with the immediate 17 ... Bxd5. Of course, after either 18 cxd5 or 18 exd5 White's bishop pair gives him a slight but pleasant edge.

**18 Be3!**

The bishop's functions on g5 are exhausted, and so White brings it back to take up a useful central location. The doubling of the pawns via 18 Nxf6 is useless, since after 18 ... exf6 and 19 ... f5 Black immediately undoubles them.

**18 ... Nd7**  
**19 h4!**

With control of the center assured, White starts action on the flank.

**19 ... Bxd5?!**

This does not work out well. Karpov suggests retaining the bishop by 19 ... f5 20 Nf4 (20 h5 N16) 20 ... Bf7.

**20 exd5 R6c7**  
**21 h5 Kg8?!**

Too passive, according to Karpov. He suggests either 21 ... Re8 followed by 22 ... e6 or the immediate 21 ... Bb2 to force White's QR onto a less desirable square.

**22 f4!**

At the moment White's KB has little scope; therefore White prepares to activate it via g4.

**22 ... Nc5**  
**23 Bg4 Ne4+**  
**24 Kd3 f5**

Rather necessary, but Black's kingside is thereby seriously weakened.

**25 Bf3 b5!?**

Among other plans, White threatened to win a pawn with the simple 26 Bxe4. Black's only hope is counterplay on the queenside.

**26 g4!**

Karpov is most consistent in his attack against Black's weakened kingside. He doesn't have to be told twice where Black's weaknesses lie and he is no believer in procrastination. Of course a major error would be 26 cxb5?? Rc3+ 27 Ke2 Ng3+ and Black wins the Exchange.

**26 ... bxc4+**  
**27 Rxc4!**

The exchange of one pair of rooks is in White's interest, because

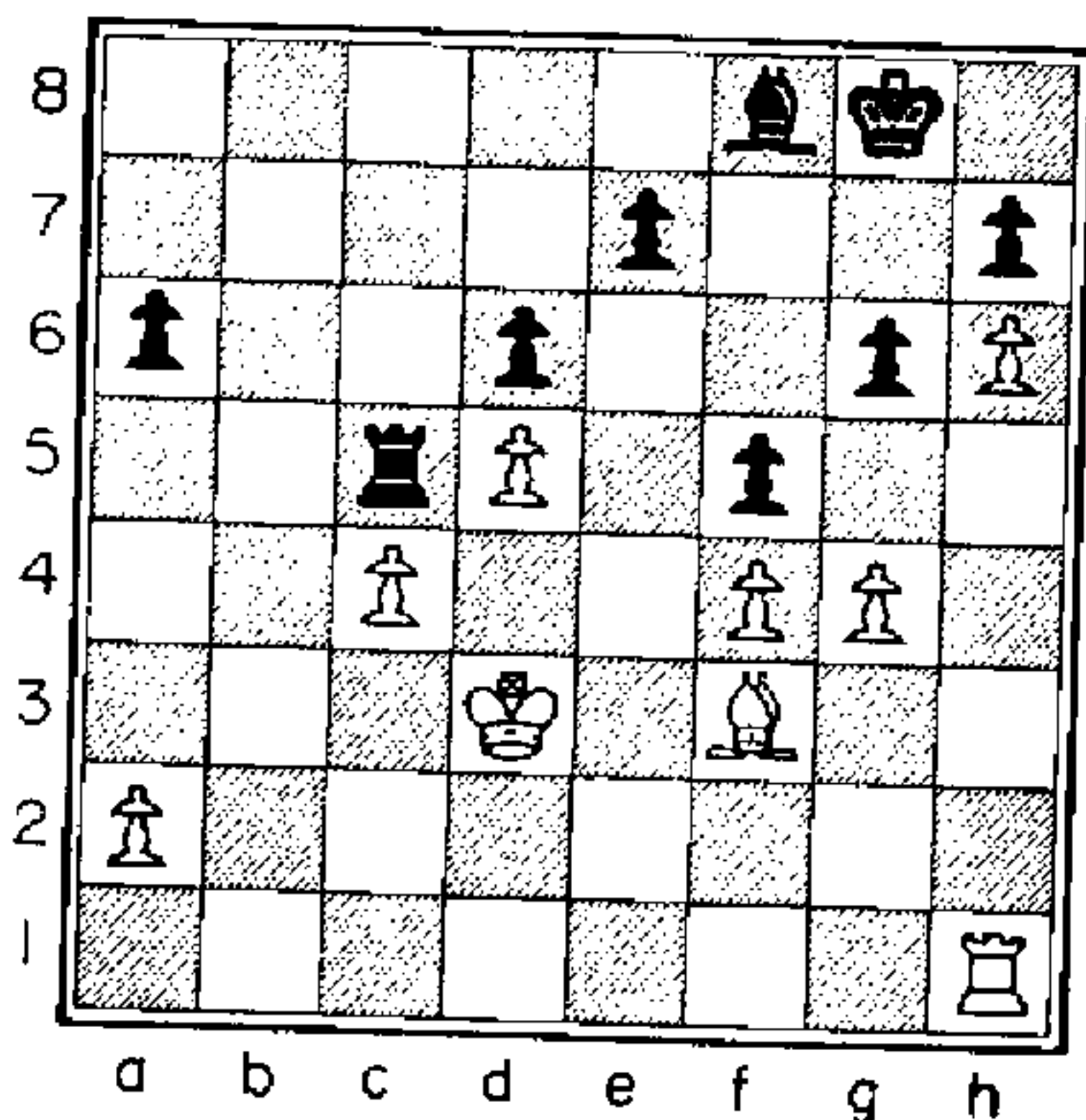
Black's pressure against the queenside is lessened while White keeps his chances on the kingside.

**27 ... Rxc4**  
**28 bxc4 Nc5+**

Black has no other reasonable way to proceed. He puts his drawing hopes on the opposite color bishops.

**29 Bxc5 Rxc5**  
**30 h6! Bf8**

After the *zwischenzug* 30 ... fxg4 31 Bxg4 Bf8, Black gets caught in the following mating net: 32 Be6+ Kh8 33 f5! Ra5 34 Rb1! Ra3+ 35 Ke2 Rxa2+ 36 Kf1 Bxh6 37 f6! exf6 38 Rb8+ Kg7 39 Rg8 mate (Karpov).



**31 Kc3**

White's king moves over to protect against the ... Ra5 threat. Still, this loss of one tempo gives Black

the opportunity for a problem like defense.

Subsequent extensive analysis by both Geller and Karpov has shown that White could immediately close off Black's kingside with 31 g5. According to Karpov, Black's best defense is 31 ... Ra5 32 Rb1! Kf7 33 Rb2 Ra3+ 34 Rb3 Rxa2, but after 35 c5! dxc5 36 d6! c4+ (0-1) 36 ... Ke6 37 Rb8; or 36 ... Ra3 37 Bd5+ e6 38 Rb7+ Ke8 39 Bc6+ Kd8 40 Rb8 mate.) 37 Kxc4 exd5 38 Bd5+ Ke8 39 Rb8+ Ke7 40 Rb7+ Kd8 41 Rxh7 White's advantage is both obvious and major. For instance, 41 ... Ra4 42 Kb3 Rxf4 43 Rg7!, threatening both 44 Rg8 Ke7 45 h7 and 44 Rxf6

**31 ... fxg4!**  
**32 Bxg4 Kf7!**  
**33 Be6+ Kf6**

By sacrificing the h-pawn Black is able to free his pieces.

**34 Bg8 Rc7!**  
**35 Bxh7 e6!**

With an attack on the bishop.

**36 Bg8 exd5**  
**37 h7!**

A last try for White, since 37 Bxd5 allows 37 ... Rh7 and Black wins back the h-pawn for easy equality.

**37 ... Bg7??**

In time pressure Black panics. Correct is the obvious 37 ... Rxc4+

18 Kd3 Bg7. Unfortunately for White 39 h8=Q?! is foiled by 39 ... Bxh8 40 Rxh8 Rc8!! (but not 40 ... Rxf4? 41 Bxd5 or 40 ... Kg7? 41 Bxd5 Rc5 42 Rg8+! Kf6 43 Bb3) and after the inevitable 41 ... Kg7 Black will win the piece back, reaching a drawn R + P endgame. Therefore White would have to be satisfied with 39 Bxd5 Rc5 40 Be4, retaining only a relatively moderate advantage.

**38 Bxd5**

Now White keeps his extra passed pawn and wins quite easily with his material and positional superiority. Harpov soon starts to work on Black's next clear weakness, the a-pawn.

- |                       |             |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| <b>38 ...</b>         | <b>Bh8</b>  |
| <b>39 Kd3</b>         | <b>Kf5</b>  |
| <b>40 Ke3</b>         | <b>Re7+</b> |
| <b>41 Kf3</b>         | <b>a5</b>   |
| <b>42 a4</b>          | <b>Rc7</b>  |
| <b>43 Be4+</b>        | <b>Kf6</b>  |
| <b>44 Rh6!</b>        | <b>Rg7</b>  |
| <b>45 Kg4</b>         |             |
| <b>Black resigns.</b> |             |

4.22 15 ... Nd7:

Y. Averbakh-L. Popov,  
Polonica Zdroj 1976

Directly protecting b6. The e-pawn is indirectly protected (16 Kg7? Bh6+).

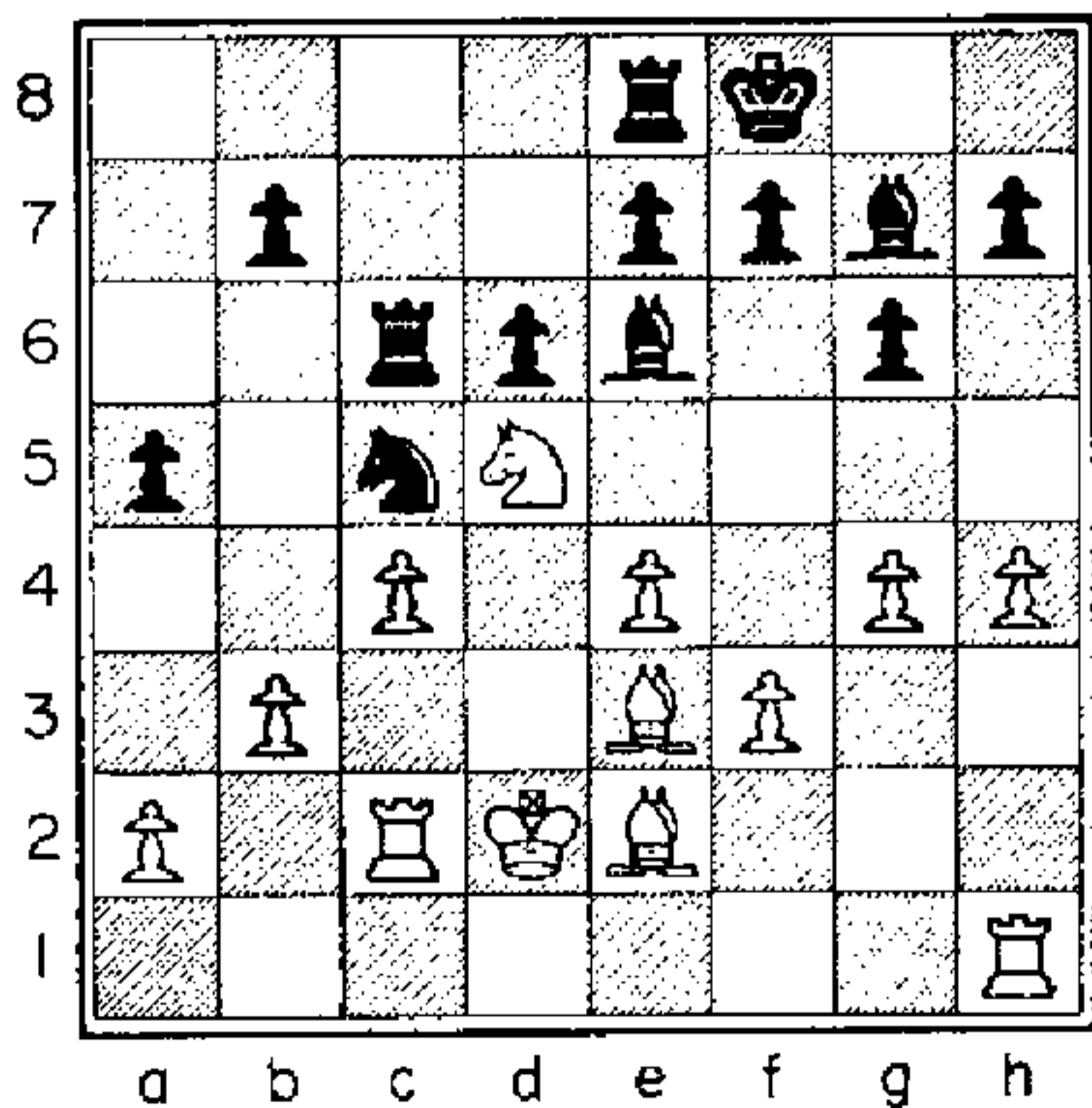
**16 g4!**

Renewing the attack on the e-pawn (17 Bxe7 Bh6+ 18 g5) and starting to attack Black's kingside, which is somewhat weakened by the absence of the knight. Equivalent to the text is 16 h4!

- |                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| <b>16 ...</b>  | <b>Kf8</b> |
| <b>17 h4</b>   | <b>Rc6</b> |
| <b>18 Rc2</b>  | <b>Nc5</b> |
| <b>19 Nc3!</b> |            |

Since it is White who has the space advantage, White wants to retain as many pieces as possible — at least until he has transformed this advantage into something more concrete.

- |                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| <b>19 ...</b>  | <b>a5</b>  |
| <b>20 Nd5</b>  | <b>Re8</b> |
| <b>21 Be3!</b> |            |



Just as in the previous game, after the QN and QB have fulfilled their jobs on the edge of the board,



<b>33 f4!</b>	<b>Bg7</b>	minimum of two pawns.
<b>34 Rh5</b>	<b>Re6</b>	
<b>35 Rxf5+</b>	<b>Kg8</b>	<b>38 ... Rxf6</b>
<b>36 Rg1</b>	<b>Kh7</b>	<b>39 Rgxg7+</b> <b>Kh6</b>
<b>37 Rf7</b>	<b>Rg6</b>	<b>40 Rxf6+</b> <b>Kxg7</b>
<b>38 Nf6+!</b>		<b>41 Rxd6</b> <b>b5</b>

**42 Rd5**

**Black  
resigns.**

Simplifying down to a R + P  
endgame where White will be up a

# 5

## French Defense: Tarrasch Variation

1 e4 e6  
2 d4 d5  
3 Nd2

This move, first recommended by Tarrasch, is the preferred choice for strategic players. Considerably sharper play ensues after 3 Nc3.

3 ... c5

Since — unlike 3 Nc3 — 3 Nd2 applies no pressure on Black's center, the text is considered Black's best plan for aiming at eventual solid equality. More unbalancing are both 3 ... Nf6 and 3 ... Nc6, yet the unbalancing is more in White's than Black's favor.

4 exd5

By far the clearest move. Some masters prefer 4 Ngf3, yet that gives Black a wider choice of possibilities.

4 ... exd5

The most popular continuation whereby Black retains full central influence, though at the cost of an isolated d-pawn. Black can avoid the latter with 4 ... Qxd5, but then remains with less central influence and somewhat lagging development. Against 4 ... Qxd5 White can achieve a slightly favorable endgame as follows: 5 Ngf3 exd5 6 Bc4 Qd6 7 0-0 Nf6 8 Nb3 Nc6 9 Nbx d4 Nxd4 10 Qxd4! Qxd4 11 Nxd4.

5 Bb5+

Again the most forcing continuation. After 5 Ngf3 Black can head for main line play with 5 ... Nc6 or choose the less explored 5 ... c4 5 ... a6.

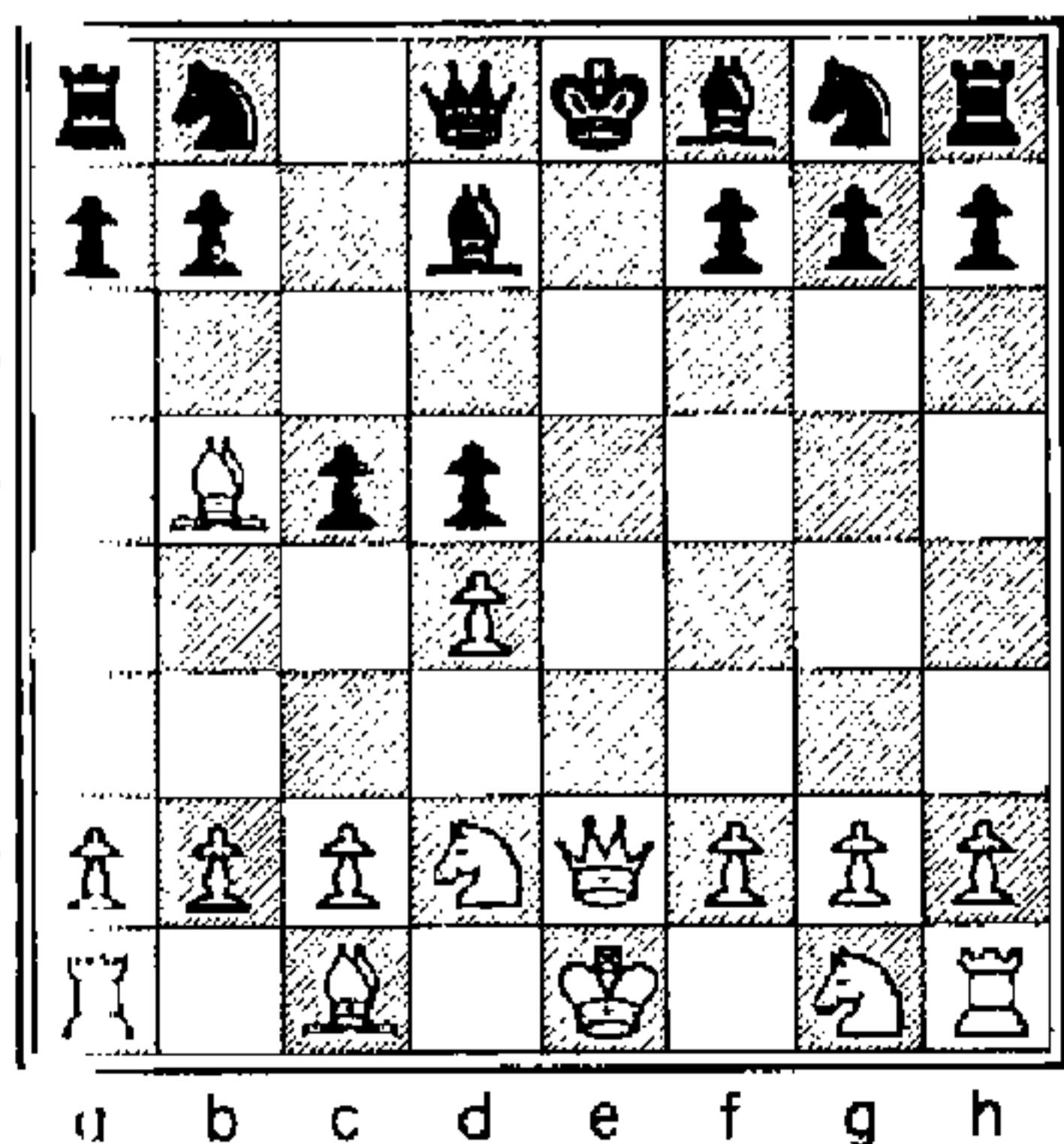
5 ... Bd7

The most direct way of putting the question to White's bishop. The alternative — 5 ... Nc6 — is chosen

Black wants to defend the main position resulting after 6 Ngf3 7 dxc5 Bxc5 8 Nb3 Bd6 9 0-0 Qe7. Another point of 5 ... Nc6 is that 6 Qe2+ is not dangerous since after 6 ... Be7! 7 dxc5 Nf6 8 Nb3 9 0-0 White's KB is not happily placed on b5, e.g. 9 Be3 a6! and neither the capture on c6 nor retreat to a4 or d3 allow White a smooth coordination of his pieces.

However, those who do not want to study the sophisticated main line points can do well to play the sound 5 ... Ne2. Look how Bronstein was twice able to obtain superior endgames thereby: 6 ... Bd6 7 dxc5 8 Nb3 Bb6 (8 ... Bd6 9 Bf4! — the point of 6 Ne2). 9 0-0 Nge7 10 c4! dxc4 11 Qxd8+ Bxd8 12 Bxc4 and White's more active development led to an edge in both Bronstein-Uhlmann, Hastings 1975/76 and Bronstein-Hort, Hastings 1975/76.

6 Qe2+



Forcing Black to make another fundamental decision: should he defend a slightly inferior endgame or a similarly slightly inferior middlegame?

6 ... Qe7

Since it is endgames that I am mostly concerned with here, the text is our main line. After 6 ... Be7, the key positions result after 7 dxc5 Nf6 8 Nb3! 0-0 9 Be3 Re8 10 Nf3. Black can now head for immediate recovery of his pawn with 10 ... Bxc5 or try to achieve this under hopefully more attractive circumstances later on by first playing 10 ... a6. These alternatives work out as follows:

10 ... Bxc5. White has two perfectly reasonable plans:

(1) Castling kingside: 11 Bxd7 Nbx7 12 Nxc5 Nxc5 13 Qb5! Rc8 14 0-0, with a slight advantage.

(2) Castling queenside: 11 Nxc5 Qa5+ 12 Qd2 Qxb5 13 0-0-0, as in Karpov-Korchnoi, Match Game No. 22, 1978. This is the more unbalancing of the two approaches, but also offers White more prospects for a lasting initiative.

10 ... a6. White must either exchange or retreat:

(1) 11 Bxd7 Nbx7 12 0-0 Nxc5 13 Nfd4! and in Tal-Karpov, Montreal 1979 a draw was agreed here. Nevertheless, White is



typically better (Black's isolated d-pawn!) and there is no reason why a strategist shouldn't play on.

(2) 11 Bd3 Ba4 12 Nfd4 Nbd7 13 0-0-0 Nxc5 14 Nf5 as in Tal-Portisch, Montreal 1979, is an unbalancing plan, but White still keeps some edge.

### 7 Bxd7+!

The exchange on e7 just helps Black to develop his bishop: 7 Qxe7+ Bxe7 8 Bxd7+ Nxd7 9 dxc5 Nxc5 10 Nb3 Nf6 11 Nf3 0-0 12 Be3 Rac8 13 Nxc5 Bxc5 14 Bxc5 Rxc5 15 0-0-0 Rfc8, with a draw agreed in Kochiev-Vaganian, Lvov 1978. Black's d-pawn is secure and his free piece play gives him full equality.

7 ... Nxd7

8 dxc5

Black now has two ways of recapturing on c5: with the knight or the bishop. Both of these are important and I shall consider them in turn.

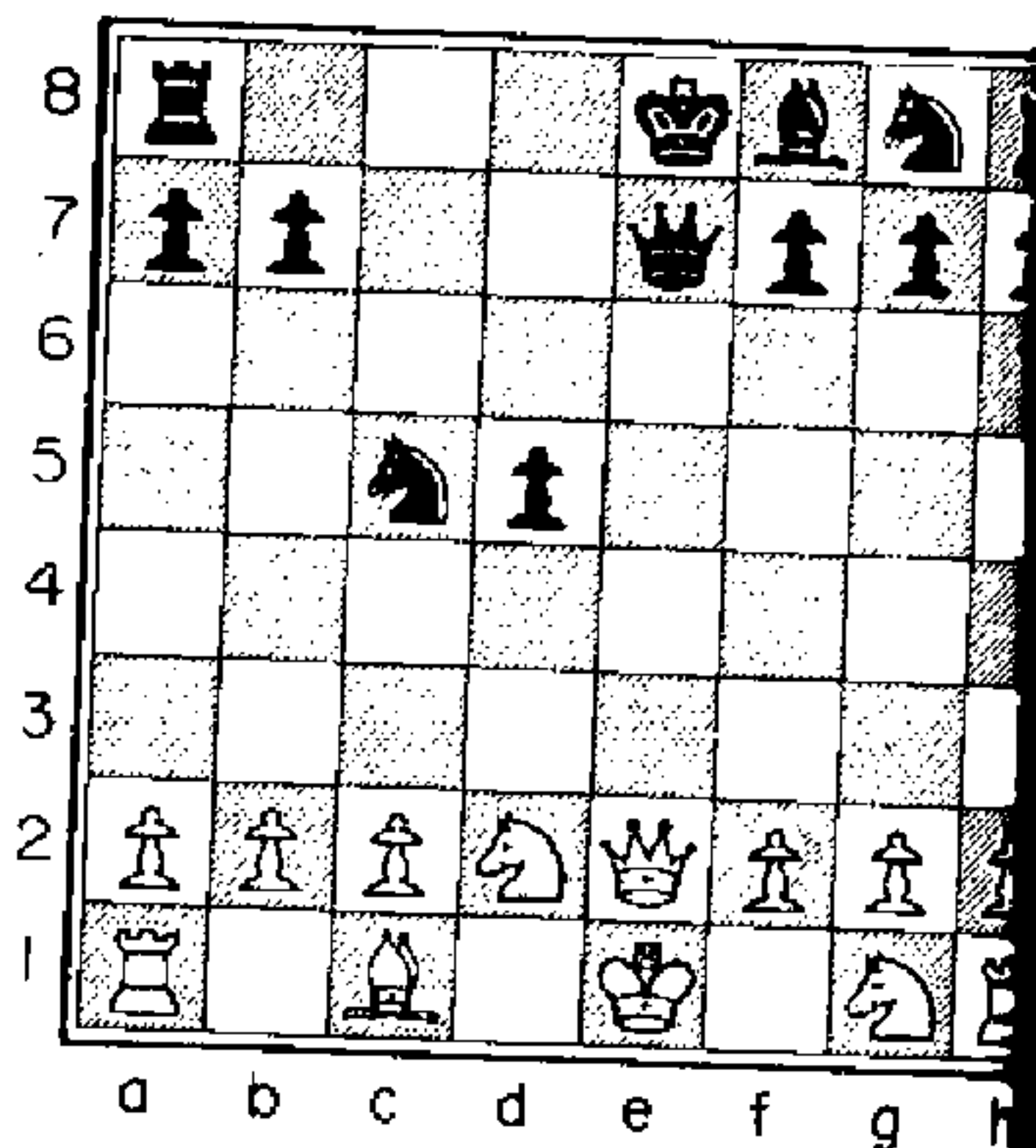
#### 5.1 8 ... Nxc5

(See next diagram)

Recapturing with the knight is the more common method. The QN stands well on c5, but development of the KB is thereby impeded.

### 9 Nb3

The most popular move. White aims at blockading d4, enables the



development of the QB and is ready to exchange off Black's active knight. However, also good 9 Ndf3!, with the first two plans in mind. After 9 ... Qxe2+ 10 Nf6 11 Be3 Nce4 12 0-0-0 Bxc5 13 Bxc5 Nxc5 14 Nf4 White has a comfortable advantage. Averbakh-Szabo, Poland 1977. Therefore in Prandstetter-Wellmann Moscow 1977, Black tried to improve with the immediate 9 ... Nf6!? and in fact after 10 Bg4! 11 Bd4 Ne6 12 Qb5+ Qd7 13 Qxd7+ Kxd7 had achieved virtual equality.

Note that again ineffective 9 Qxe7+, since that would transpose into the position already considered after 7 Qxe7+ Bxe7.

9 ... Qxe2+

Because of the clumsy location of Black's queen it is very risky for Black to remain in a middlegame. Thus e.g. 9 ... Na4?! can be met

...ply by 10 Be3!: 10 ... Nxb2  
 otherwise 11 0-0-0) 11 Nf3 Nc4  
 0-0 Nxe3 13 Rfe1! Nf6 14 Qd3  
 ... shown in an analysis by  
 ... it is very doubtful if Black  
 ... survive his backward develop-  
 ...

**10 Nxe2 Nxb3**

By far Black's most popular  
 ... he not only exchanges a  
 ... attacker and allows the  
 ... placement of his KB, but also  
 ... by giving White a doubled pawn  
 ... to minimize the inferiority of  
 ... an isolated pawn himself. Of  
 ... possible is 10 ... Na4, but  
 ... 11 Nbd4, as in Parma-  
 ... Yugoslavia-USSR, 1971,  
 ... prospects against the  
 ... pawn remain intact and with it his  
 ... advantage. Inferior is 10 ... Ne6?!  
 ... that allows the smooth  
 ... development of White's queenside  
 ... 11 Be3 Nf6 12 0-0-0 b6  
 ... 0-0-0 14 Ned4, with a clear  
 ... advantage for White in Taimanov-  
 ... 1948 USSR Cham-  
 ...

**11 axb3 Bc5**

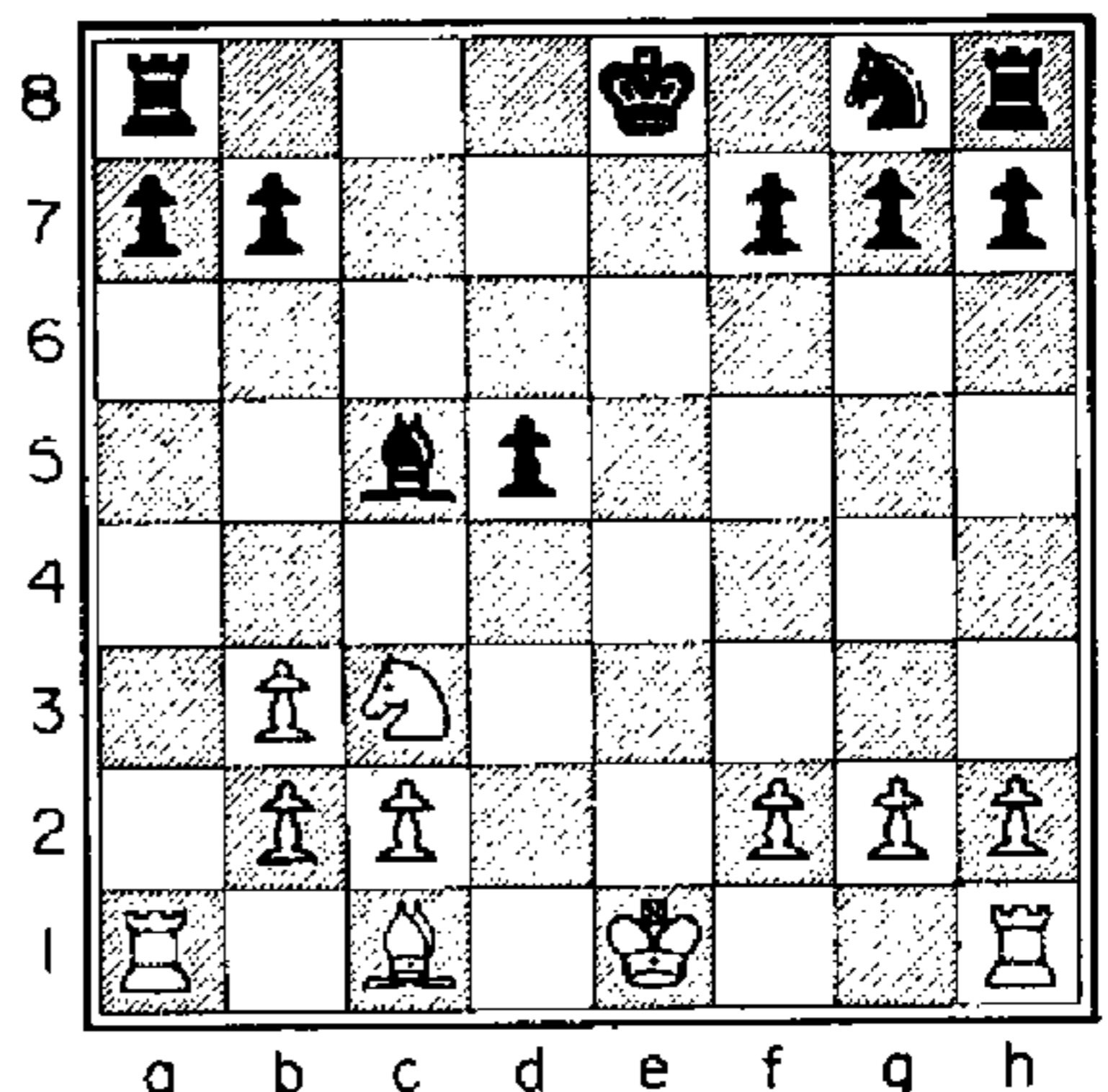
As a direct result of the previous  
 ... exchange, Black is able to actively  
 ... his bishop. White now  
 ... play resolutely to keep his  
 ... advantage. Insufficient pro-  
 ... are offered by the following  
 ... moves:

- (A) **12 Nf4** Nf6 13 Nd3 Bb6  
 14 Bf4?! (14 Bd2!) 14 ... 0-0  
 15 0-0 Rfe8 16 Rfe1 Re4 with  
 equality in Sokolsky-Aronin,  
 Leningrad 1949.
- (B) **12 0-0** Nf6 13 Rd1 0-0 14 h3  
 Rfe8, with approximate  
 equality, Foltys-Gligoric,  
 Budapest 1948.
- (C) **12 c3** Ne7 13 0-0 f6 14 Re1  
 Kf7 15 Nf4 Rhe8, with Black  
 having a sound position,  
 Ujtelky-Stahlberg, Trencanske  
 Teplice 1949.
- (D) **12 Bg5** Ne7 13 Bxe7 Kxe7  
 14 Rd1 Rad8 15 Nf4 d4 16 Nd3  
 Bb6 with equality in  
 Trifunovic-Gligoric, Mar del  
 Plata 1950.

White has two promising plans  
 and I shall illustrate each with a  
 complete game.

**5.11 12 Nc3:**

V. Hort-B. Ivkov,  
 Wijk aan Zee 1970



By far the sharpest move. Rather than satisfying itself with blockading the d4 square, White's knight immediately goes after the d-pawn.

**12 ... 0-0-0?**

If it wasn't for White's response, this would be a good move. Also not fully satisfactory is 12 ... Nf6, because after 13 Na4! Bd6 14 Be3 followed by 15 Bd4, White has a strong grip on the key central squares. Correct is 12 ... Ne7! so that at the opportune moment the knight can also head for c6 or f5, thus keeping a good measure of the required central influence. After 12 ... Ne7! White's advantage is only of the "normal" type.

**13 Ra5!**

Showing up the disadvantage of Black's 10 ... Nxb3. Black's only choice is whether to lose the a- or d-pawn. Since there are no prospects in the "complications" after 13 ... Bb4 14 Rxa7 d4 15 Ra4, Black correctly decides to give up his existing weakness: the d-pawn.

**13 ... Re8 +**

**14 Kf1 Bb6**

**15 Rxd5 Nf6**

**16 Rf5 h5?!**

Just weakens the h-pawn. The immediate 16 ... Re6 is best.

**17 h4!**

Preparing to bring the KR into play via h3 and thus completing his

kingside development. Black should now try to mobilize his rooks with 17 ... Re6 and perhaps 18 ... Rf6. He has no compensation for the pawn but the fact that White's e-pawn is in the form of a doubled pawn (the positive side of Black's 10th move!) makes it more difficult for White to realize his material advantage.

**17 ... Ng4?**

**18 Nd5! f6**

**19 Nxb6 + axb6**

**20 Rh3**

Now that Black's queenside consists of very vulnerable doubled pawns, his chances for a successful defense are nil.

**20 ... Re6**

**21 Rc3 + Rc6**

**22 Bf4 Kd7**

**23 Rd5 + Ke6**

**24 Rb5! Ra8**

White also picks off the b-pawn after 24 ... Rhc8 25 Rxb6!.

**25 Rxc6 + bxc6**

**26 Rxb6 Kf5**

**27 Bg3 Rc8**

**28 Rb4 Ke6**

**29 Bf4 c5**

**30 Rc4 Kd5**

**31 f3 Ne5**

**32 Bxe5 fxe5**

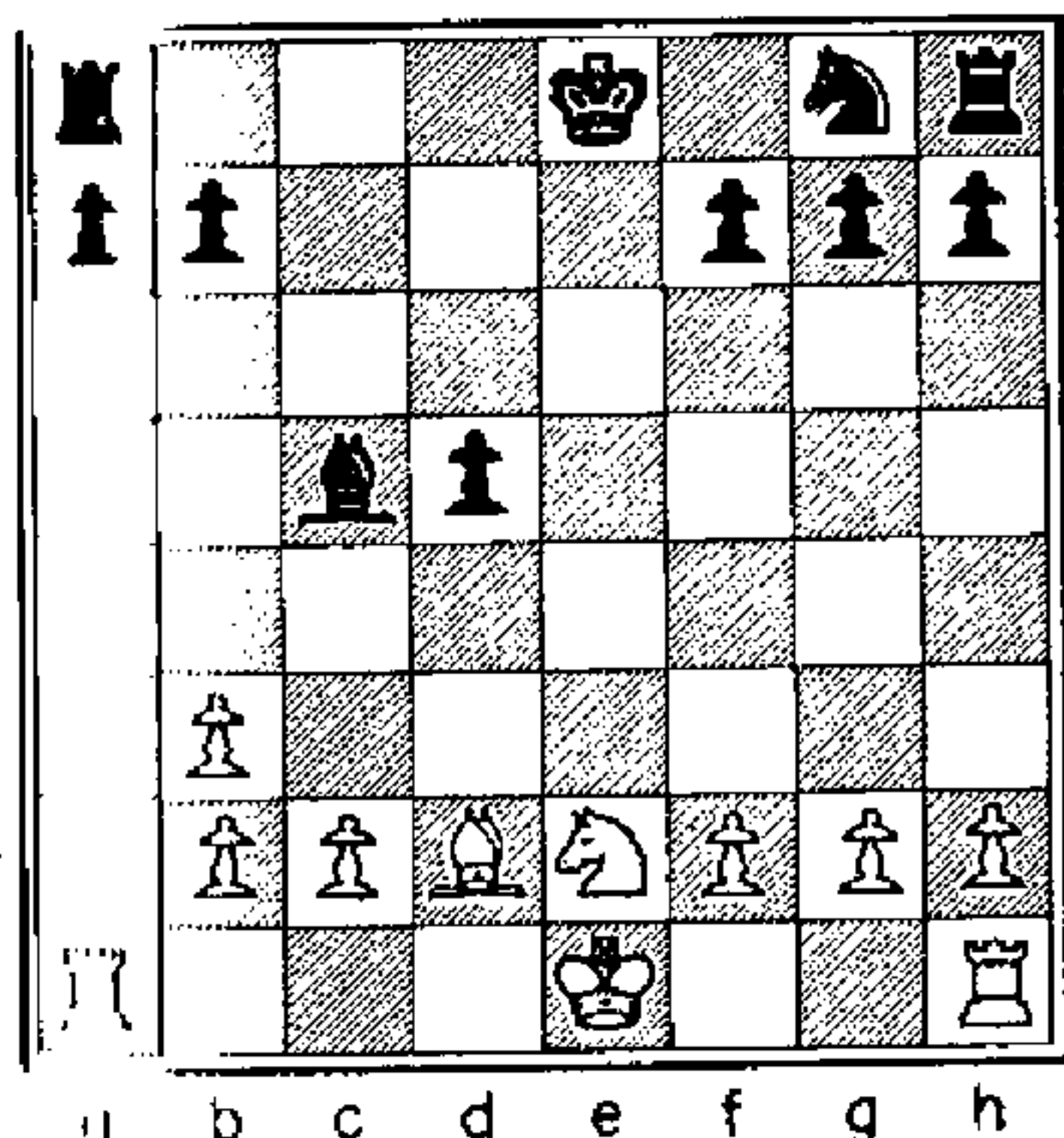
**33 Ra4 Rf8**

**34 Ke2**

**Black  
resigns**

5.12 12 Bd2:

A. Karpov-V. Korchnoi,  
World Championship Match,  
Game No. 16, 1978



13 ... 0-0  
14 0-0?!

But this routine move is inconsistent with the previous play. Not only is the castled king in a "do nothing" situation but the activation of the QB is also forgotten.

Correct is 14 Nd3! Bb6 and now either 15 Ba5! followed by exchange of the bishops and king centralization on d2 or 15 Bb4! Rfe8 16 Bxe7 Rxe7 + 17 Kd2. In either case White will have good play against the d-pawn and a well placed king — and therefore a steady initiative.

14 ... Rfd8  
15 Nd3 Bb6  
16 c3 f6  
17 Rfd1 Kf7  
18 Kf1

White has nothing better than king centralization, though clearly considerable time has been lost. If Black now plays 18 ... Nc6! he has a nice active position and with it full equality. But after the time losing knight moves, Black again gets in trouble.

18 ... Nf5?  
19 Be1! Ne7  
20 Nb4! Rd7  
21 Rd3 Rad8  
22 Rad1 Ke6  
23 Bd2!

With the fine maneuver starting with 19 Be1!, Karpov has been able

The point of this move is to give first priority to making maximum usefulness of the QB.

12 ... Ne7  
13 Nf4

This is a novelty. In Euwe-Botvinnik, 1948 Match-Tournament to the World Championship, White had the also logical 13 Bc3. Then correct is 13 ... 0-0 14 0-0 with just the usual White advantage. In the game Black played the careless 13 ... Nc6? and after 14 Rd1! White gained a large advantage.

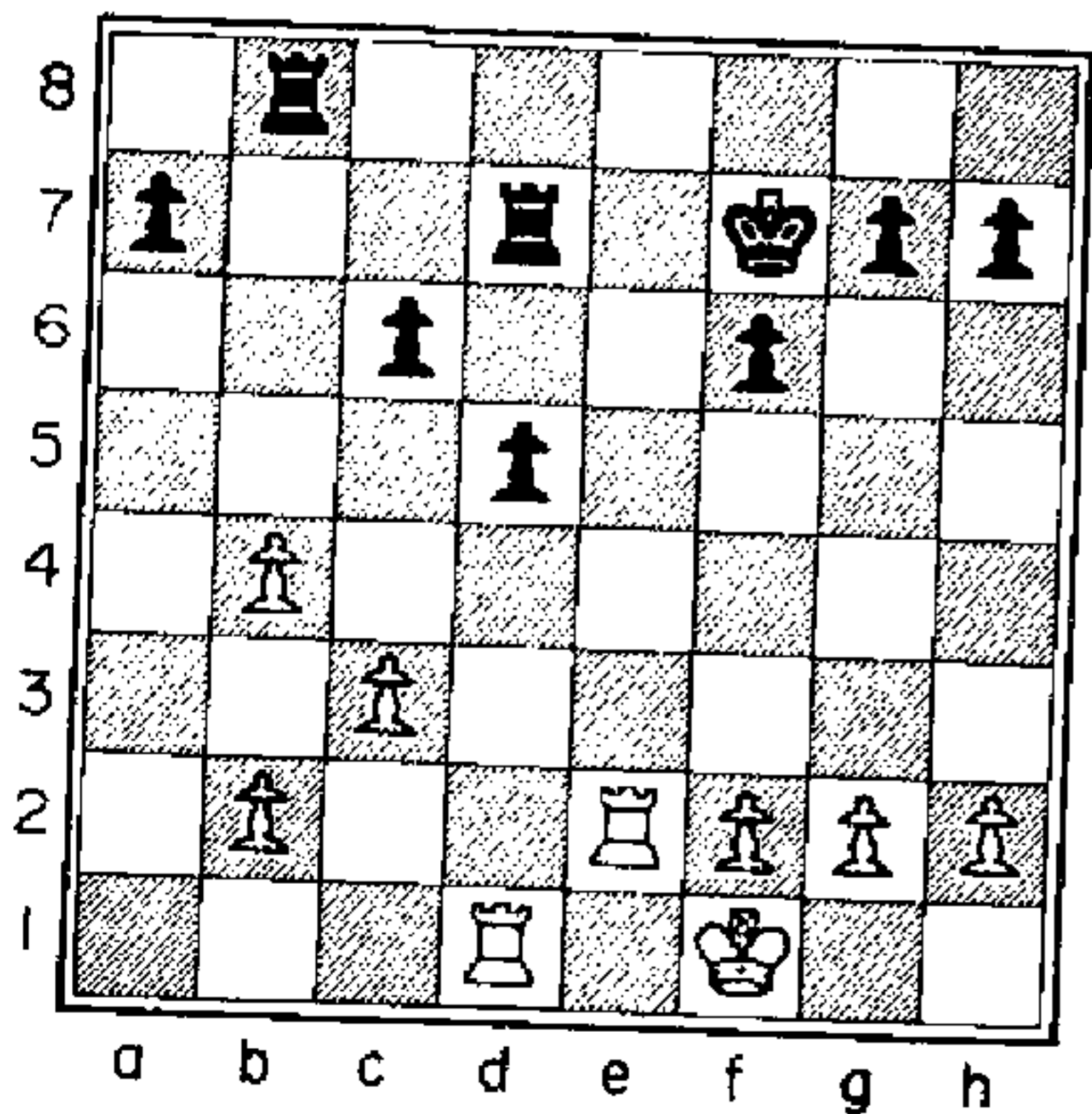
In Ostojic-Marovic, Virovitica 1970, played about a month after the game, the Yugoslav GMs agreed now on a "grandmaster draw". This result is, however, misleading since after 13 Nf4 White does have the edge.

to achieve thematic pressure against the isolated pawn. Now he plans *Be3* so that after the bishop exchange the dark squares on the queenside and center would belong to White.

**23 ... Nc6**  
**24 Nxc6**

Black hopes to lighten his load by the exchange of knights. White is agreeable to the exchange because he sees that he will then have pressure against Black's a- and c-pawns. Also perfectly good was to hold on to the knights by playing *24 Nc2 Ne5 25 Rh3 h6 26 Be3* (Filip).

**24 ... bxc6**  
**25 b4! Kf7**  
**26 Be3! Bxe3**  
**27 Rxe3 Rb8**  
**28 Re2**



The exchange of bishops has clearly made Black's a-pawn vulnerable to an attack by doubled

rooks along the a-file. White's order of business is to do this, combined with centralizing his king. Black is not lost, yet his task is unpleasant.

**28 ... Rb5**  
**29 Ra1 Rdb7**  
**30 Rd2 Ke6**  
**31 Ra6 R5b6**  
**32 Ra2 Kd6**  
**33 Ke2 Re7+**  
**34 Kd3 a6?!**

Being short of time, Black commits one of the most typical tactical pressure acts: making unnecessary pawn moves. On a6 the pawn is at least as vulnerable as on a7 and reduces the rook on b6 to passive defense.

**35 Rd1**

Surely playable, but stronger is as pointed out by GM Keene *35 Re2!* with White obtaining a very favorable single rook endgame at *35 ... Rxe2 36 Kxe2 c5* (Or *36 ... 37 Ra5!*) *37 bxc5 + Kxc5 38 Kd3*. In either case, Black is left with two weak pawns.

**35 ... Kc7**  
**36 Raa1?!**

This rook? Isn't White's idea to double on the a-file with *36 Rda1*? Then after *36 ... Kb7 37 Ra4!* White can prepare a queenside advance with *b3* and *c4*, and thus retain good chances for some initiative.

36 ... Kd8  
 37 f3 Re5  
 38 Kd4 Kc7  
 39 Re1 Kd6

The active location of Black's rook on e5 gives him sufficient counterplay on the kingside. The attempt to force its exchange gives Black sufficient play on the queenside. The position now is drawn.

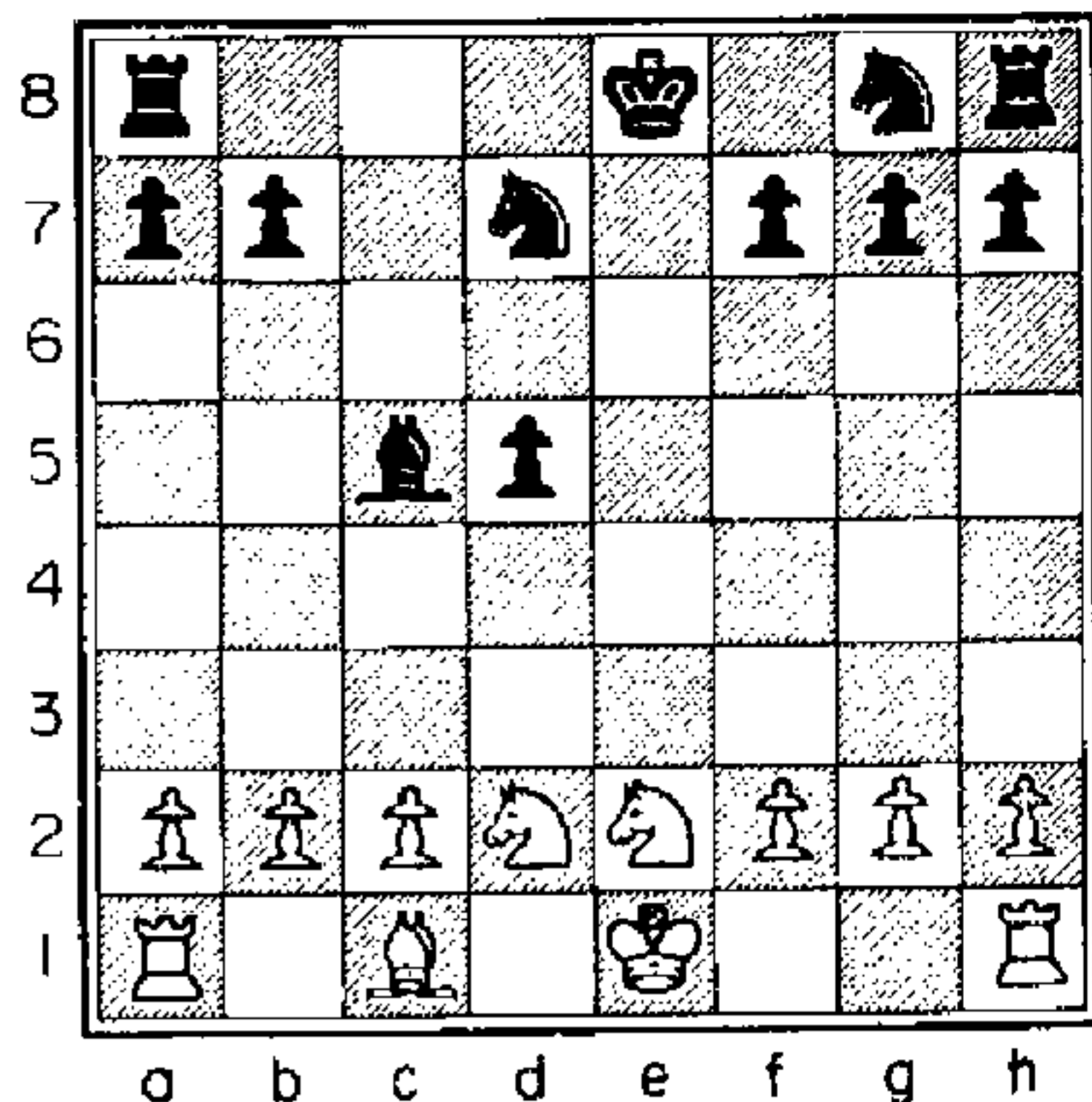
40 f4 Rxe1  
 41 Rxe1 a5!  
 42 bxa5 Rxb2  
 Draw.

The game was adjourned with Black sealing his 42nd move. A draw was agreed without resumption. Two possible lines after 43 Ra1 are: a) 44 Ke3 Kc7 45 a6 Kb8 46 Ra5 Rxc5 47 a7+ Ka8 48 Rxc5 Rxc5 49 Rxd5 (Larsen), and b) 44 Kd3 Rb7 47 a6 Ra7 46 c4 d4 47 Ra5 Kc6 48 g3 Kb6 49 Rb5+ Kc6 (Keene). In each case there is nothing but a draw.

**5.2 8...Qxe2+ 9 Nxe2 Bxc5:  
 Y. BALASHOV-V. KORCHNOI,  
 EUROPEAN CLUB TEAM  
 CHAMPIONSHIP, BAD  
 LAUTERBERG 1979**

*(See next diagram)*

Black is immediately able to place his bishop actively. Though first played over forty years ago, it escaped attention until Korchnoi successfully resurrected it.



**10 Nb3 Bb6**

It is imperative to retain this active bishop. After the illogical 10 ... Nf6?, White obtains a clear advantage with 11 Nxc5 Nxc5 12 Be3 Ne6 13 0-0-0, as in Beni-Castaldi, Dubrovnik Olympiad 1950.

**11 Bf4**

A normal development of the pieces, while allowing Black's bishop to exist, does not seem sufficient for an edge. In Kan-Bondarevsky, 1937 USSR Championship, White played 11 Nbd4 Nf6 12 Bg5, but I don't think that Black should have troubles here either. A promising way to neutralize Black's bishop — and thereby retain some advantage — is 11 Bd2! with the idea of 12 Bc3 and 13 Bd4.

**11 ... Ngf6  
 12 f3 0-0  
 13 0-0-0**

White's position looks good, but in fact offers no prospects for an advantage. Black's pieces stand well and the d-pawn controls key central squares while being safe enough.

**13 ... Rfc8**

Black apparently prefers this over the more normal 13 ... Rac8 because he doesn't want to worry about a Bd6 move with tempo. I don't see any danger in that, however.

**14 Nbd4 g6!**  
**15 g4 a6!**  
**16 Bg3 Re8**  
**17 b3 Rac8**

With his 14th and 15th moves Black has taken access squares away from White's knights and with his 16th and 17th moves has placed his rooks on active open and half open files. White is clearly without opportunities for active play and the chances are equal.

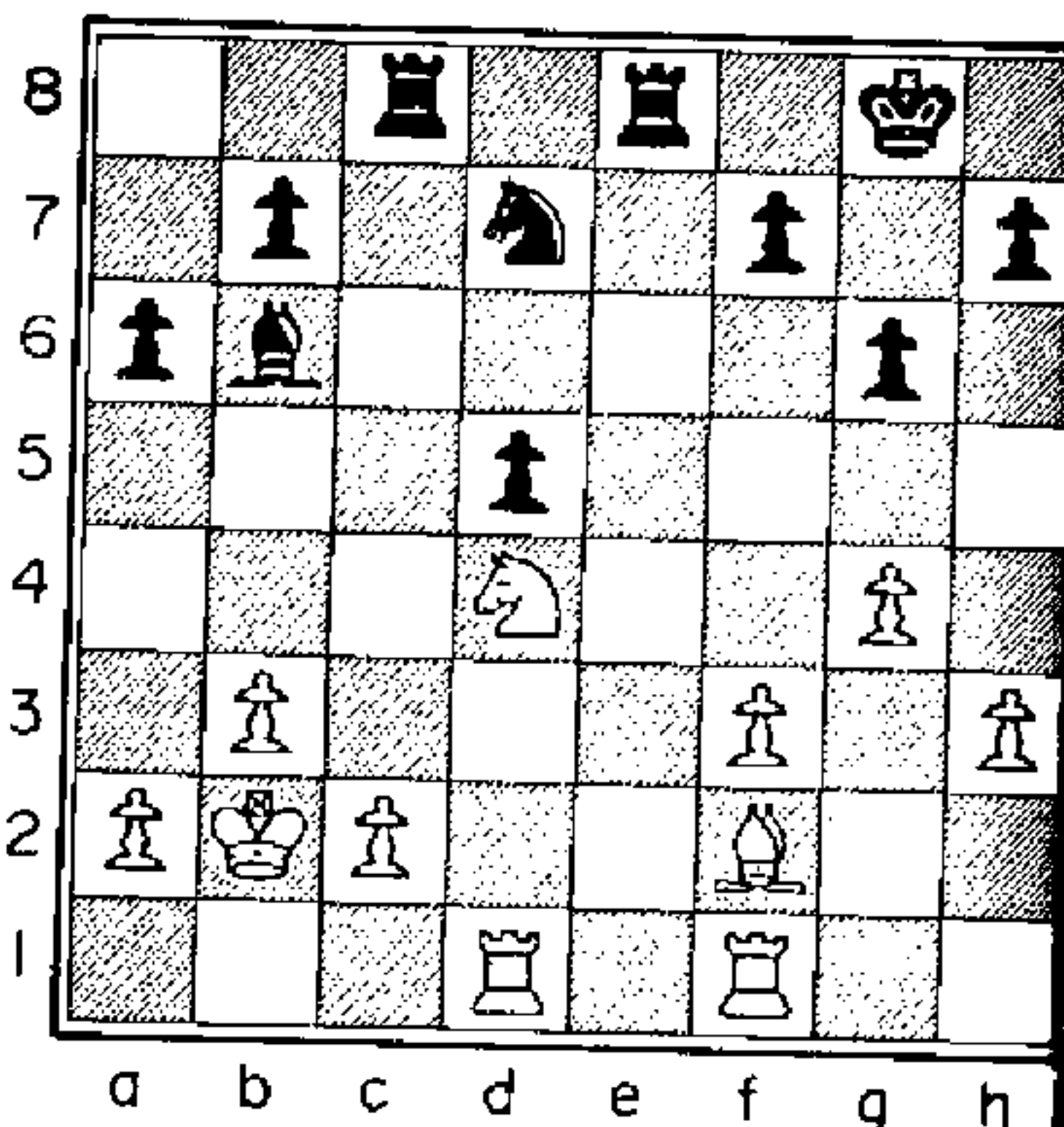
**18 Kb2 Ne5**  
**19 Rhf1 Nc6**

Rather than satisfying himself with the status quo, Black decides to exert pressure on d4.

**20 Bf2 Nxd4**  
**21 Nxd4 Nd7!**  
**22 h3**

*(See next diagram)*

A move which says that White can think of nothing to do. Of



course his position is perfect sound for the purpose of equality.

**22 ... Ba5**  
**23 Kb1 Ne5**  
**24 Be1 Bb6!**  
**25 Bf2 Ba5**  
**26 Be1 Bd8**

Of course, Black does not allow the exchange of the bishop which both presses on White's position while covering the dark squares in Black's position. As the previous moves show, White is satisfied to draw but Korchnoi is not yet ready to acquiesce to it. Even so the position remains in balance.

**27 Bg3 Bf6**  
**28 Rfe1 Nc6**  
**29 Rxe8+ Rxe8**  
**30 Nxc6 bxc6**  
**31 Re1**  
**Draw.**

The bishop endgame is also equal.

# 6

## Pirc Defense: Normal Variation

1 e4                    d6  
2 d4                    Nf6  
3 Nc3                   g6

4 Nf3!

The start of the Normal Variation, which has long been the favorite of Anatoly Karpov. White's d- and e-pawns already give him the central superiority and for the moment he is satisfied with that. White plans to complete his kingside development in a simple, straightforward way and will only then decide what to do next. This way Black's chances for immediate counterplay are kept at an absolute minimum.

Of course, White has a large choice of alternatives on move 4, the most common one being 4 f4.

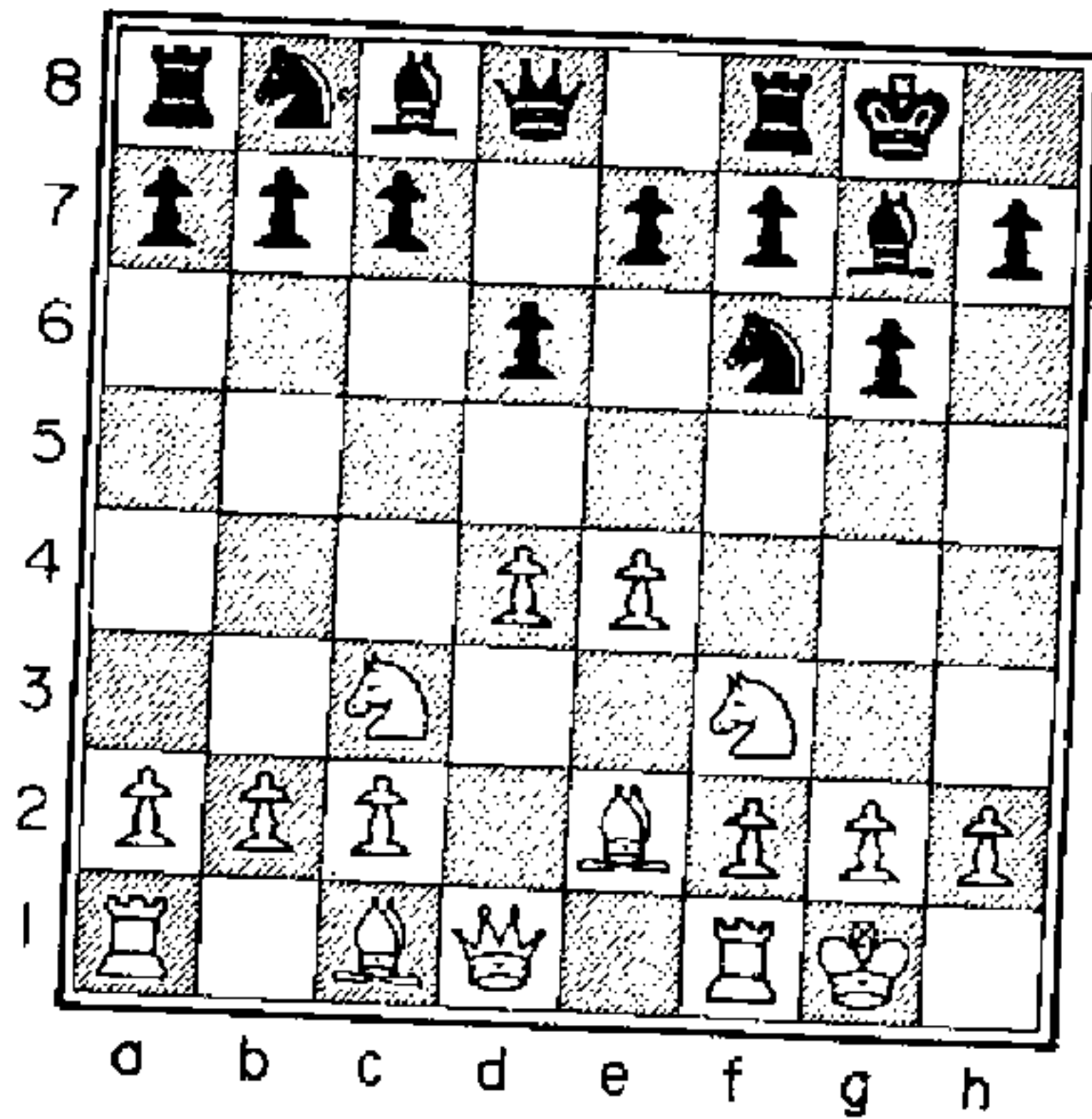
4 ...                    Bg7  
5 Be2                    0-0  
6 0-0

*(See next diagram)*

White has completed his initial objective and thrown the ball to Black. What should Black do? There are two general approaches Black

This position establishes the Pirc Defense. The Pirc can be considered from a strategic viewpoint to be the counterpart defense of the King's Indian. That is, what the King's Indian is against 1 d4, the Pirc is to 1 e4. Black places the d-pawn on d6 to contain White's e-pawn and then fianchettoes his king's bishop. The only strategic difference is that in the King's Indian White's e-pawn is out on e4, whereas in the Pirc it is back home on e2. Therefore, in the Pirc White is one developmental tempo ahead of the King's Indian, but has a less imposing center. What this means for Black is that against the Pirc there are less opportunities for sharp counterplay. On the other hand there also is less risk that Black will be smothered by White's center.





can choose: (1) Immediately work to undermine White's center, and (2) Satisfy himself with some preventive measures. A brief look at these follows:

(1) Immediate attempts at counterplay against White's center

Just as in the King's Indian, so also in the Pirc Black's counterplay is against White's d4 pawn. For this Black will have to play either ... e5 or c5.

(a) ... e5 plans. This is Black's most popular approach and will be our main line.

(b) ... c5 plans. Black can in fact play the immediate 6 ... c5, as occurred in the 34th (and last) Karpov-Korchnoi, Baguio 1978 match game. White's strongest response is 7 d5 (as Karpov played), transposing into a Benoni formation

without White's c4. White then has a typical opening advantage.

Endgame connoisseurs can choose 7 dxc5 dxc5 8 Be3, hoping for a technical edge. Even though Black can reach theoretical equality after, e.g., 8 ... b6 9 e5 Ng4 10 Qd5 Qxg5 11 Nxd5 Nc6, White risks nothing by playing this way.

The present conclusion is that 6 ... c5 is theoretically playable, but not currently popular in master practice.

(2) Preventive measures

Some GMs favor the passive-looking 6 ... c6. Black gains some control over d5 and awaits White's plans. White in turn can then "pass" with 7 h3 or 7 a4. However, White's most incisive plan is 7 Re1 followed by 8 e5. This insures White a steady initiative.

Because White's build-up is perceived to be "modest", Black periodically try somewhat eccentric moves such as 6 ... a6, 6 ... b6, 6 ... a5, 6 ... Na6. In all such cases a good plan for White is 7 Re1 followed by 8 e5.

6 ... Bg4

By this semi-pin of White's KN Black starts his pressure on d4. This is Black's soundest and most thematic plan. The immediate 6 ... e5?! leads to a very poor endgame after 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 Qxd8 Rxd8 9 Bg5! Re8 10 Rfd1.

A frequently played alternative to the text is 6 ... Nc6. Of course, Black thereby "risks" 7 d5. Even though this is a perfectly good plan for White and allows him to retain the opening advantage, many Blacks don't mind this because of the opportunity to create a more unbalanced position. However, White can also simply "ignore" 6 ... Nc6 by playing 7 Be3. Black then has nothing better than to head for our main line with 7 ... Bg4. Inferior, for example, is the obvious 7 ... Ng4?: 8 Bg5 h6 9 Bh4 Nf6 10 d5 Nb8 11 Nd4, Andersson--Kavalek, Buenos Aires 1980, with White having a substantial spatial advantage.

### 7 Be3

Since Black will be aiming at d4, developing the QB to e3 is the logical move.

### 7 ... Nc6

The only consistent follow-up to 7 ... Bg4.

### 8 Qd2

White maximizes his build-up, while also allowing Black to achieve his. At this moment ineffective is 8 d5 since after 8 ... Bxf3 9 Bxf3 Ne5 10 Be2 c6! Black gets good counterplay. In Karpov--Korchnoi, Match Game No. 18, 1978 White tried 8 Qd3, but subsequent analysis has shown that the queen is

misplaced here and that Black equalizes easily enough after 8 ... Nd7!.

### 8 ... e5!

Since this is Black's thematic plan, he should execute it immediately. Delaying by 8 ... Nd7 or 8 ... Re8 allows White to strengthen his central position with 9 Rad1. The result is that after a subsequent ... e5 Black is in greater difficulties than in the main line.

### 9 dxe5!

Instead the continuation favored by theory is 9 d5 Ne7 10 Rad1 and this is also how Karpov handles the variation. White has more space in the center and a good position. Nevertheless, it is my opinion that after the strategic retreat 10 ... Bd7! Black's counterchances are sufficient for dynamic equality. Whatever, the play is very complicated, cluttered as the board is with all the pieces and pawns on it.

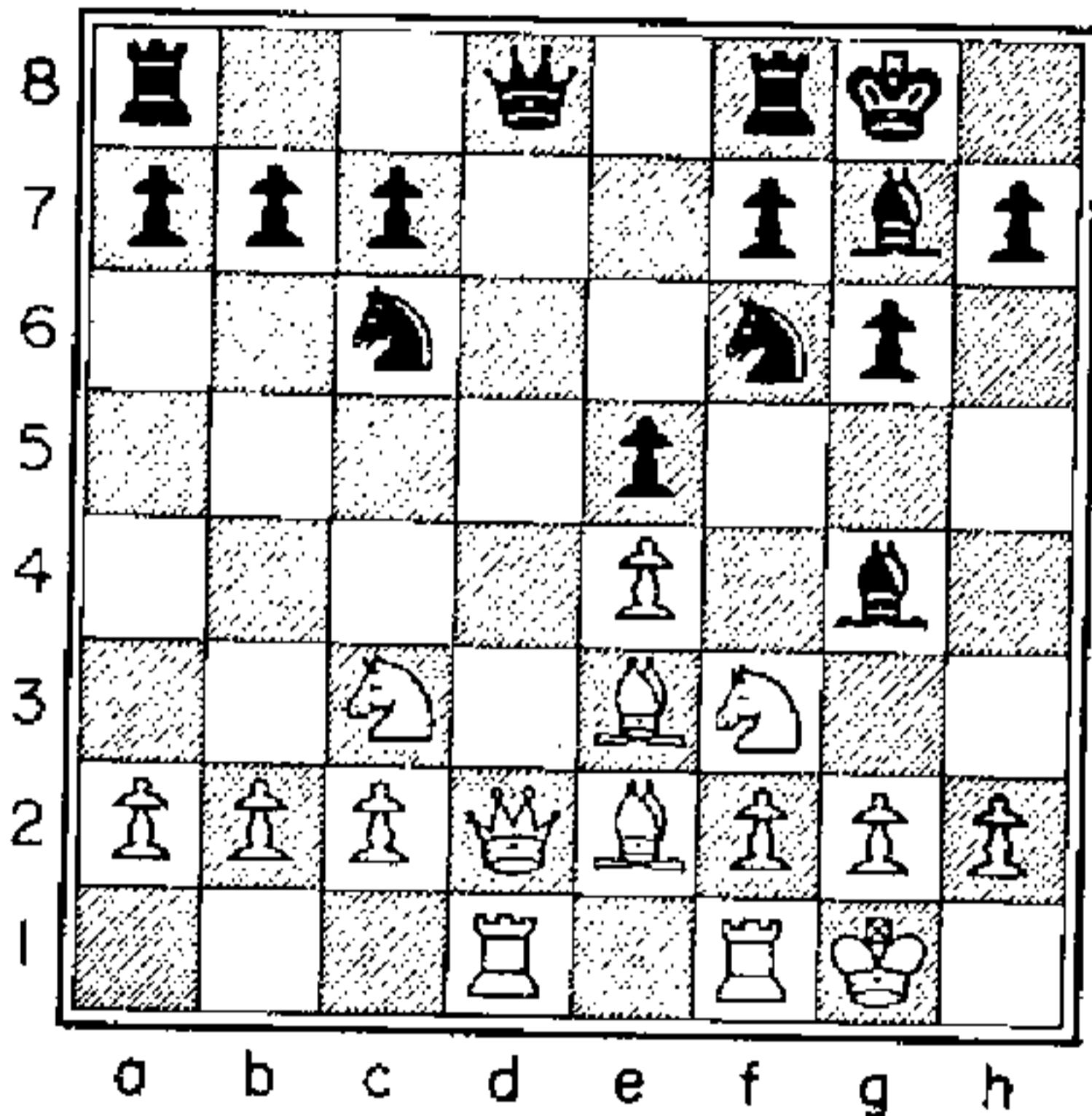
The text move avoids all complications and leads to a pleasant, easy-to-play-for-White game.

### 9 ... dxe5

In master circles this is played exclusively. Still it seems to me that 9 ... Nxe5 deserves a closer examination. The endgame after 10 Nxe5 dxe5 looks rather harmless. Therefore White should either ignore the attack on f3 by playing

10 Rad1 or choose the more solid 10 Nd4 Bxe2 11 Qxe2. White keeps a slight advantage, yet Black's position retains a lot more potential life than after the text.

### 10 Rad1



This is our basic starting point. The pawn formation is essentially symmetrical and the knight deployment is exactly the same. Yet White has two meaningful pluses: (1) edge in development, and (2) the superior dark square bishop. These dual characteristics make it surprisingly difficult for Black to achieve full equality.

### 10 ... Qc8

In recent master play this move has displaced all others. For the present Black avoids the exchange of queens, places its queen in a safe location, while preparing to play ... Rd8.

The important alternatives are:  
 (1) **10 ... Qxd2:** 11 Rxd2 Rfd8 12 Rfd1 Rxd2 13 Rxd2. Then inferior is 13 ... Ne8?! since 14 Bb5! forces the ruination of Black's queenside (14 ... Ne7 15 Bc5!), as occurred in Browne-Andersson, Hastings 1972-73. Therefore necessary is the preventive 13 ... a6!. The expected coming play in this queenless endgame is similar to the course of our illustrative game, Andersson-Hazai, Pula 1975.

(2) **10 ... Bxf3:** 11 Bxf3 Qe7 12 Bg5 Nd4 13 Nd5 Qd6 14 c3! Nxf3+ 15 gxf3 Nxd5 16 Qxd5, Andersson-Mecking, Wijk aan Zee 1971. Control of the d-file and the superior bishop gives White a small, yet clear, advantage.

(3) **10 ... Qe7:** 11 Bg5! Qe6 12 Bxf6! Qxf6 13 Nd5 Qd6 14 c3! Rad8 15 Qg5 Be6 16 Bb5! with a large advantage for White, Browne-Kaplan, Skopje Olympiad, 1972.

### 11 Qc1!

White does best to follow suit. There is little in 11 Bg5 Bxf3 12 Bxf3 Nd4!, e.g. 13 Qd3 c6 14 Ne2 Nxf3+ 15 Qxf3 Qe6, with approximate equality in Enklaar-Matulovic, Wijk aan Zee 1974.

**11 ... Rd8**  
**12 Rxd8+ Qxd8**  
**13 Rd1 Qf8**

The point of Black's maneuvering. The queen has two specific

roles here: (1) to enable a ... Rd8, and (2) to be in a position to exchange the dark bishops with a future ... Bh6.

**14 h3!                      Bxf3**

White's bishop pair will be quite useful in the coming play. Yet Black has no good retreat square since after 14 ... Be6, annoying is 15 Ng5!

**15 Bxf3**

The first few times this position was reached it was felt to be harmless to Black. Yet subsequent sophisticated efforts by White have shown it to be anything but that. The presence of the bishop pair in a fairly open position, plus the superiority of White's dark square bishop over his counterpart, gives White something tangible to play with. Recent examples have shown that Black has a very hard practical time in coping. Black's major possibilities will be illustrated by the following complete games.

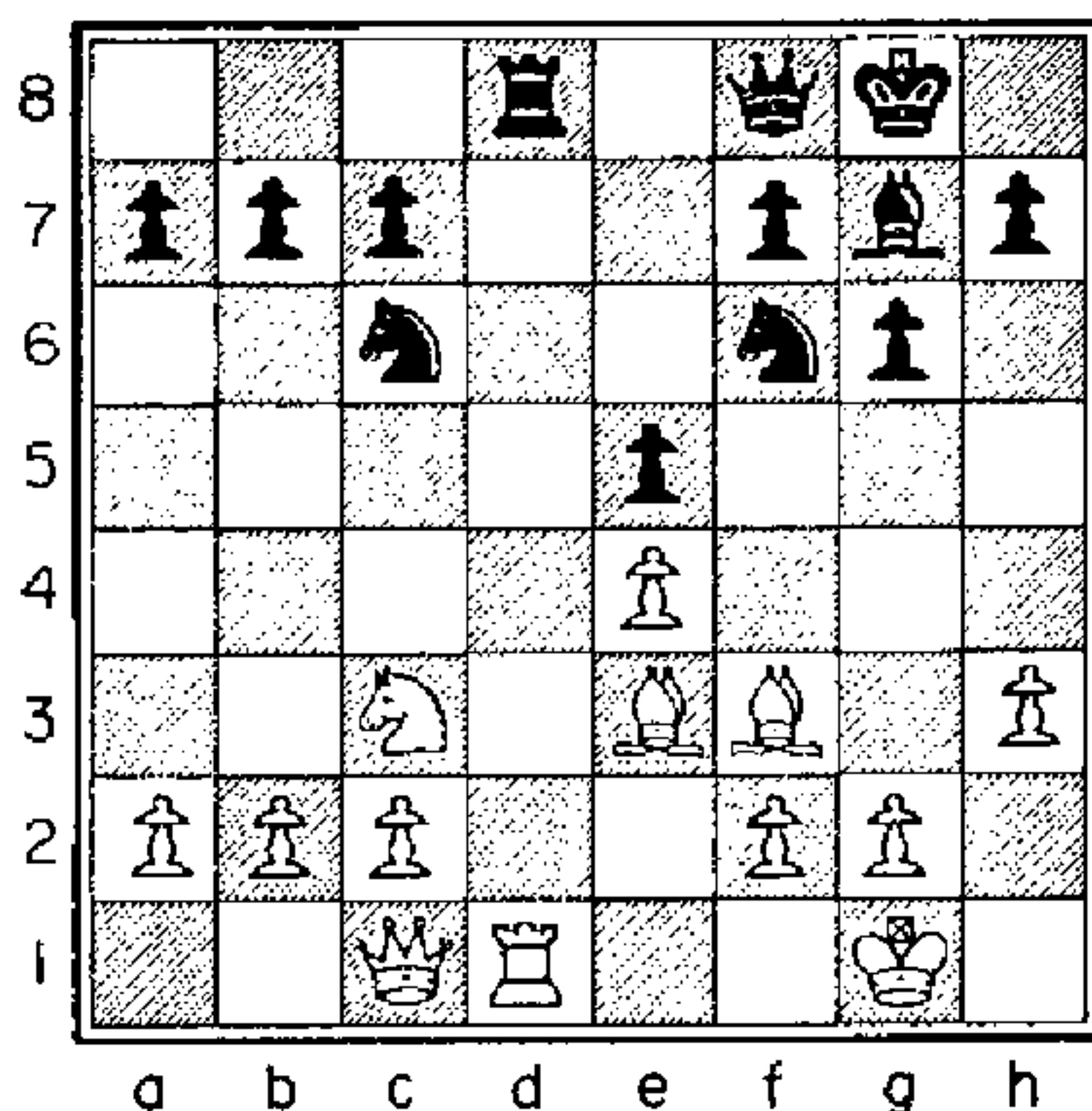
**6.1 15 ... Rd8:**

**U. ANDERSSON-L. HAZAI,  
PULA 1975**

*(See next diagram)*

Played according to the principle that exchanges favor the defending side. Yet in this case there is no relief forthcoming.

**16 Rxd8**



Since the rookless endgame is very comfortable for White, there is no practical reason to avoid it. However, even stronger is 16 Nb5!. But inferior is 16 Nd5?! since after 16 ... Nxd5 17 Rxd5 Nd4 Black has full equality.

**16 ...                      Qxd8**  
**17 Qd1!                    Qxd1+**

This exchange also brings no relief. Keeping the queens on with 17 ... Qe7 would lead to play similar to our next game. Black's best plan is the active 17 ... Nd4! since 18 Bxd4 leads to nothing after 18 ... exd4!

**18 Bxd1                    Nd4**  
**19 f3**

By protecting the e-pawn, White frees his knight for queenside action. Black should do his best to keep White's knight out. Logical therefore is 19 ... a6! and if 20 Na4,

20 ... Nd7. Black's disadvantage is then kept to a minimum.

19 ... Ne8?  
20 Nd5! c6

But here good advice is non-existent. After 20 ... Kf8 21 c3 Nc6 22 Ba4! White will win a pawn on the queenside.

21 Ne7+ Kf8  
22 Nc8 a6  
23 c3 Nb5  
24 a4! Nbc7  
25 Bb3

Notice how White's progress has been carried out:

Step 1 = Activate his knight.

Step 2 = Push back Black's forward knight.

Step 3 = Activate his bishops. White's bishops now have both sides of Black's position in a clamp.

25 ... Bf6  
26 Nb6! Ne6

Leads to a forced loss, yet no coherent defensive plan exists.

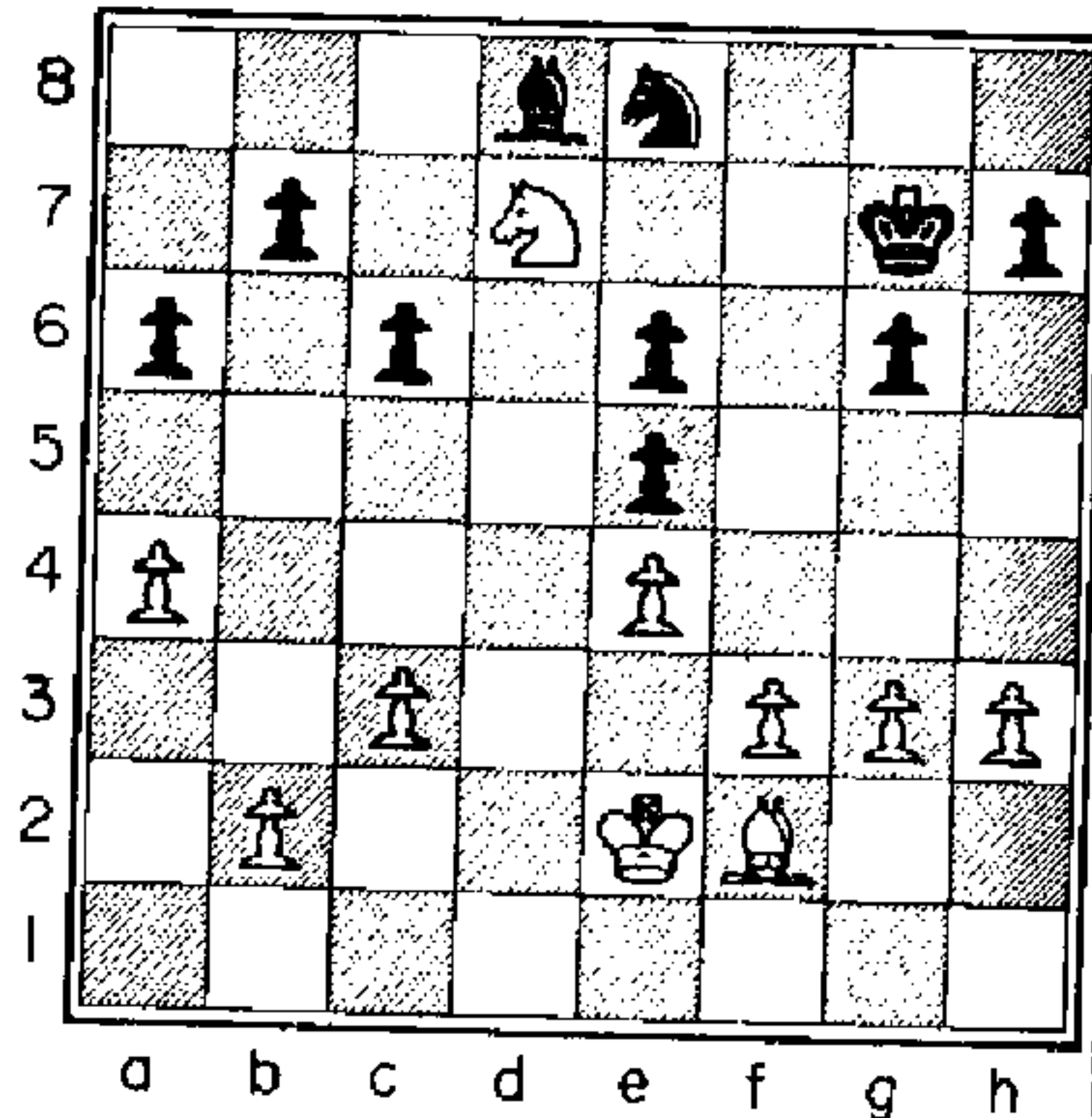
27 Bxe6!

White trades one set of advantages (the bishop pair) for the more tangible one of fatally weakening Black's kingside pawn formation.

27 ... fxe6  
28 Bc5+ Kf7  
29 Nd7!

Black is very close to *zugzwang*. For instance, his knight can not move (29 ... Nc7? 30 Bd6!).

29 ... Kg7  
30 Kf2 Bh4+  
31 g3 Bf6  
32 Ke2 Bd8  
33 Bf2!

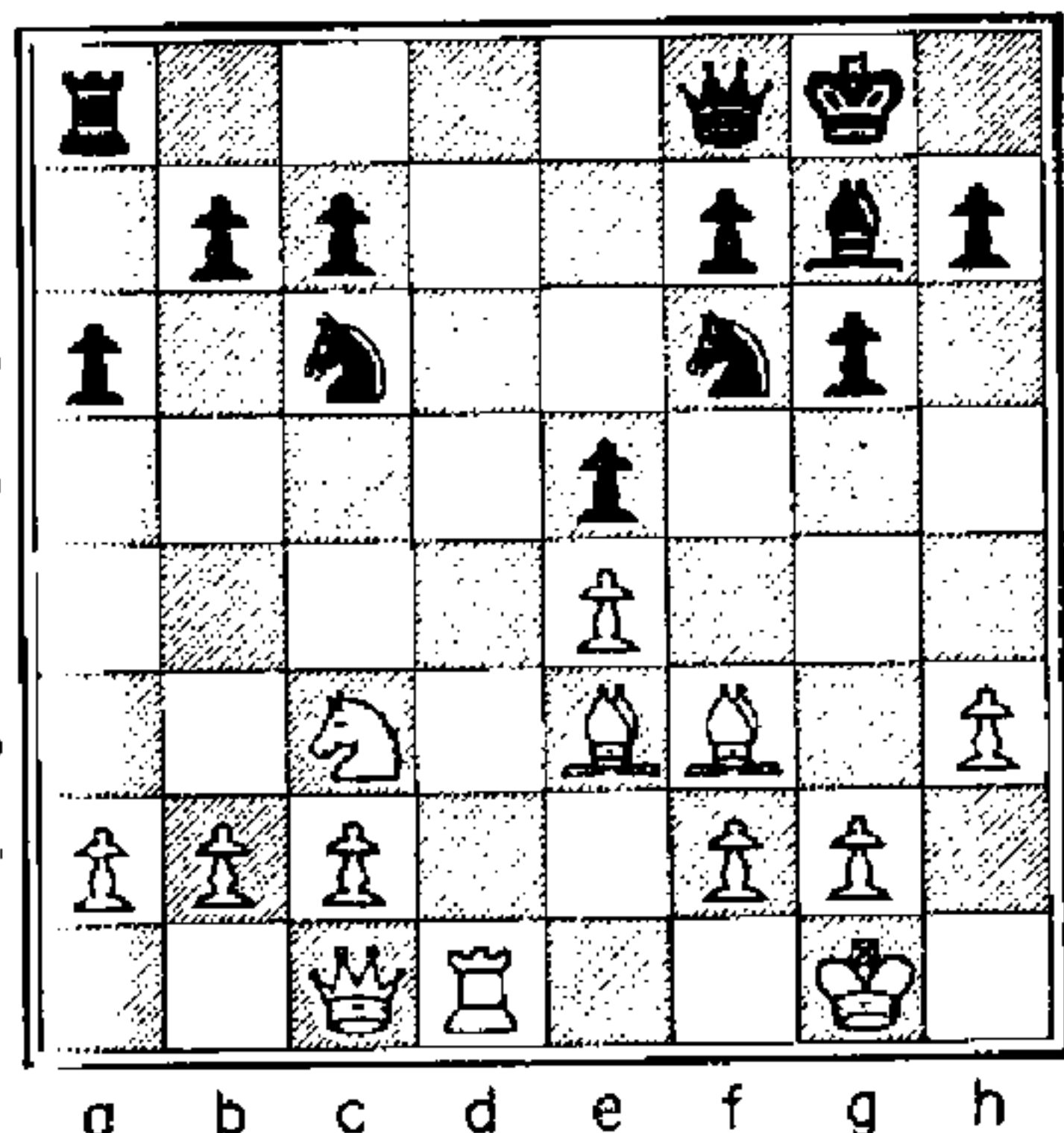


With the killing double threat of 34 Nxe5 and 34 Nc5. Black's last hope had been 33 Nxe5?! Bc7 34 Bd4?? c5!. However, 34 f4 Bxe5 35 fxe5 probably also wins for White.

33 ... Bf6  
34 Nc5 Nd6  
35 Nxe6+ Kf7  
36 Nc5 Bd8  
37 b3 Ba5  
38 b4 Bc7  
39 a5 Bb8  
40 Be3!  
Black resigns.

After the inevitable 41 f4 exf4 42 Bxf4 Black's b-pawn will also go lost.

6.2 15 ... a6



This has long been recognized as the best move. Its purpose is very simple: to prevent the annoying 16 Nb5.

16 Nb1!

A sophisticated knight regrouping, first employed by Petrosian. It has two important points. Firstly, by playing c3 White will take the important d4 square away from Black's QN. Secondly, White's knight will look for a more promising location than c3. From that square Nb5 is no more possible and going to d5 just leads to an exchange, e.g. 16 Nd5?! Nxc3 17 Rxd5 Nd4 18 Bxd4 exd4 with equality in Timman-Matulovic, Wijk aan Zee 1974.

The two basic approaches for Black are to either exchange his rook or not to exchange it. I shall look at each of these in turn.

6.21 16 ... Rd8:

T. Petrosian-G. Sax,  
Tallin 1979

17 Rxd8 Qxd8  
18 c3!

Safeguarding d4. Black queen's incursion is only of temporary effect.

18 ... Qd3  
19 Nd2 Bf8  
20 Qb1! Qb5

After 20 ... Qxb1+ the endgame would be similar to Andersson-Hazai. As played, we get an excellent example of a Q + Minor Pieces endgame.

21 Qc2 Nd8

After 21 ... Bc5 White would not exchange bishops, but continue with 22 Bg5 followed by b4 and a4.

22 Qb3 Qd3?!

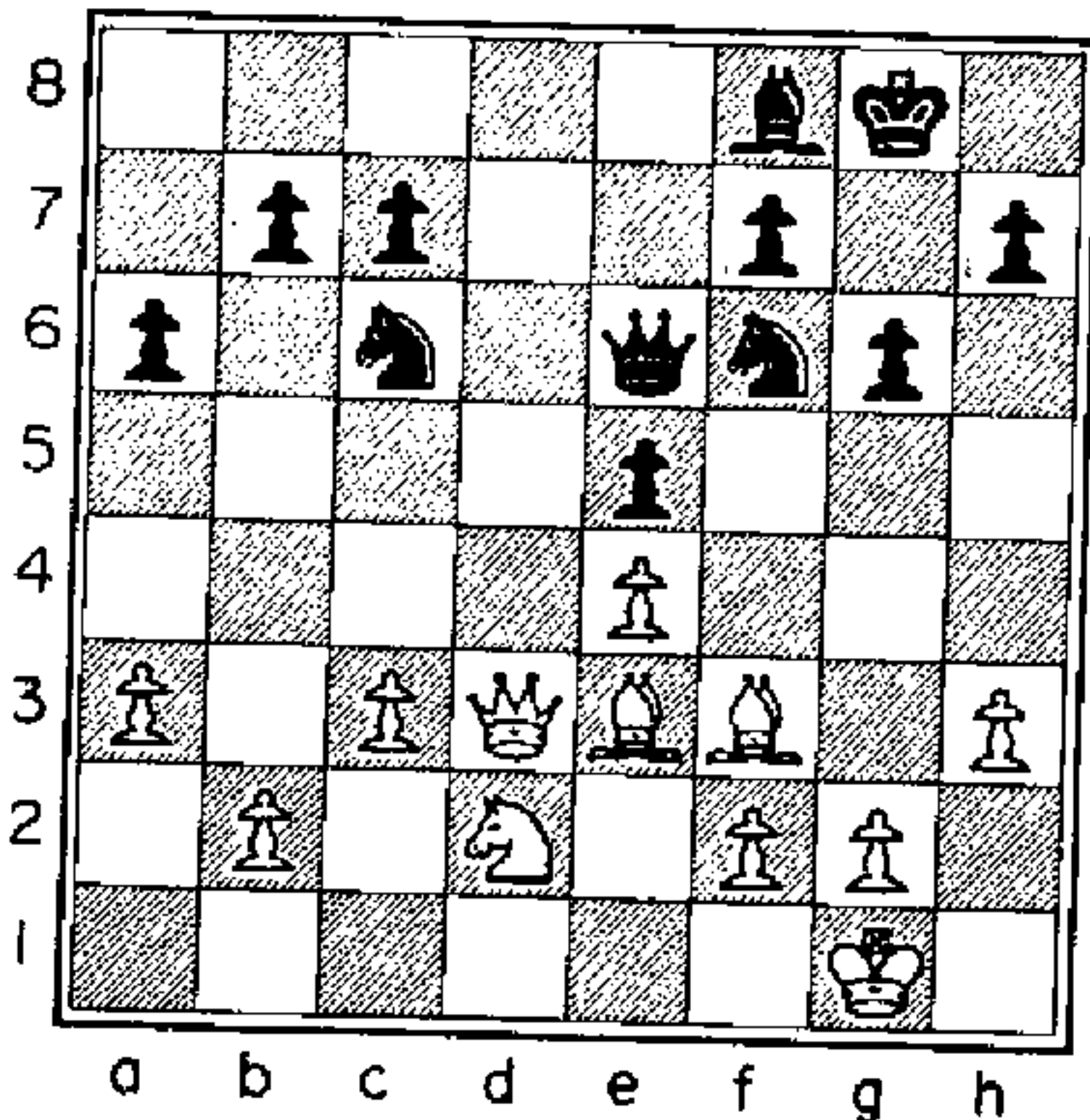
White will wind up with the active queen by the mechanism of chasing away Black's queen via offers to exchange. Perhaps there is nothing better than 22 ... Qxb3 23 Nxb3 b6.

23 Qc4! Qd6  
24 Qe2!

Freeing c4 for the knight. Black should prevent that by playing 24 ... b5. The basic reason for Black's loss is that he is afraid to do anything that would weaken his

position; as a result White just walks all over him.

24 ... Qe6?  
25 Qd3!  
26 a3!



Petrosian says that his plan is now b4, followed by Nc4, Bd1 and Bb3. There is little that can be done against that, but at least Black should have contested the g4 square with 26 ... h5!

26 ... Qe7?!  
27 b4 Nd8  
28 Nc4 Nd7  
29 Bg4! Ne6  
30 Na5! b5  
31 Nc6! Qe8  
32 c4!

Notice how Petrosian has activated *all* of his pieces. In the meanwhile, Black's have been in full retreat. Now that White is opening up the position some more, Black

is defenseless. Since 32 ... b3 33 Qxc4 means the end of Black's a-pawn, he tries a bit of counterplay.

32 ... Nf6  
33 cxb5 axb5  
34 Qxb5!

With this move White created a passed a-pawn. Note how, in the future, he places his major emphasis on this factor.

34 ... Nxe4  
35 Qc4! Nd6  
36 Qd5 h5  
37 Bxe6

Of course 37 Be2 was also fine. But armed with the powerful passed a-pawn, White feels that by ruining Black's kingside pawn formation will ensure that Black has no meaningful counterplay opportunities.

37 ... fxe6  
38 Qc5 Nf5  
39 Qc2 Bg7  
40 b5! Nd4  
41 Qc4 Qd7  
42 a4! Nf5  
43 Qe2  
Black resigns.

He is absolutely without counterplay and the a-pawn will march down to promote itself.

6.22 16 ... h5!?:

(i. Sigurjonsson-R. Keene,  
Barcelona 1980

17 c3!

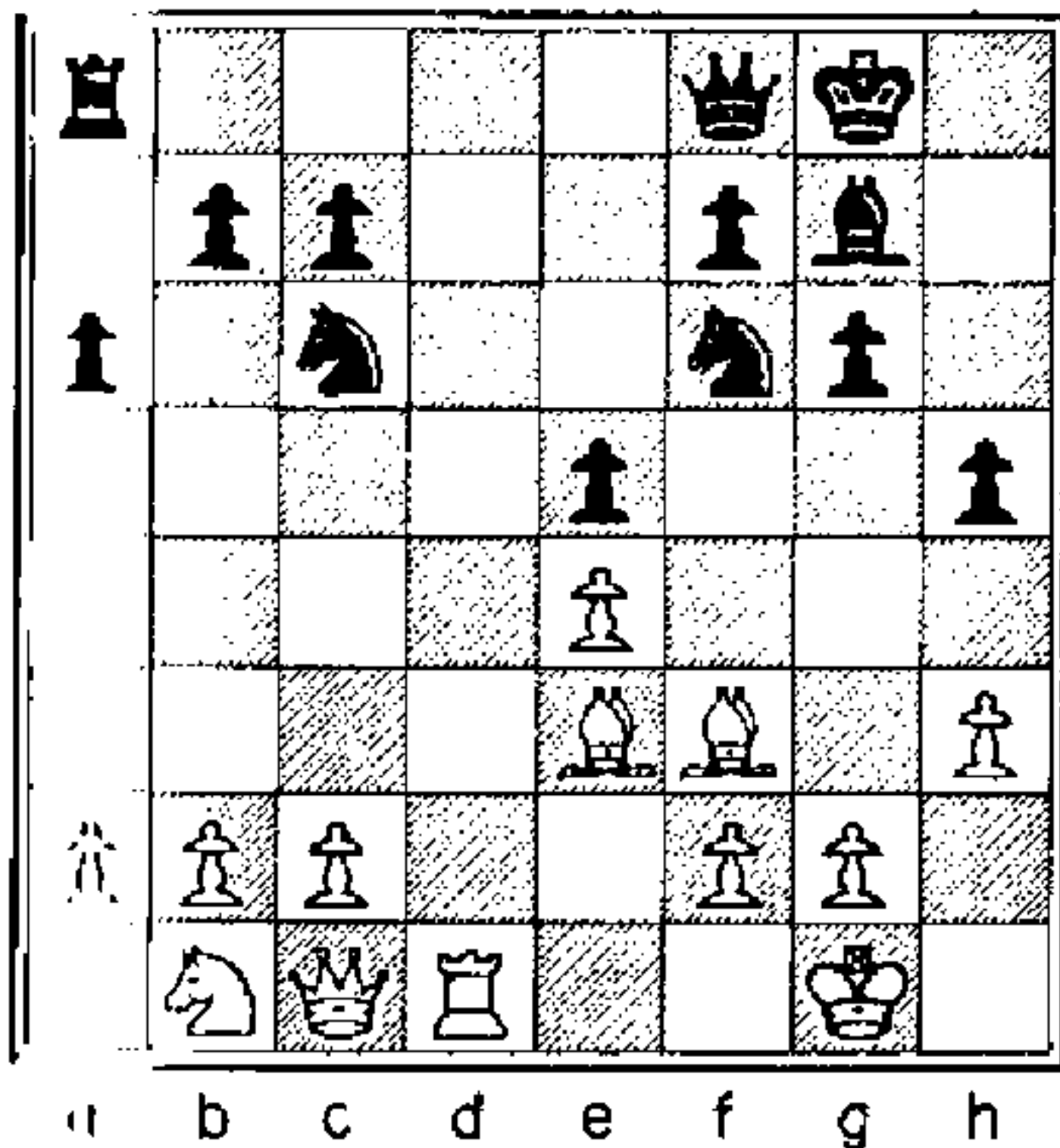
Kh7

18 Na3

Bh6

19 Nc4!

Draw!



The draw result should not be used as the criteria for judging this position! The explanation for it is "non-chess": the game was played in the last round which had started at the-ungodly-for-chessplayers-time of 9 am. Since neither player felt the inclination nor the need (as far as tournament standing was concerned) for blood, they were satisfied to call the game a draw.

After the futility of a do-nothing policy was so convincingly exposed in the previous game, attempts have been made to do "something". According to theory, the text move is Black's best approach. Its main point is to try to exchange off White's superior QB by ... Kh7 and Bh6. Moreover, White will be denied access to g4. Even though Black's plan is strategically logical, it still is not sufficient for full equality.

Subsequent analysis, however, showed that White's advantage, though not large, is quite steady and pleasant. White's pieces are placed rather harmoniously, the exchange of bishops will cause a weakening of Black's kingside, White has some space advantage — while Black always remains without counterplay. A possible continuation: 19 ... Bxe3 20 Nxe3 Rd8 21 Nd5! with continuing pressure by White.



# 7

## Modern Defense: Averbakh Variation

1 e4                      g6  
 2 d4                      Bg7  
 3 c4

With the text move White brings about the Averbakh Variation. The key characteristic of the Modern Defense (1 ... g6) is its flexibility, i.e. Black doesn't care whether White has opened with 1 e4, 1 d4 or 1 c4. The above position can and does arise via different move orders, equally common to our main line being 1 d4 g6 2 e4 Bg7 3 c4 and 1 c4 g6 2 d4 Bg7 3 e4.

3 ...                      d6  
 4 Nc3

The most flexible move. The QN definitely belongs on c3, whereas the question of the KN can still be left unresolved. That is, White may want to utilize the f-pawn for central purposes or prefer to post the KN on e2 rather than on the normal f3 square.

Black now can, of course, forget about playing the Modern Defense and transpose into a normal variation of the King's Indian Defense with 4 ... Nf6. But this happens rarely, since those players who start off with the Modern Defense usually prefer to remain there.

The best ways for Black to continue "Modern" are 4 ... Nc6, 4 ... Nd7 and 4 ... e5. It is the latter variation which we will take a close look at.

4 ...                      e5

A very logical execution of the ideas behind the Modern. Black utilizes the fianchettoed KB, which is unobstructed by the KN, to exert immediate pressure on White's d4, the weakest point in White's center. The popularity of this sub-variation is clearly demonstrated by the large number of famous grandmasters employing it.

**5 dxe5!**

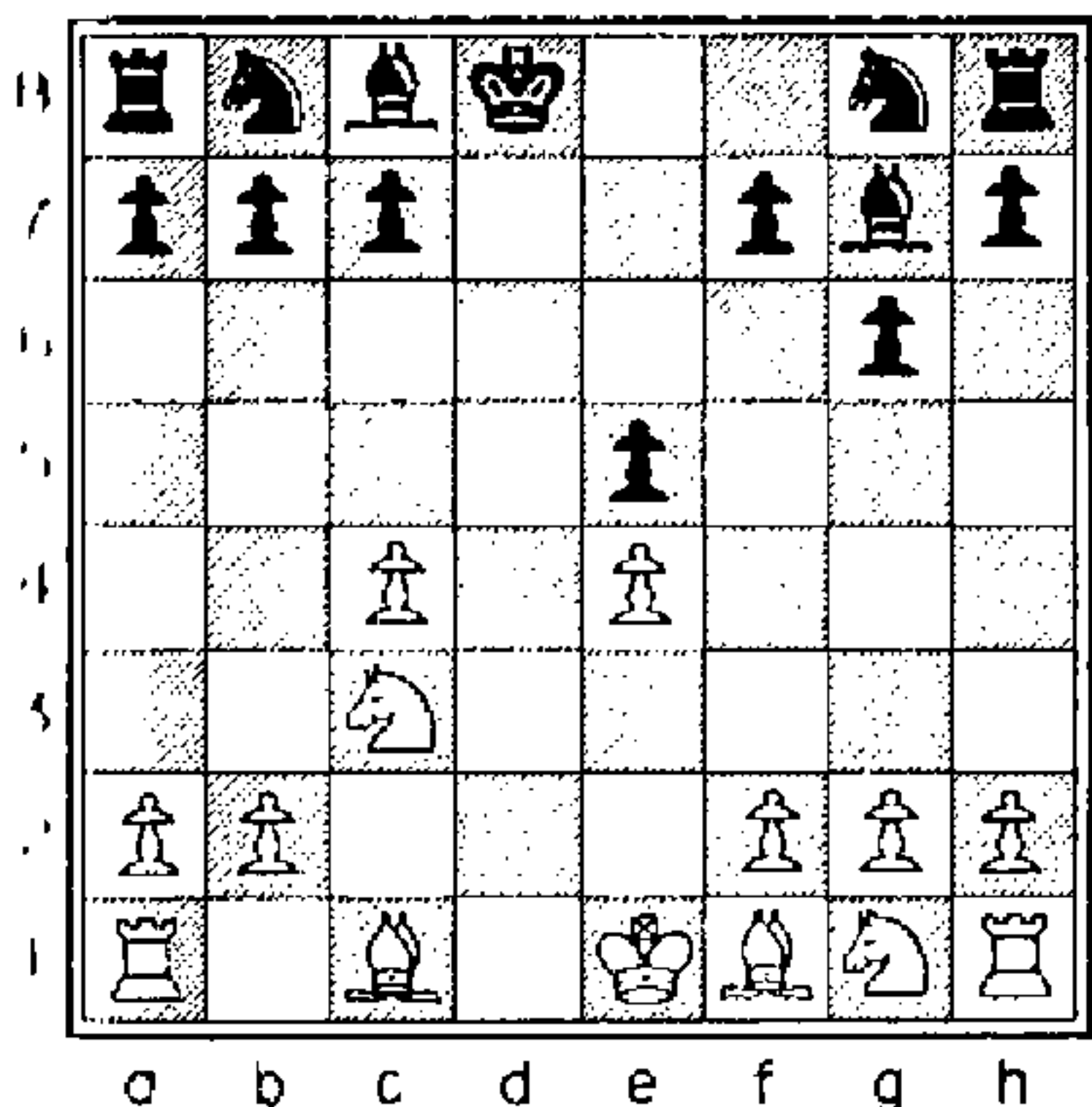
One of the hallmarks of the typical "Modern" player is that he likes complicated, tension filled central play. The point of the text move is just the opposite: White clears the central tension and brings about the exchange of queens, thus again simplifying matters.

White can aim for more complicated play, of course. For this 5 Nf3, 5 Nge2 and 5 d5 are playable. However, according to latest theoretical information, the text move is at least as good as these continuations.

**5 ... dxe5**

This central recapture is both inherently logical and best. After 6 ... Bxe5?! 6 Nf3 Bg7 (Or 6 ... Bg4 7 (Qa4+) 7 Bg5 White's major central and developmental advantages give him a clear superiority.

**6 Qxd8+ Kxd8**



A quick look would indicate that Black should have no troubles. He has no fundamental weaknesses at all, whereas White has a permanent weakness at d4. If we were well along in an endgame, Black would be fine. Yet at the moment we are not in an endgame, because even though the queens have been exchanged, no other pieces have. Thus White is left with more than sufficient firepower to try to exploit his superior development and Black's uncastled-in-the-centering. Black also has the slight strategic problem of having his KB's central diagonal blocked off by the e-pawn, thus making this bishop less active than White's corresponding QB.

White has three logical approaches for proceeding: 7 Be3, 7 Bg5+ and 7 f4. I shall consider each of them. Other continuations allow Black to complete his development normally and equalize easily enough. For instance: 7 Nf3 f6 8 Be3 Be6 9 Nd2 Nd7 10 Nb3 Bh6 11 Bxh6 Nxh6, as in Vranesic-Suttles, Canada 1970.

**7.1 QUEENSIDE DEVELOPMENT WITH 7 Be3:  
T. PÄHTZ-V. SMYSLOV,  
BERLIN 1979**

White goes normally about completing his queenside development, with a view towards an early rook check on d1.

**7 ... Nh6!?**

A fighting, double-edged move in order to aim for more than equality. Those satisfied to draw should play 7 ... Bh6 (or 7 ... Nd7 8 0-0-0 Bh6). The exchange of bishops means that Black is rid of his inferior one and another set of pieces have left the board. After 8 0-0-0+ Nd7 9 Bxh6 Nxh6, the following two examples from master practice are pertinent:

(1) 10 g3 c6 11 Bh3 Ke7 12 Nf3 f6 13 b3 Nc5, Partos-Ciocaltea, Rumanian Championship 1973.

(2) 10 f3! c6 11 g3 Ke7 12 Bh3 Nc5 13 Bxc8 Rfxc8 14 Nge2 a5 15 Kc2 Ng8 16 Nc1 Ne6, Carolukov, Caracas 1970.

White's play in the second example is more accurate, yet in each case the chances remain approximately equal.

**8 Rd1+**

From a strictly strategic standpoint more logical is 8 0-0-0+, thereby getting the king to safety by castling. However, White has a sharp tactical plan in mind and for this he doesn't want the king on the queenside.

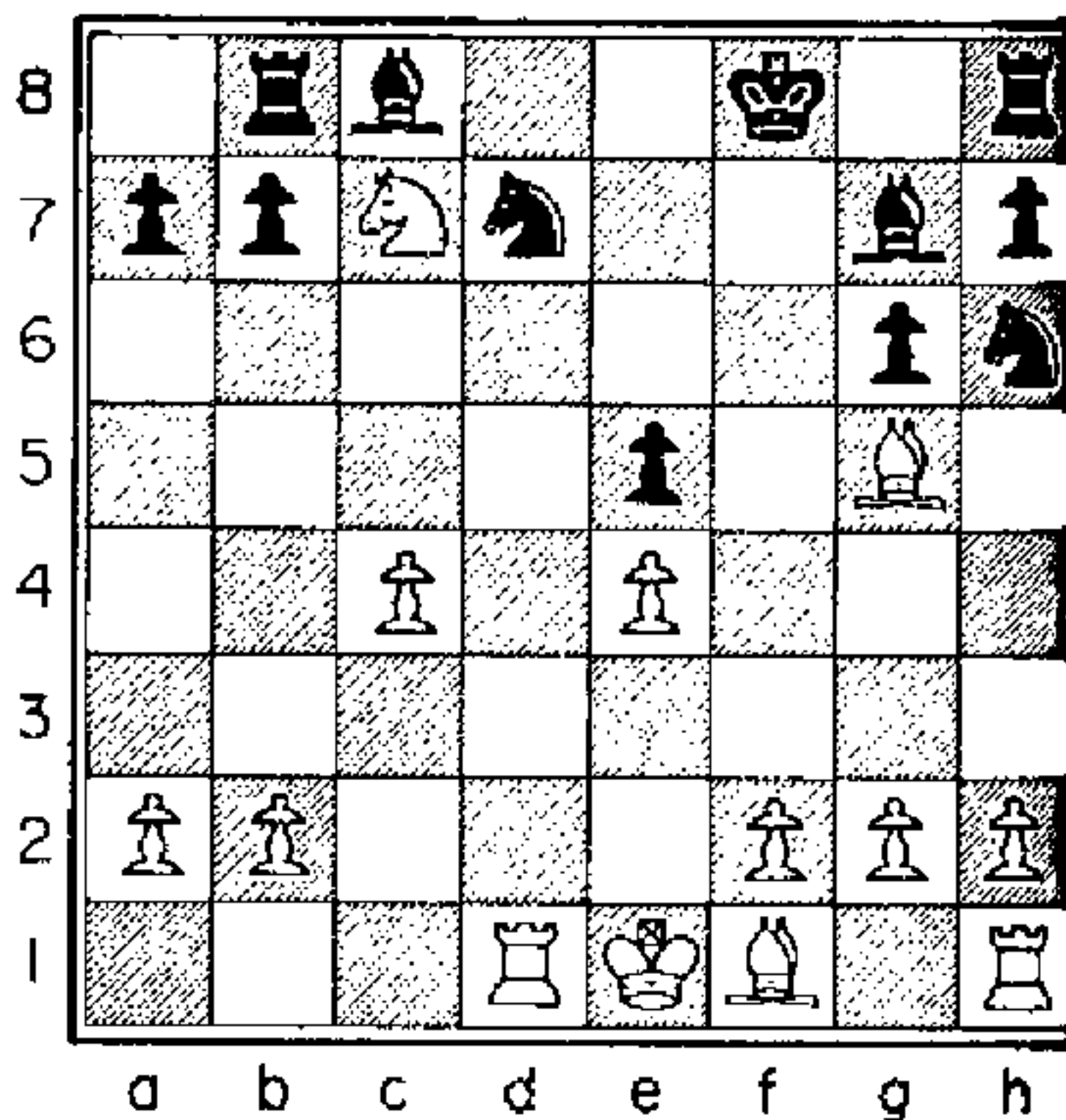
**8 ... Nd7**  
**9 Nf3 f6**

If Black is given one more move he will play 10 ... c6 and be safe from all possible tactics.

**10 Nxe5?!**

The only way to try to refute Black's enterprising 7 ... Nh6! White does get two pawns for the piece and a promising attacking position, but it doesn't seem quite enough. Black's inherent position is sound enough to just hold on. Tim souls would have played 10 h3 or 10 Be2, but obviously no advantage can result thereby.

**10 ... fxe5**  
**11 Bg5+ Ke8**  
**12 Nd5 Rb8**  
**13 Nxc7+ Kf8**



White seems to have a nice attacking position, yet in fact he has only three pieces into play. The best practical chance now is further development with 14 c3 (14 ... Nxc5? 15 Rd8+ Kf8 16 Bc4+ is good for White).

**14 Be3?!**

Though with a clear threat (14 ... a6? 15 Ba7), moving the same piece again just doesn't work out.

14 ...           b6  
15 c5            bxc5  
16 Bc4?

This tactical plan fails to a tactical counterplan. A bit better was 14 ... Ne6+, though then also 14 ... Ke7! leaves White without a satisfactory plan since after 17 Nxg7 18 ... his knight remains trapped.

16 ...           Nf7!  
17 Ne6+         Ke7!  
18 Nxg7         Kf6!  
19 Be6

The point of Black's defense is that 19 Ne6 fails to 19 ... Nb6! with the double threat 20 ... Bxe6 and 20 ... Nxc4.

19 ...           Rb7!  
20 Bd5         Rb6  
21 b4

After 21 Ne6 Rxe6 22 Bxe6 Kxe6 Black has both a material and positional advantage.

21 ...           cxb4!  
22 Bxb6         Nxb6  
23 Rc1

The final point in Black's defensive plan is that after 23 Bxf7 Kxf7 White's trapped knight must go home. Therefore White tries to get some counterplay from an active rook and passed d-pawn.

23 ...           Nxd5  
24 exd5         Kxg7  
25 0-0          Bf5  
26 Rc7         Rd8

With Black's king safe and all pieces developed, he can look forward to the safe realization of his material advantage in a routine endgame.

27 Rd1         a5  
28 f3          h5  
29 Rd2         Rd7  
30 Rc5         Nd6

Blockading the d-pawn and protecting the a-pawn (31 Rxa5?? Nc4) at the same time.

31 Re2         Nb7  
32 Rc6         Rxd5!

Giving back a piece to enter a won Exchange down endgame.

33 Rc7+        Rd7  
34 Rec2        Kf6  
35 Rxd7        Bxd7  
36 Rc7         Be6!  
37 Rxb7        Bxa2

On a strictly material basis Black is still ahead (the equivalent of half-a-pawn) and in any case the connected passed pawns can't be stopped, e.g. 38 Ra7 b3 39 Rxa5 b2.

38 Kf2         b3  
39 Ke3         a4  
40 Kd2         a3

41 Kc3                    b2  
 42 Kc2                    b1 = Q +  
 White  
 resigns

**7.2 THE BOTHERING 7 Bg5+ :**  
**J. SMEJKAL-SZILAGYI,**  
**VARNA 1971**

The idea of the bishop check is to follow up immediately with the rook check, without giving Black any opportunity on move 7 to choose his defensive plan. I believe that the idea is not bad and suitable for those who prefer a quieter plan than 7 f4.

7 ...                    f6  
 8 0-0-0+

Much more logical than 8 Rd1+, since the king stands better on the queenside than on e1.

8 ...                    Nd7  
 9 Be3

The normal routine move. Yet the sophisticated 9 Bd2!? may well be better, with the idea that after 9 ... Bh6 White is not forced to capture on h6. He can instead play 10 g3, planning 11 f4 and after 10 ... Bxd2+ 11 Rxd2, Black's KN is still undeveloped while White has taken a first step toward eventual rook doubling on the d-file.

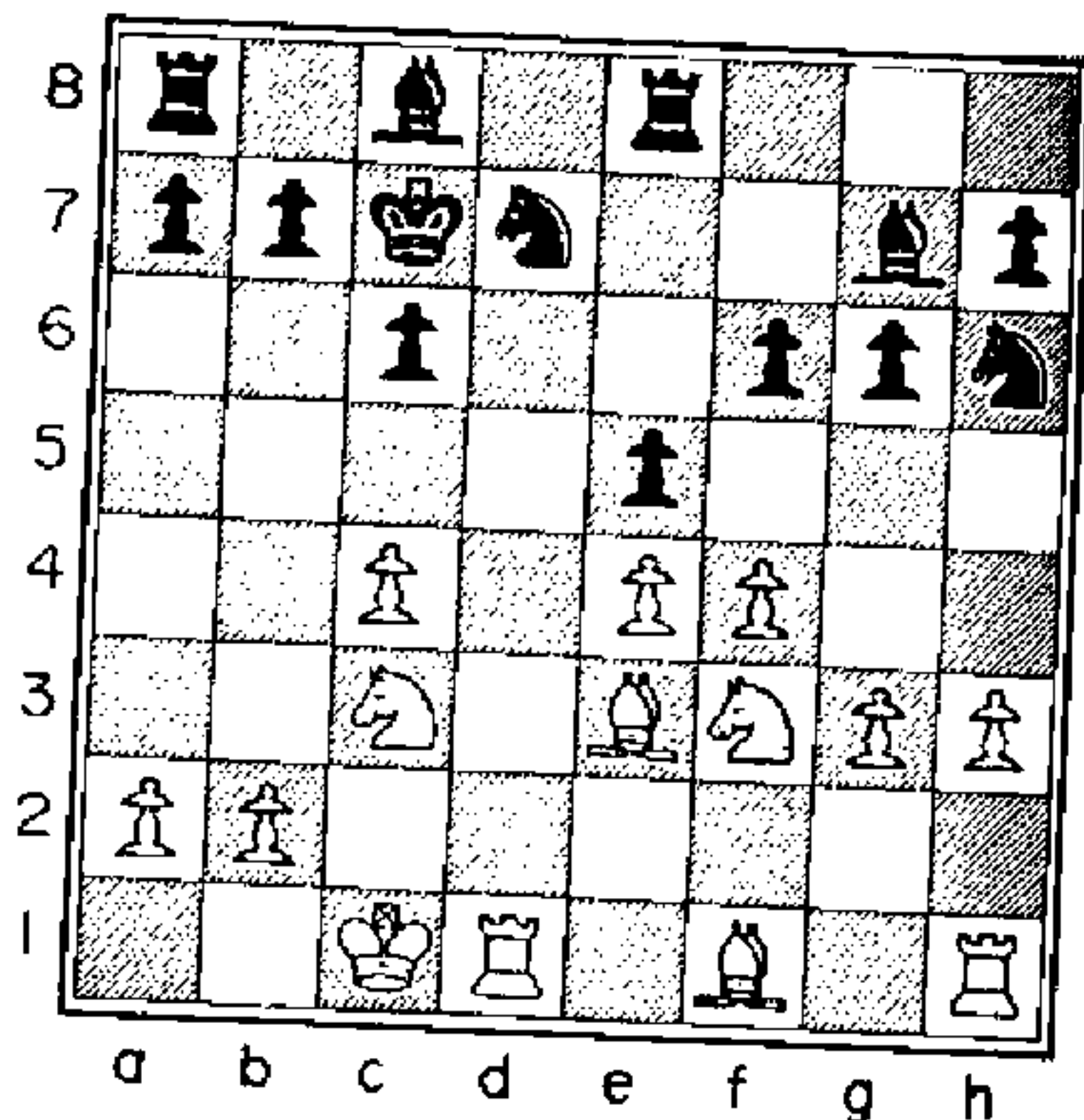
9 ...                    c6?!

I have selected the text game the main line to illustrate the dangers that Black is exposed to when he allows the dark square bishops to live. The equalizing method is again 9 ... Bh6!: 10 Bxh6 Nxh6 11 h4 12 h5 Ke7 13 hxg6 hxg6 14 Nf3 Nf6 15 Nh4 Be6 16 Be2 Rd8, with Black being equal and safe in Janosevic-Benko, Majdenpek 1976.

**10 g3!**

Now 10 ... Bh6 is fruitless because of 11 f4. As Black can not prevent that move in any case, White starts off with the slight dual advantages of better development and greater central influence.

10 ...                    Kc7  
 11 f4!                    Nh6  
 12 h3                    Re8  
 13 Nf3



White's edge in development and center is now obvious and Black should try to do something about it.

Therefore the sharp 13 ... f5!? suggests itself. White can still retain some pull after e.g. 14 fxe5 Nf7 15 exf5 gxf5 16 Bf4 Ndx e5 17 Bg2, but Black can start breathing. As played, Black gets into a very passive position.

<b>13 ...</b>	<b>Nf7?!</b>
<b>14 f5!</b>	<b>Bf8</b>
<b>15 g4</b>	<b>a6</b>
<b>16 Rh2!</b>	<b>b5</b>
<b>17 Rhd2</b>	<b>b4</b>

Since White dominates the center and kingside, Black correctly tries to keep the position closed until he can improve his development.

<b>18 Na4</b>	<b>Nd6</b>
<b>19 Bd3</b>	<b>Nb7!</b>
<b>20 Bc2</b>	<b>Ndc5</b>
<b>21 Nxc5</b>	<b>Nxc5</b>
<b>22 h4!</b>	<b>gxf5?</b>

The general principle that a defender should always keep in mind is that activity in the area(s) of the opponent's strength will usually boomerang. Therefore Black should leave the kingside alone and work where he has more space, i.e. the queenside. In order is 22 ... a5!, to be followed by ... a4.

**23 exf5!**

White now has the potentially dangerous g5 break, which, among others, would undermine the support for Black's e-pawn.

<b>23 ...</b>	<b>h6</b>
<b>24 Rh2!</b>	<b>e4</b>
<b>25 Nd4</b>	<b>Nd3 + ?</b>

Combinations played from a position of weakness usually fail and so also here. I don't see anything better than passive defense with 25 ... Bd7 or 25 ... a5.

<b>26 Bxd3</b>	<b>exd3</b>
<b>27 Rxd3</b>	<b>c5</b>
<b>28 Nb3</b>	<b>h5</b>
<b>29 Bxc5!</b>	

Gaining a second pawn. White gives one back, but retains both the bind and a one pawn advantage.

<b>29 ...</b>	<b>Bh6 +</b>
<b>30 g5!</b>	<b>fxg5</b>
<b>31 Rd6!</b>	<b>Bf8</b>
<b>32 Rf6</b>	<b>Bxc5</b>
<b>33 Nxc5</b>	<b>g4</b>
<b>34 Rd2!</b>	

Please note that White has still retained his edge in development and this makes the realization of his material advantage easy. Black has had to play the whole game without his QR and QB — much too great a handicap!

<b>34 ...</b>	<b>Re5</b>
<b>35 Rd5</b>	<b>Re1 +</b>
<b>36 Kd2</b>	<b>Rh1</b>
<b>37 Rf7 +</b>	<b>Kb6</b>
<b>38 Nb3!</b>	

With the threat 39 Rd6 mate.

38 ...           **Bb7**  
 39 **c5+**           **Kb5**  
 40 **Rxb7+**       **Kc6**  
 41 **Rdd7**  
 Black  
 resigns.

### 7.3 THE ATTACKING 7 f4!

With this sharp continuation, White plans to demonstrate that he can take advantage of Black's in-the-center king and White's better development. Opening of lines is what is required to take advantage of the above factors and this is what White is aiming at. White must realize that the diagonal of the Black KB can now be opened and White may be left with an isolated e-pawn. White's approach is both double edged and dynamic. He is ready to absorb some potential long range problems in order to strike immediately and sharply. Dubious now is 7 ... exf4?! since after 8 Bxf4 White's development is furthered even more. Also dubious is 7 ... f6?! since after 8 fxe5! fxe5 9 Bg5+ White's edge in development becomes of major significance. Gheorghiu-Dzindzhashvili, Buenos Aires 1978 continued: 9 ... Bf6 (9 ... Ke8? 10 Nd5!) 10 Nf3! Nd7 11 Nd5! h6 (The alternatives are worse: 11 ... c6? 12 Nxf6 Ngxf6 13 Nxe5!; 11 ... Bxg5? 12 Nxg5 followed by 13 Ne6+.) 12 Bxf6+ Ngxf6 13 Nxf6 Nxf6 14 Nxe5 Rg8

15 0-0-0+ Ke7 16 Bd3. White has won a pawn and with some subsequent fine play won the game on move 47.

Therefore, Black has generally selected one of the following three developmental moves:

7.31 Passive 7 ... Nd7:  
 R. Hübner-P. Benko,  
 Hungary 1976

With this move Black safeguards e5 and is ready to guard the important d5 square via ... c6. The disadvantages are that the move is inherently passive and the QB's development is prevented.

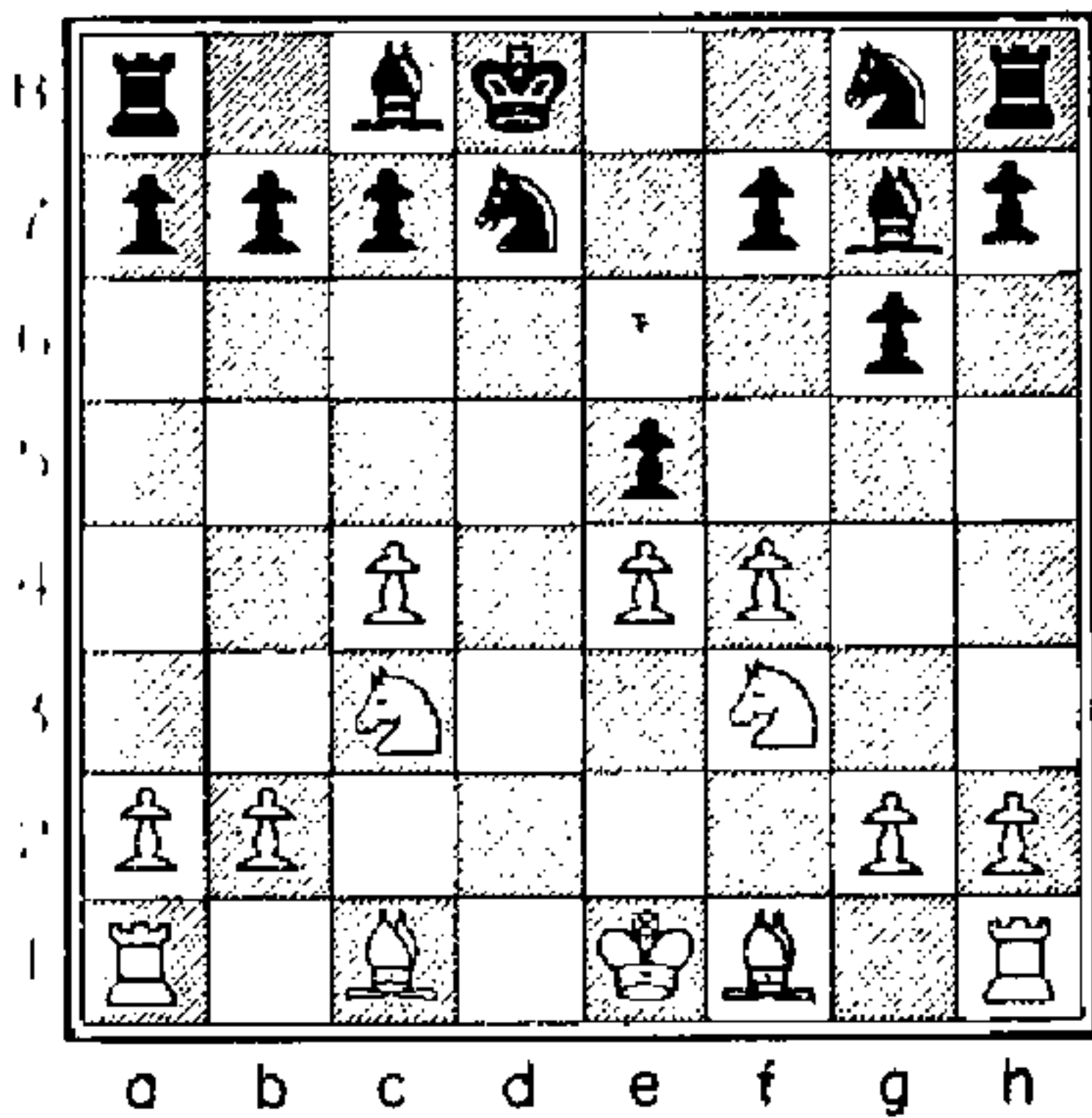
#### 8 Nf3

Possible is 8 dxe5 Nxe5, which though apparently falling in with Black's plans to control e5, nevertheless still allows White to try to exploit his edge in development with 9 Bg5+!. For instance, 9 ... f6 10 0-0-0+ Bd7 11 Bh4 Nh6 12 Nf3 Nhf7 13 Nd5 g5 14 Bg3 c6 15 Ne3 Ke7 16 Nd4, Ornstein-Matulovic, Le Havre 1977, with a slight plus to White since his pieces stand more actively and he controls f5.

However, the text looks more logical. Why further Black's development?

(See next diagram)

8 ...           **c6**  
 9 **Be2!**



Development is the right approach here too. Less effective is 9 dxe5 Nxe5 10 Bf4, with Black able to equalize after both 10 ... Nxf3+ 11 gxf3 Be6, Donner-Ivkov, Wijk aan Zee 1972, and 10 ... f6 11 0-0+ Ke8 12 Nxe5 fxe5 13 Bg5 Bf6! 14 h4 Be7 15 Be2 h6 16 Be3 and a draw was agreed upon in Knezevic-Padevsky, Kragujevac 1977.

**9 ... f6**

Though this does shorten the KB's diagonal, it is difficult to do without the central support thus provided. In Tal-Klaric, Sochi 1977, Black omitted playing ... f6, yet the net result was that White had an enhanced central superiority: 9 ... Ke8 10 0-0 Ne7 11 Bd2 exf4 12 Bxf4 Nc5 13 Rac1 Bg4 14 b4! Bxf3 15 gxf3! Ne6 16 Be3 g5 17 Rfd1 Ng6 18 Na4 b6?! 19 Rd6 Ke7 20 Rxc6! Ne5 21 Rxe6+ Kxe6 22 Bxg5. White has a slight material

and vast positional superiority and went on to win on move 48.

**10 0-0!**

Development! Playable, however, also is 10 fxe5 Nxe5 11 Nxe5 fxe5 and now neither:

(a) 12 0-0 Nf6 [In Keene-R. Rodriguez, Manila 1979 Black played 12 ... Be6?! and White retained a slight edge after 13 Bg5+! Ke8 (13 ... Kc7? 14 Bg4!) 14 Rad1 Bh6! 15 Rd6!.] 13 Bg5 Ke7 14 Rad1 Rf8 15 b3 Be6 16 Bc1 Rfd8 17 Ba3+ Ke8 18 Bd6 Ng4, Ungureanu-Vadasz, Moscow 1977, nor

(b) 12 Bg5+ Ke8 13 0-0-0 Bf6! 14 h4 Be7 15 Rd2 Be6 16 Rhd1 Nf6 17 c5 Rf8, Miles-Kagan, Hastings 1976-77 led to an advantage for White.

However, by immediately deploying his QB onto the a3-f8 diagonal, White can obtain a slight pull thus: 12 b3! Nf6 13 0-0 Be6 14 Ba3! Kc7 15 Be7! Ng8 16 Bh4, as in Bjerring-Hoi, Copenhagen 1978. Because of the instructiveness of the further "quiet" play, I'm giving the whole score as a game-within-a-game: 16 ... Nh6 17 Rac1 (threatening 18 Nd5+) 17 ... Bd7 18 c5 Rae8 19 h3 Rhf8 20 Bc4 Rxf1+ 21 Rxf1 b5?! 22 cxb6 axb6 23 a4! Be6 24 Bxe6 Rxe6 25 b4! Rd6 26 b5 Rd3? (Correct is 26 ... Kb7) 27 Rc1 Rd6 28 Nd5+ Kb7 29 Nb4! cxb5 30 axb5



Rd4?! 31 Nd5! Rxe4 32 Rc7+ Kb8  
33 Bf2 Nf5 34 Bxb6 Bh6 35 Ba7+  
Black resigns.

**10 ... Ke8**

Black must defend very carefully here. Witness the following debacle: 10 ... Nh6?! 11 fxe5! Nxe5 12 Nxe5 fxe5 13 Bg5+ Ke8 14 Rad1 Nf7 15 Be3 Bf8 16 c5! Be7? (16 ... Nd8) 17 Nb5!! cxb5 18 Bxb5+ Kf8 19 Bh6+ and Black resigned (19 ... Kg8 20 Bc4) in Ivkov-Kagan, Rio de Janeiro Interzonal 1979.

**11 g3**

Giving White the option of recapturing after a ... exf4 with the g-pawn, thereby strengthening White's central influence. White's approach here and in the coming play is consistent and clear: build on his spatial and developmental superiority while avoiding exchanges which would free Black's position. In practice it is very hard to defend against such an approach.

**11 ... Nh6**  
**12 Kg2 Nf7**  
**13 Be3 Bf8**  
**14 Rad1 b6**  
**15 a3! Be7**  
**16 Ne1 Bc5?!**

Black is afraid of 17 Nd3 and 18 b4. Though in principle exchange of pieces should lighten the defender's load, here the weakening of the dark squares will soon

become very noticeable. Benko suggests 16 ... h5 as a better plan.

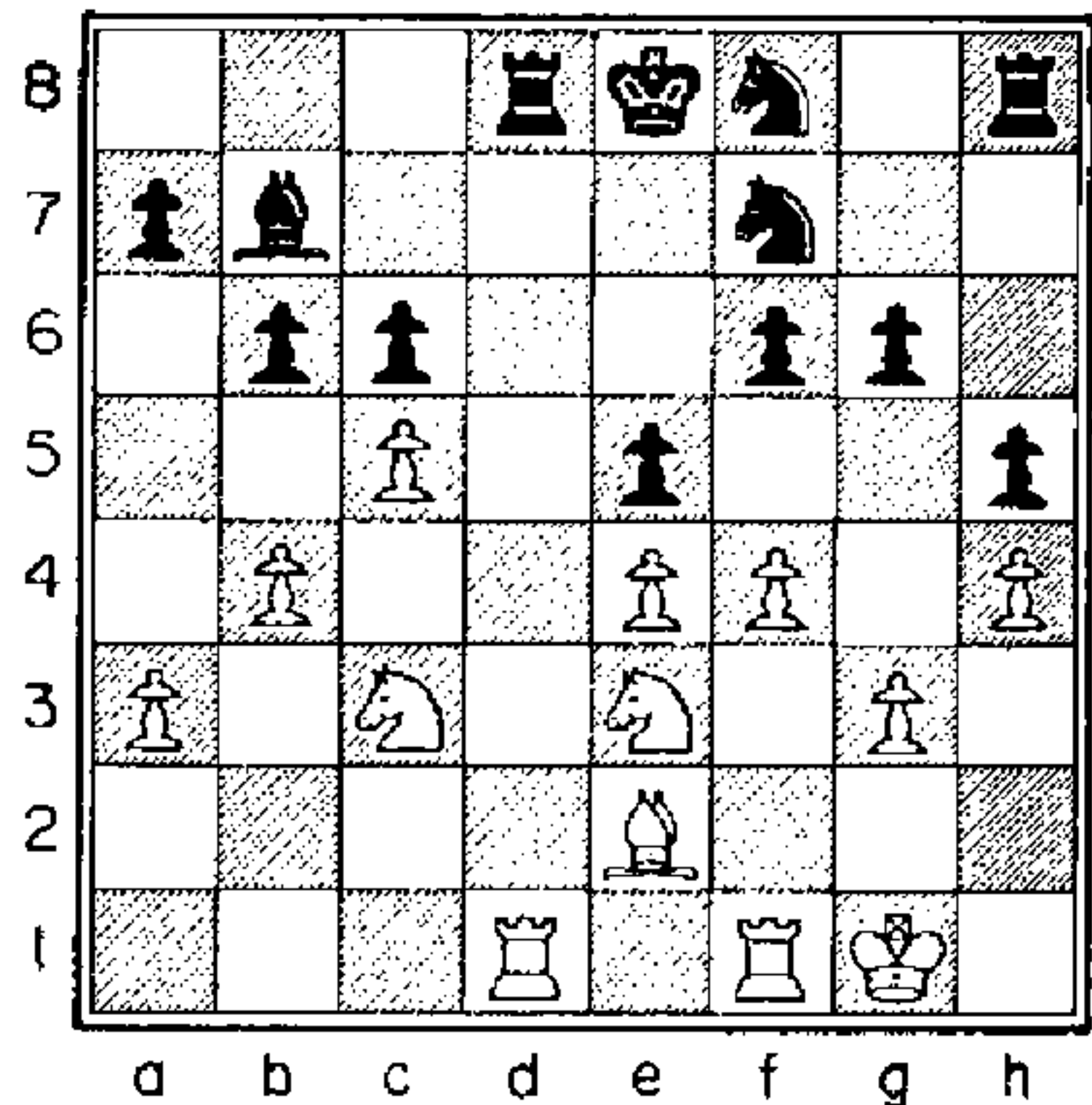
**17 Nc2 Bxe3**  
**18 Nxe3 h5**  
**19 b4!**

Establishing also a clear superiority on the queenside.

**19 ... Bb7**  
**20 Kg1 Rd8**  
**21 h4**

Preventing a ... h4 by Black and controlling g5. White wants to risklessly control the whole board.

**21 ... Nf8**  
**22 c5!**



Still well ahead in development, White starts to open lines to capitalize on his advantages.

**22 ... Rxd1**  
**23 Bxd1!**

Stronger than 23 Rxd1, after which Black can play 23 ... Ne6

gaining time by threatening both the f-pawn and 24 ... Nd4.

**23 ... bxc5**

After 23 ... b5, White would achieve the decisive line opening on the queenside via a4, either immediately or after a bit of preparation.

**24 Bb3! Nd7**

After 24 ... cxb4 25 axb4 White will recover the pawn with Ra1, thereby also penetrating into Black's position.

**25 Rd1! Bc8**  
**26 b5!**

Open lines, please! Notice how White is still working with his edge in development.

**26 ... cxb5**  
**27 Nxb5 exf4**  
**28 gxf4 Nb6**  
**29 Nxa7 Bb7**  
**30 Nb5 Ke7?**

In time pressure and under great positional pressure, Black does see that he loses a piece after 30 ... Bxe4? 31 Bxf7+ Kxf7 32 Nd6+, but he doesn't see that the same threat also exists with his bishop on b7. To continue resisting, mandatory is 30 ... Bc6.

**31 Bxf7 Kxf7**  
**32 Nd6+ Ke7**  
**33 Nxb7 Ra8**  
**34 Nxc5 Rxa3**

**35 Kf2 Rc3**  
**36 Rb1**  
**Black resigns.**

7.32 Double edged  
7 ... Nc6

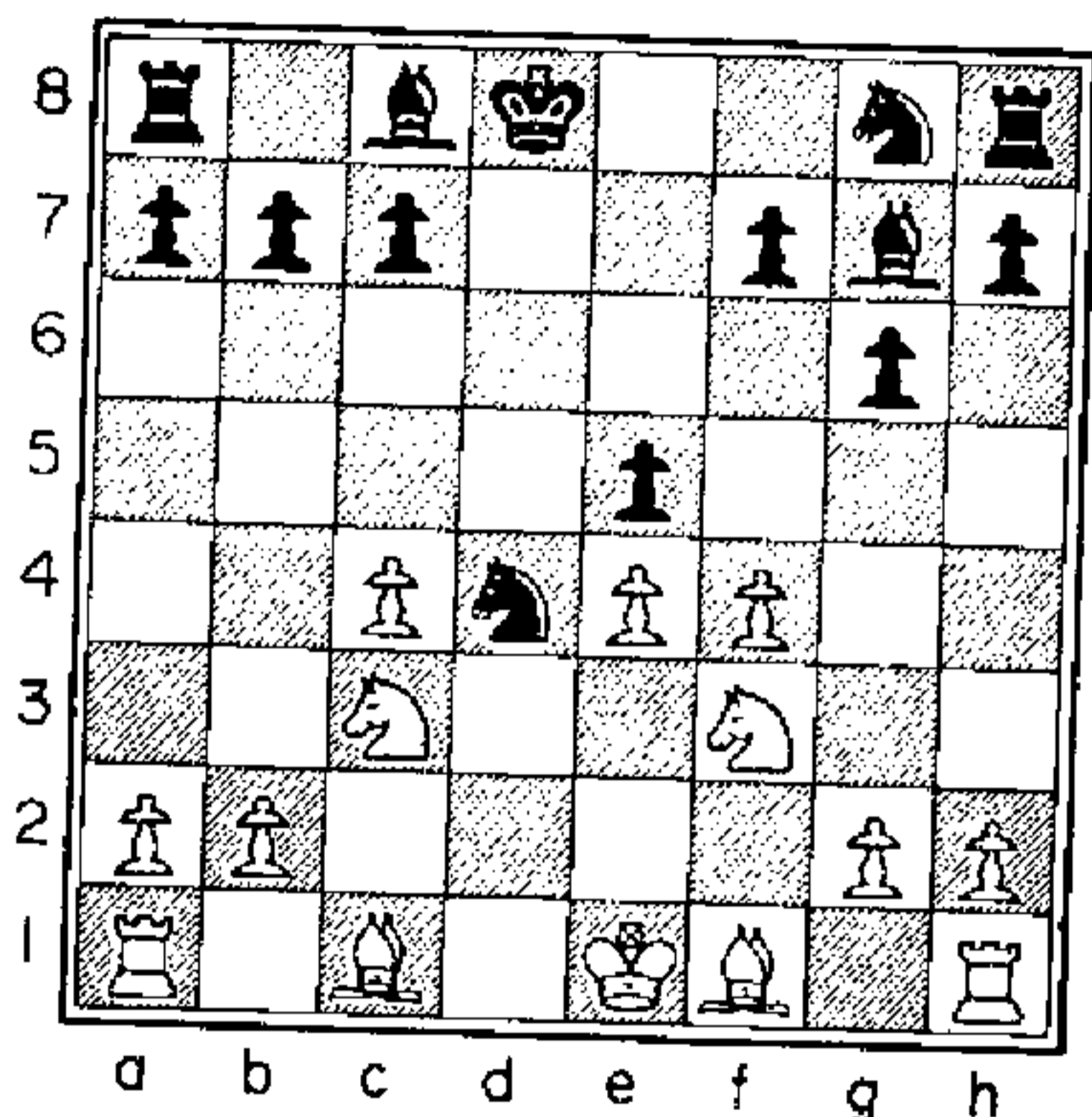
An active, double edged plan. Black develops his knight to an active square from where it can both control e5 and control (and head for) d4. Moreover, the diagonal of Black's QB remains open. Nevertheless, the move also has a serious disadvantage: the key d5 square remains in White's hands and can serve as an excellent outpost for his QN.

**8 Nf3!**

Developing while applying pressure on e5 is clearly the preferred way. If instead 8 dxe5, Black apart from the immediate 8 ... Nxe5 (see 7 ... Nd7 8 fxe5 Nxe5) can also first complete his queenside minor piece development with 8 ... Be6. The further course in Uhlmann-Larsen, Aarhus 1971 was 9 Bg5+ Kc8 10 Nf3 h6 11 Bf4 g5 12 Be3 Nge7 13 0-0-0 Nxe5 14 Nd5 N7g6 15 Bd4 and now instead of 15 ... b6?, which gave White a strong attack after 16 c5!, Black could have approximate equality with the normal 15 ... c6 (16 Ne7+ Nxe7 17 Nxe5 Rg8).

After the text move, Black has three important continuations and we shall consider each of them.

(a) Active play with 8 ... Nd4:  
M. Suba-B. Ivkov,  
Las Palmas 1979



The most aggressive follow-up to 7 ... Nc6: Black's QN goes on an immediate warpath.

**9 Kf2!**

Very smoothly negating the threatened 9 ... Nc2+. The king on f2 protects the f3 point, allows the rooks to be connected and is centralized for the coming endgame. It also is perfectly safe there. In Pribyl-Taimanov, Brno 1975, White played the clumsy looking 9 Bd3. The bishop is without scope there and after 9 ... Nxf3+ 10 gxf3 Ne7 11 fxe5 Bxe5 12 Bh6 c6 13 0-0-0 Kc7 14 h4 Ng8 15 Be3 Nf6 Black's active

position compensated White's central superiority and the chances were balanced.

**9 ... Nxf3**  
**10 gxf3 f6?!**

This routine defense of e5 works out poorly since Black is left with a permanent weakness there and a passive KB. Since after the exchange of knights, White threatens no more to win the e-pawn, Black should just let that point remain as is and improve the safety of his king, starting with 10 ... c6.

**11 Be3! c6**  
**12 Rd1+ Ke8**  
**13 h4! Nh6**  
**14 fxe5! fxe5**  
**15 h5 Nf7**  
**16 Bh3!**

White's inferior minor piece is the KB since it is hemmed in by its pawns and therefore it is excellent strategy to exchange it off for Black's "good" bishop. The strategic text move is much superior to the attacking 16 Rg1?! since after 16 ... g5! 17 Bxg5 Nxd5 18 Rxd5 Bf6 the active placement of Black's bishops will fully compensate the missing pawn.

**16 ... Bxh3**  
**17 Rxh3 Bf6**  
**18 Rg1 Ke7**  
**19 hxg6 hxg6**

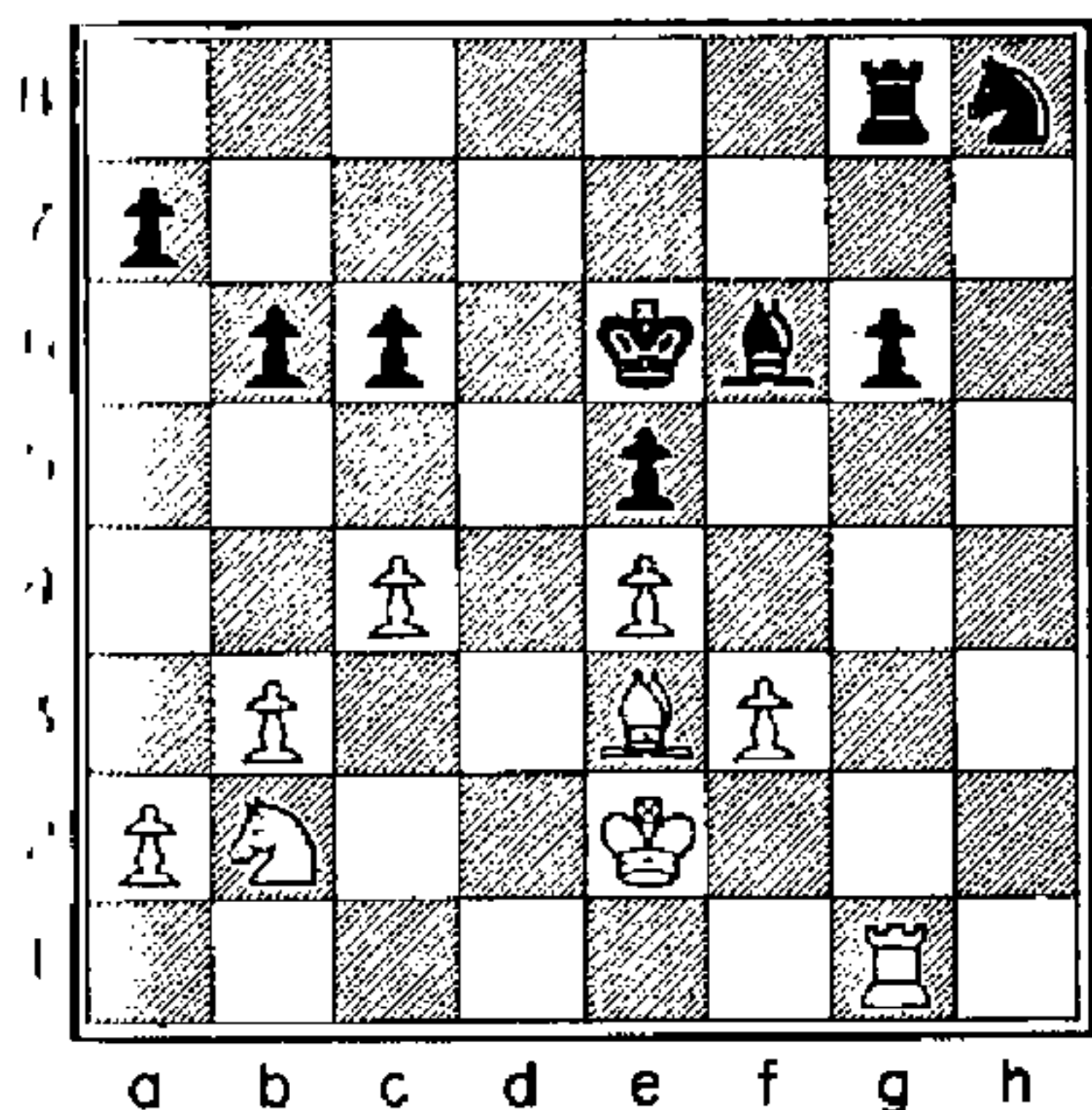
20 Rxf8  
21 Ke2!

Nxf8

We are now in an endgame and thus White centralizes his king. White clearly has the more active bishop, while Black has chronic pawn weaknesses on e5 and g6. Moreover, Black will have difficulty protecting the a- and b-pawn couplet. Over-all White has a significant endgame advantage. Yet the position still must be won. I would expect a Fischer, Capablanca or Karпов to do it well. Suba does it equally impressively.

21 ...  
22 Na4  
23 b3  
24 Nb2!

Ke6  
b6  
Rg8



White's 22nd move forced a potentially vulnerable point on b6 and White gets ready to exploit this with Nd3, a4, and a5, perhaps preceding the latter with b4.

24 ...  
25 a4  
26 Nd3!

Nf7  
Rh8

The sickly g-pawn can not yet be won since after 26 Rxf6? Rh2+ 27 Bf2 Ng5 Black threatens both 28 ... Kf7 and 28 ... Nh3.

26 ...  
27 Nf2  
28 a5!  
29 Kd3!

Rh2+  
g5  
Rd8

Unpinning and thus freeing the knight for action. Black has no good defensive plan and, being in time pressure, does not put up the strongest resistance. Instead of the wasteful knight maneuver, better is 29 ... Bc7.

29 ...  
30 axb6  
31 Bxb6!  
32 Ke3!

Nh8?!  
Bxb6  
axb6

The exchange of bishops has not helped Black since he has one less piece to defend his weak spots with. White first prevents Black's counterplay and then will penetrate with his rook into Black's queenside. The weaknesses on b6 and c6, when added to those already on e5 and g5, will spell Black's doom.

32 ...  
33 Ra1  
34 Ra7!  
35 Rc7!  
36 Ng4

Nf7  
Rh8  
Rb8  
c5  
Nd6

Because of *zugzwang* Black must give way somewhere.

**37 Rg7 Ra8**

If 37 ... Nf7, Suba gives the following win: 38 Rg6+ Ke7 39 Nf6 b5 40 Nd5+ Kd7 (40 ... Kf8 41 Nb6!) 41 Rg7 Ke6 42 cxb5!, since 42 ... Rxb5? is not playable: 43 Nc7+ Kf6 44 Rxf7+.

**38 Kd3! Ra3**

**39 Rg6+ Ke7**

**40 Kc3**

Now Black is at the end of his rope and must start losing material.

**40 ... b5**

**41 Nxe5 g4**

**42 Rxc4 Ke6**

**43 Nd3 bxc4**

**44 Rg6+ Kd7**

Or 44 ... Ke7 45 Nxc5 with a two pawn advantage. After the text White has a little tactical trick.

**45 Ne5+! Ke7**

**46 Rxd6! cxb3**

**47 Rb6**

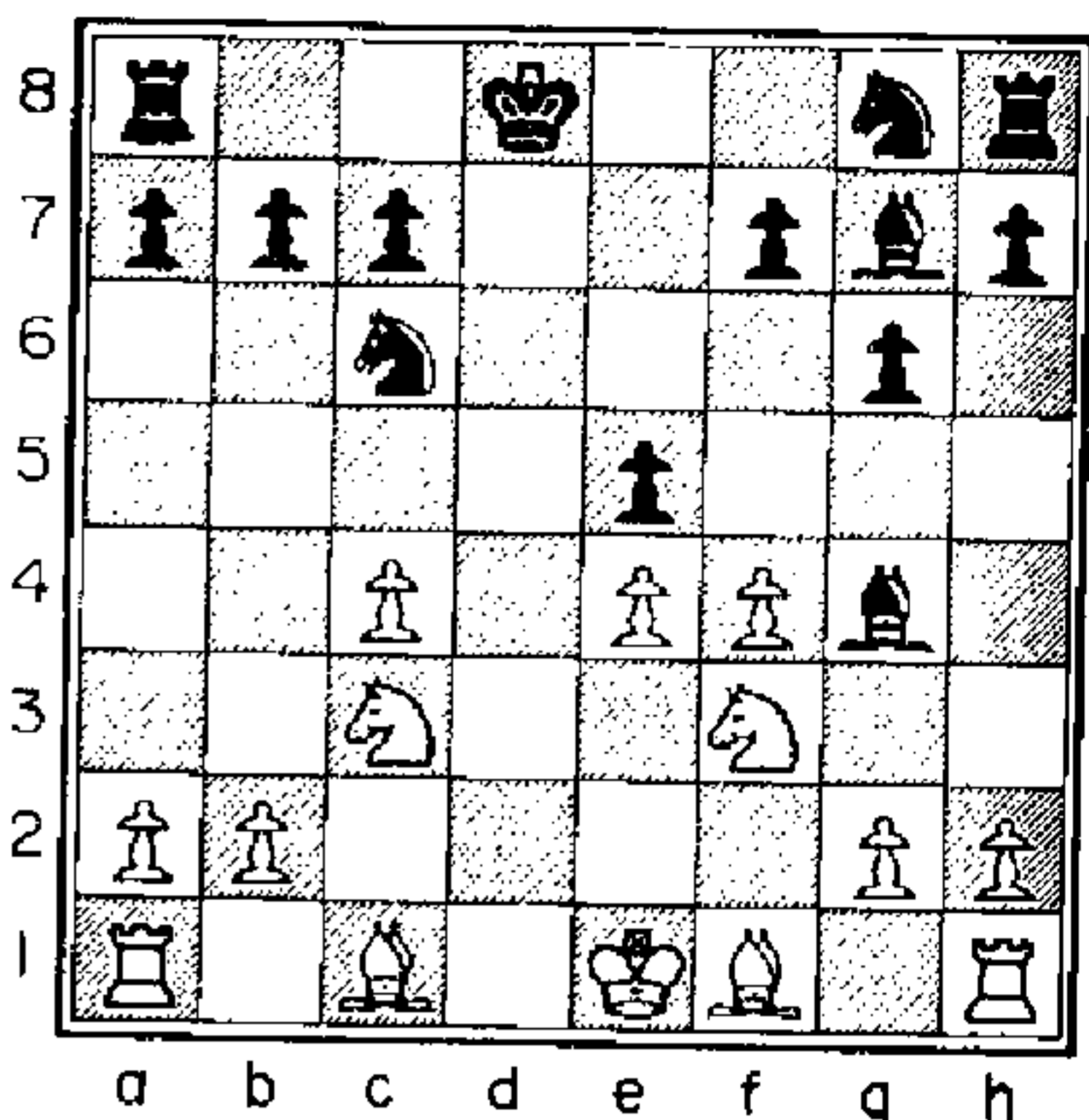
**Black**

**resigns**

*(b) Active play with 8 ... Bg4:  
J. Tarjan-Matulovic, Novi Sad 1975*

*(See next diagram)*

With the idea of exchanging off White's KN and thereby both releasing the pressure on e5 and



enhancing the scope of Black's QN. However, the disadvantages are also very noticeable: White's center is strengthened and he will have two potentially active bishops in a fairly open position. Over-all I would rate Black's plan of dubious strategic merit.

**9 fxe5!**

After 9 Be2 Bxf3 10 Bxf3 Nd4 Black obtains his goals and has equality.

**9 ... Bxf3?!**

Continuing his plan, yet better is 9 ... Nxe5 10 Bg5+ Ke8. After 11 Be2 White does have a reasonably sized edge since he is ahead in development and Black's QB is misplaced on g4. Still from a strategic standpoint Black is O.K. and he will be able to equalize if he can eventually negate White's edge in development.

**10 gxf3            Bxe5**

10 ... Nd4 is parried by 11 Kf2 —  
in Suba-Ivkov.

**11 Bg5+           Ke8**  
**12 0-0-0         Nd4!?**

Matulovic queries this and suggests instead 12 ... h6. Yet after 11 Be3 it seems to me that White's superiority is both obvious and unshakable. After the text White has to make a fundamental decision.

**13 f4!?**

Allowing the ruination of his pawn formation for the prospect of attacking chances. Paradoxically, a later plan is 13 Be3! since it is very hard for Black to capture the pawn with 13 ... Nxf3 because after 14 Be2 Nh4 or 14 ... Bxc3 15 bxc3 16 Bd4 White's edge in development is very marked.

**13 ...             Ne6**  
**14 fxe5            Nxe5**  
**15 h4?**

By chasing the knight where it wants to go, White loses a critical tempo for the attack. Correct is the obvious 15 Nd5! after which Matulovic analyzes 15 ... Ne6 16 Bh3 Rc8 17 Rhf1 with a strong and considerable advantage for White. Black can improve with the immediate 15 ... Rc8!, though White should still have some advantage after 16 Bg2.

**15 ...             Ne6**  
**16 Nd5             c6**  
**17 Ne3?**

Moving backward — while his pawns remain ruined — is equivalent to suicide. Mandatory is 17 Nf6+ Nxf6 18 exf6. This position is difficult to judge, but probably yields dynamic equality.

**17 ...             Nc5**  
**18 Bh3             a5!**

No need to give White chances after 18 ... Nxe4?! 19 e6!. Black first safeguards his active knight's position.

**19 Ng4             Rd8**  
**20 Nf6+ ?**

What was good earlier, now — several tempos behind — is bad. I don't see anything better than careful defending starting with 20 Nf2.

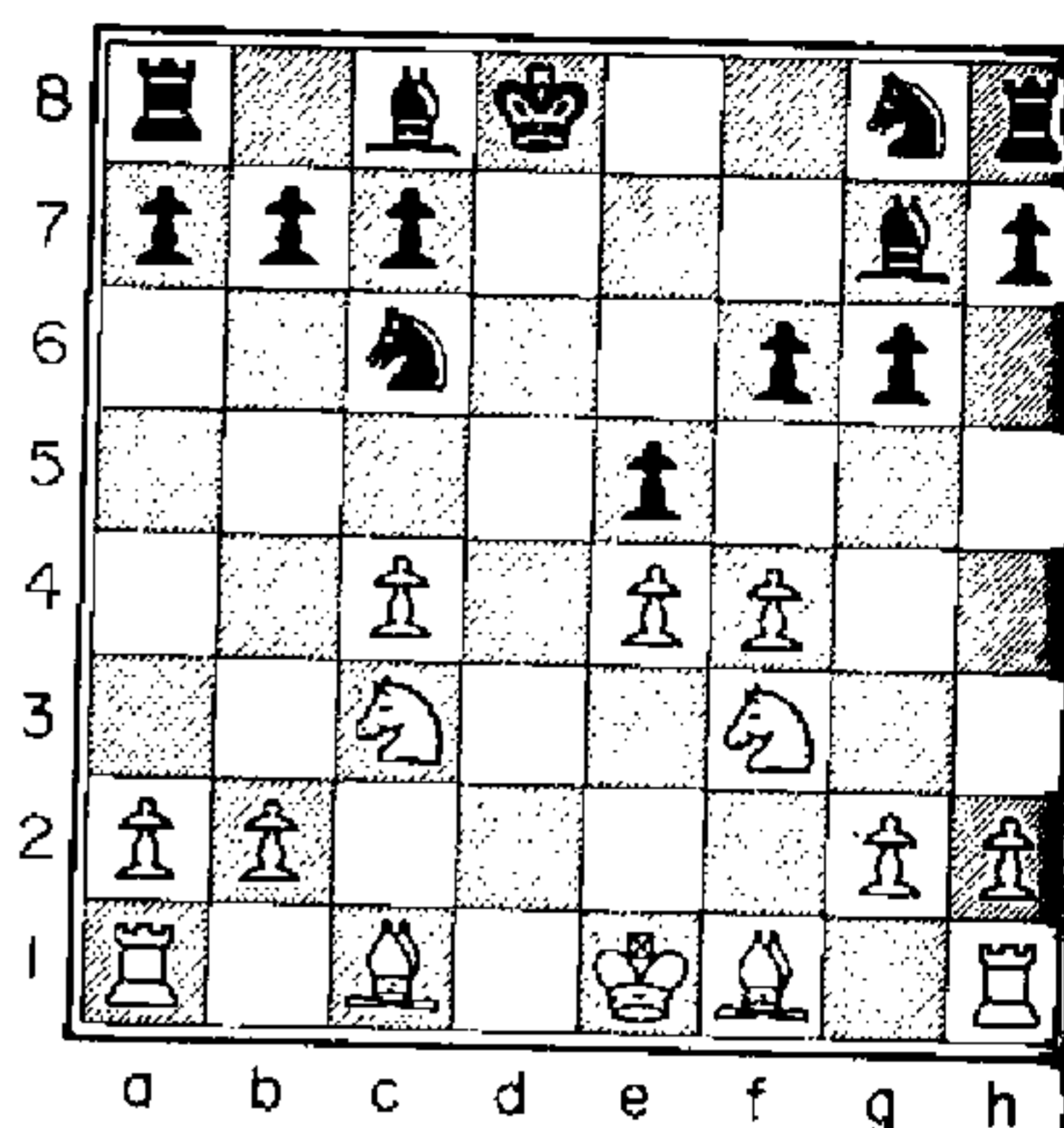
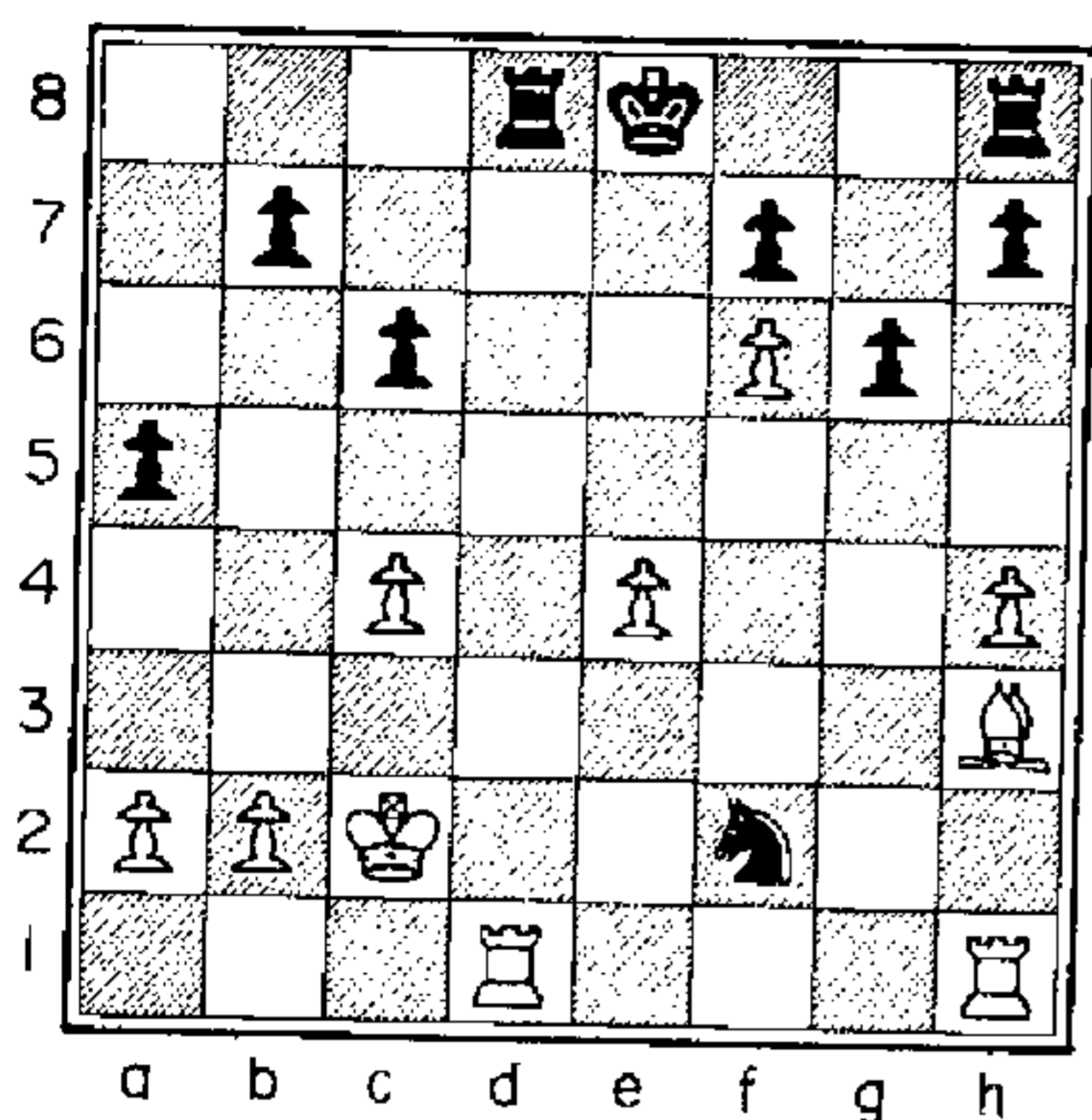
**20 ...             Nxf6**  
**21 exf6            Nd3+!**  
**22 Kc2             Nf2**

*(See next diagram)*

The knight forks four (!) White pieces and something has to go.

**23 Rxd8+         Kxd8**  
**24 Rh2             Nxe4**

Not only has Black won one of the former doubled pawns, but is about to win the other one also. Such fate often befalls an attacker who



absorbs strategic deficiencies in the hope of furthering his attack. If the attack fails, he pays.

<b>25 Kb3</b>	<b>Re8</b>
<b>26 Kc2</b>	<b>Nxf6</b>
<b>27 Rd2+</b>	<b>Ke7</b>
<b>28 a3</b>	<b>h5!</b>
<b>29 b4</b>	<b>axb4</b>
<b>30 axb4</b>	<b>Ng4</b>
<b>31 c5</b>	<b>Ne5</b>
<b>32 Bg2</b>	<b>Rd8</b>
<b>33 Re2</b>	<b>Ke6</b>
<b>34 b5</b>	<b>Rd4!</b>
<b>35 bxc6</b>	<b>bxc6</b>
<b>36 Kb3</b>	<b>Kf5</b>
<b>37 Rf2+</b>	<b>Rf4</b>
<b>38 Bh3+</b>	<b>Ng4</b>
<b>39 Rxf4+</b>	<b>Kxf4</b>
<b>40 Bg2</b>	<b>Ne5</b>

**White resigns**

(c) *Passive defense with 8 ... f6:*  
*R. Vaganian–J. Mestel, Skara 1980*

Black tries to combine the active location of the QN with a passive defense of e5. However, the combination is not successful. The pawn on e5 remains a chronic weakness while d5 becomes powerful outpost for White pieces.

<b>9 Be3</b>	<b>Be6</b>
<b>10 Rd1+</b>	

Since White wants to operate also on the queenside, he prefers putting his king in the safest area of the kingside.

<b>10 ...</b>	<b>Kc8</b>
---------------	------------

With the board full of pieces, the Black king has no comfortable location. The text has the disadvantage of locking in the QR. However, on 10 ... Ke8 Vaganian gives the following favorable-for-White line: 11 fxe5 fxe5 12 Nd5 Rc8 13 c5 followed by 14 Bc4 and very strong pressure.

11 **Be2**                    **Nh6**  
 12 **fxe5!**                **Nxe5**  
 13 **Nxe5**                 **fxe5**  
 14 **0-0**

Even a brief look at this position suffices to show the consequences of Black's build-up. All of White's pieces are developed and stand well. On the other hand Black is playing without his QR and has a bad KB and misplaced KN. No wonder Black has no fully satisfactory continuation.

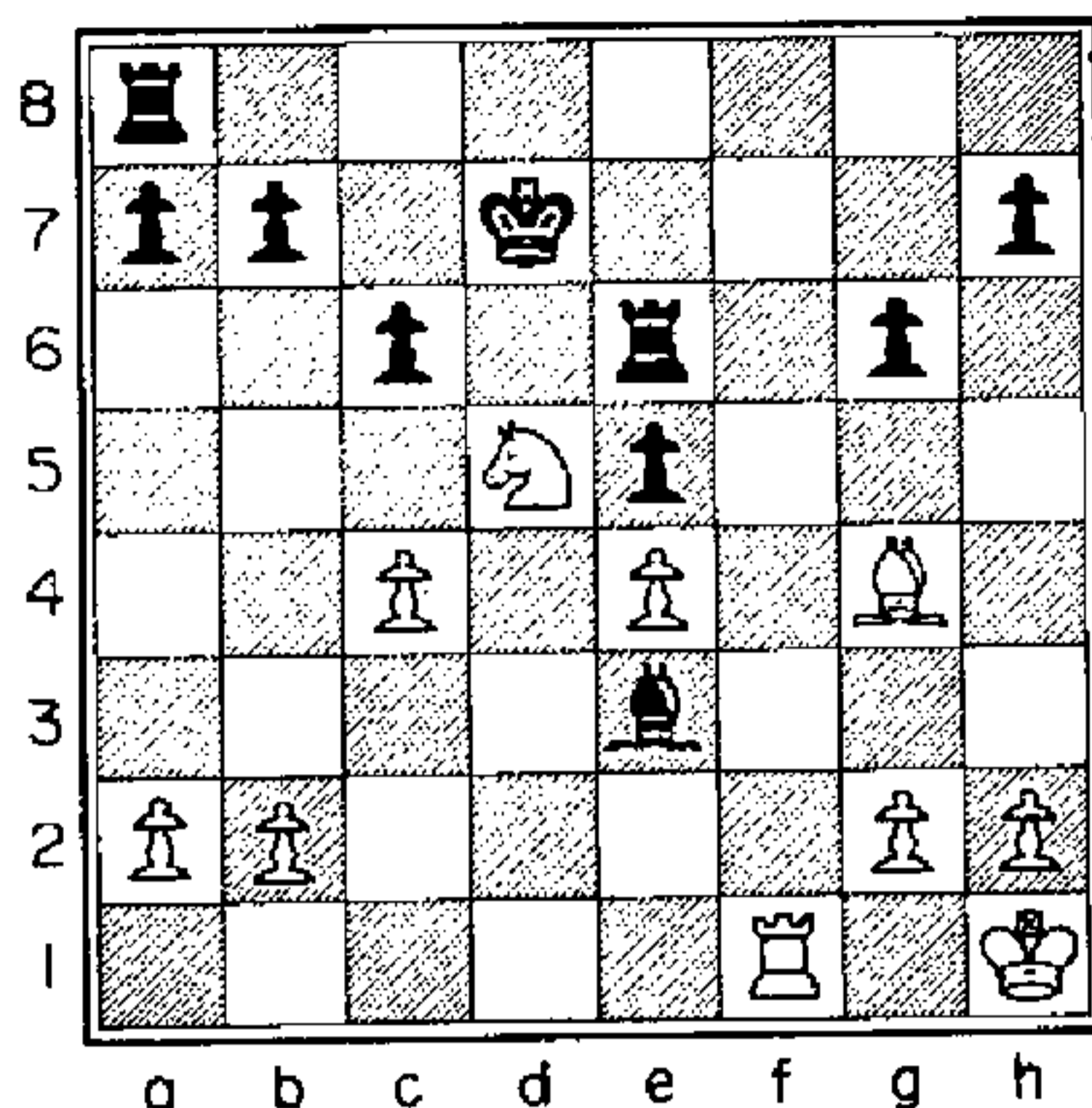
14 ...                    **c6?!**

It is desirable to safeguard d5, yet White now infiltrates via d6! Also troubling is 14 ...Nf7? because of 15 Rxf7! Bxf7 16 Bg4+ Kb8 17 Rd7 (17 ... Rf8 18 Bc5). Vaganian suggests 14 ... Ng4 15 Bc1 Bf8 as Black's best defense and also points out that after 16 Rd5! White remains with a considerable advantage.

15 **Rd6!**                    **Re8**  
 16 **Bxh6!**                **Bxh6**  
 17 **Rxe6**                 **Rxe6**  
 18 **Bg4**                    **Be3+**  
 19 **Kh1**                    **Kd7**  
 20 **Nd5!!**

*(See next diagram)*

The crowning jewel of White's opening play. The pesky knight must be captured and that will lead to gain of material for White. Superior is 20 Rf7+?! Kd6 22 Bxe6 Rxe6 23 Rxb7 (or 23 Rxh7) because



23 ... Rf8! gives Black powerful counterplay.

20 ...                    **cxd5**  
 21 **exd5?**

How to recapture — when each way looks good — is a common problem in practical play. Yet here the choice should not have been so difficult. The text leaves White with a rather impotent c-pawn, while transforming Black's e-pawn into a useful passed pawn. Therefore correct is 21 cxd5! with a clearly won position: 21 ... Kd6 (21 ... Ke7 22 Bxe6 Rf8? 23 d6+ ) 22 Bxe6 Re8 23 Rf7 Re7 24 Rf8, with White's extra pawn being a protected passed d-pawn. Moreover, White retains an over-all excellent position.

21 ...                    **Kd6**  
 22 **dxe6**

No more attractive is 22 Bxe6 because of 22 ... Kc5 23 b3 e4! and Black has a very active position.



22 ... h5  
 23 Bf3 Rf8!  
 24 Re1 Bd4  
 25 Bxb7

25 Bd5?! leads to nothing after  
 25 ... Bxb2.

25 ... Kxe6  
 26 Be4 g5?

Black presses his good luck too far. The g-pawn is of little importance here and Black should have grabbed at the opportunity to truncate White's queenside majority with 26 ... Bxb2. Then after 27 Bxg6 h4, Black's e-pawn would be at least equal to White's c-pawn while White's kingside majority would offer no real winning chances.

**27 b4!!**

White is able to immediately mobilize his queenside majority — something which Black, no doubt, overlooked.

27 ... Bc3  
 28 Rb1 Bxb4  
 29 g4! a5  
 30 a3!! Bxa3  
 31 Rb6+ Ke7  
 32 gxh5

In the previous moves White has executed a very fine concept: giving back the extra pawn in order to maximize his R + B activity and obtain an additional passed pawn in

the form of a far advanced h-pawn. Black is defenseless since he can neither hold White back nor get his own pawns going.

32 ... Bc5  
 33 Rb7+ Kf6  
 34 h6! a4  
 35 Rb5 Rc8  
 36 Ra5 a3  
 37 Ra6+! Ke7  
 38 h7 Kf7?!

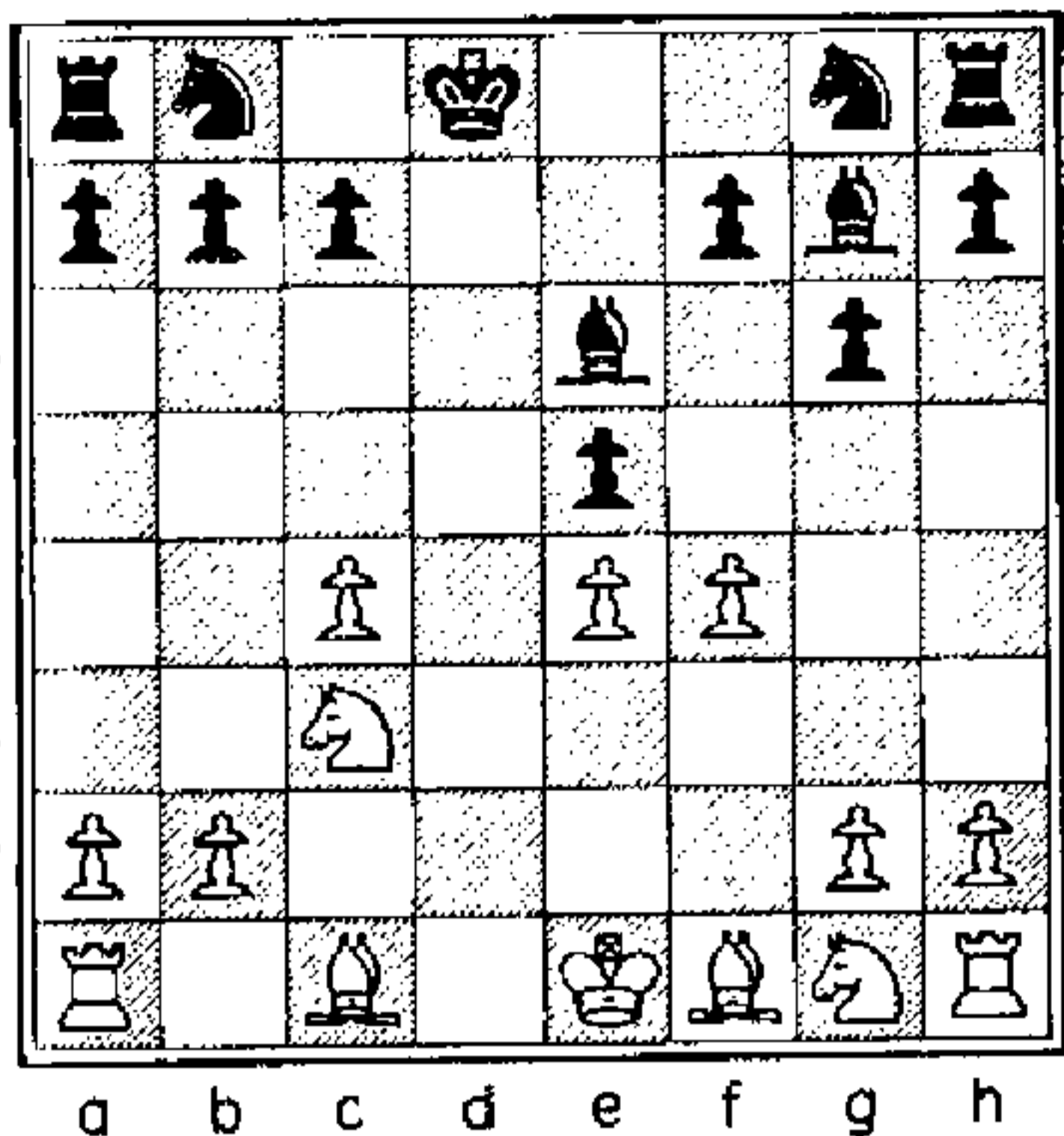
Leads to the immediate loss of the a-pawn. But even after the better 38 ... Rh8, White's win is assured. He plays 39 Kg2 and penetrates with his king where he desires.

39 Rc6! a2  
 40 Ra6 Kg7  
 41 Rxa2 Bd4  
 42 Kg2 Rf8  
 43 Ra6 g4  
 44 Rc6 Kh8  
 45 c5 Bf2  
 46 Rc7 Bh4  
 47 Ra7  
 Black  
 resigns

**7.33 Solid 7 ... Be6!:**  
 H. Kárner–T. Petrosian,  
 Sochi 1977

*(See next diagram)*

A sound and logical move. Black places the QB on a good central square and follows up with ... Nd7,



thereby completing the development of the queenside minor pieces. Black can then at his leisure play ... c6, taking away White's control of d5. Black is still passive but with careful defending his chances for eventual equality are bright.

**8 Nf3!**

Development is also the way to go here. Nevertheless, not bad is 8 fxe5, after which Black does best to enter the Uhlmann-Larsen game (considered under 7 ... Nc6 8 fxe5 Be6) via 8 ... Nc6. The game Uhlmann-Biyasas, Manila Interzonal 1976 showed that less accurate is 8 ... Nd7?!: 9 Bg5+! Kc8 10 Nf3 h6 11 Bh4 Nxe5 (11 ... g5?! 12 Bg3 g4 is not good because of 13 Nd4!). Note that this move would not be playable if Black's QN is on c6.) 12 0-0-0! g5 13 Bg3 Nxf3 (13 ... Nxc4?! is very dubious because of 14 Nd4!) 14 gxf3

c6 15 h4! g4 16 fxg4 Bxg4 17 Bh3 Bxh3 18 Rxh3 h5 19 e5! Nh6 20 Ne4 with very strong pressure for White.

**8 ... Nd7**  
**9 g3**

So that White, after ... exf4, always has the central gxf4 recapture. Harmless is 9 Ng5 because of 9 ... exf4! 10 Nxe6+ fxe6 11 Bxf4 Ne5, with the fine diagonal of Black's KB and the unassailable location of the e5 knight giving Black approximate equality.

A logical alternative, however, is the developmental 9 Be2. Two important examples with it are:

(1) Tarjan-Mestel, Hastings 1977-78: 9 ... h6 10 0-0 Ne7 11 Nd5 Re8?! 12 Nxe5 Nxe5 13 fxe5 Bxe5 14 Bxh6! Bxb2 15 Rad1 Kc8 16 Bf4! Nxd5 17 cxd5 Bd7 18 Bd3 b5 19 Bg5, with a big advantage for White (1:0 in 67).

(2) Quinteros-Larsen, Lone Pine 1980: 9 ... h6 10 g3 Ne7 11 Be3 Kc8 12 0-0-0 Re8 13 Rhf1 a5 14 Nh4 Bh3 15 Rf2 exf4 16 gxf4 a4 17 Bd4, with White's spatial and central superiority giving him some edge (½ in 51).

In each case Black's play can be improved in two respects: he should play an early ... c6 and delay the immediate 9 ... h6.

**9 ... h6**

But now in order since White was threatening 10 Ng5 (10 ... exf4 11 gxf4! and Black's knight doesn't have e5).

**10 Be3**                    **c6!**  
**11 Bd3**                    **Bh3!**

White threatened 12 f5 winning a piece.

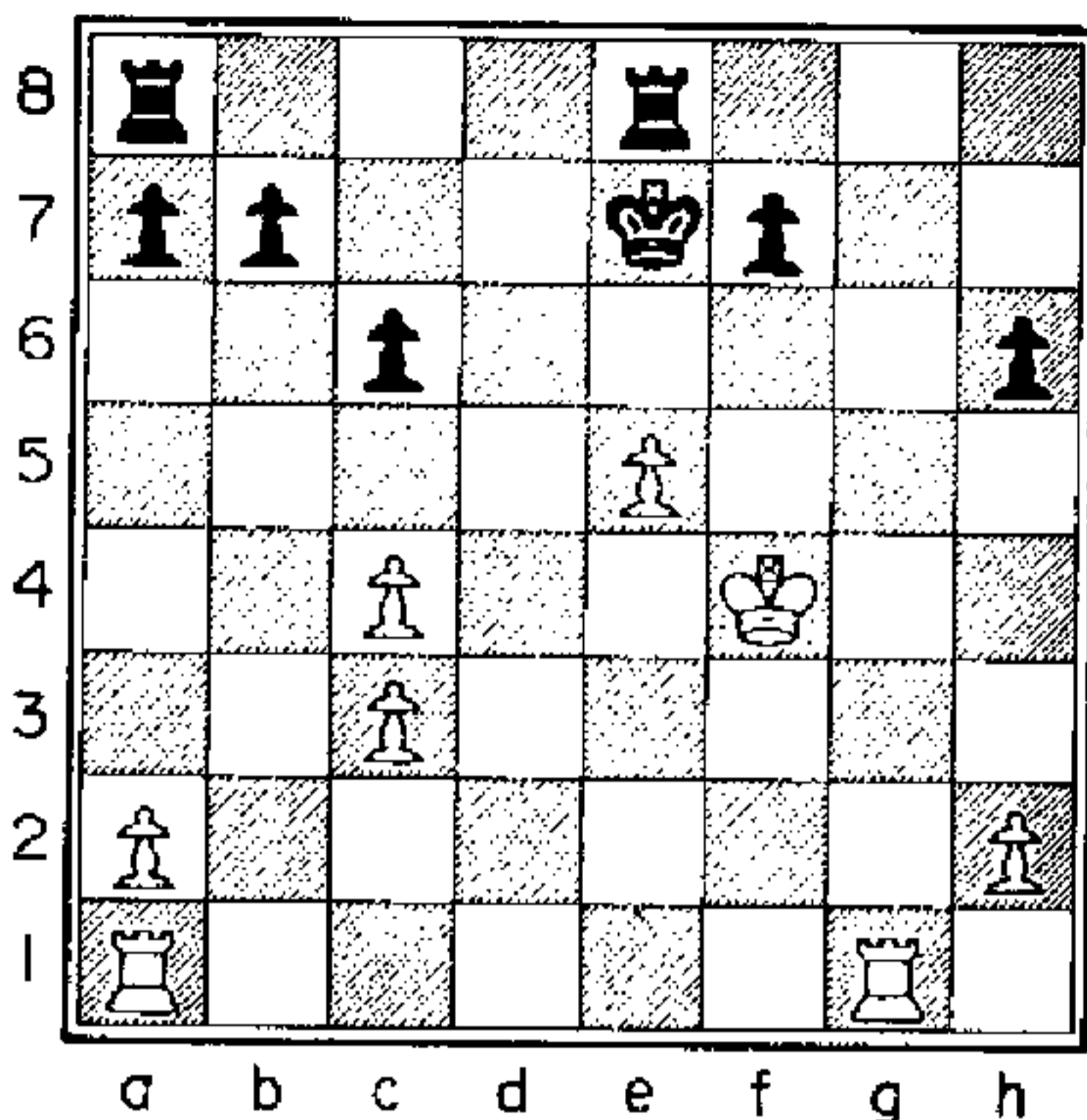
**12 Bf1**                    **Bg4**

White perhaps was inviting his famous opponent to 12 ... Be6 13 Bd3 Bh3 etc. But Petrosian wants more.

**13 Be2**                    **exf4!?**  
**14 gxf4**                    **Bxc3 +!**  
**15 bxc3**                    **Ngf6**

Black's moves 13–14 carried out a dynamic plan: to ruin White's queenside pawn formation at the cost of the potentially valuable KB. The resulting position is unclear but probably of equal chances. Black's next order of business consists in challenging White's central superiority.

**16 Nd2**                    **Re8**  
**17 e5**                      **g5!**  
**18 Ne4!**                    **Bxe2**  
**19 Nxf6**                    **Nxf6**  
**20 Kxe2**                    **Ng4**  
**21 Rhg1**                    **Nxe3**  
**22 Kxe3**                    **gxf4 +**  
**23 Kxf4**                    **Ke7**



The previous creative play has led to a double rook endgame with material and strategically dynamic equality.

**24 Rad1?!**

Dynamic equality does not mean that such positions are easy to play or that a draw is inevitable. Here White errs already on the first move. Petrosian recommends 24 Rab1! b6 25 c5! as a way of undoubling the pawns and retaining equality.

**24 ...**                    **Rg8!**  
**25 Rg3**                    **Rxg3!**  
**26 hxg3**                    **h5!**

A very fine concept to activate the rook by 27 ... Rg8 and 28 ... Rg4. White has no time for 27 Rh1 because of 27 ... Rd8! and if then 28 Ke3, 28 ... Rg8!. Black now has the advantage. Therefore White correctly goes for queenside counterplay.

27 Rb1!           Ke6!  
 28 Rxb7           Rg8!  
 29 Rb4

Or 29 Rxa7 Rg4+ and Black will recover both sacrificed pawns, with at least some advantage.

29 ...           Rg4+  
 30 Kf3           c5  
 31 Ra4           a5!  
 32 Rxa5           Rxc4  
 33 Ra3?

The key principle of successful rook endgame play is to keep your rook active! Therefore correct is 33 Ra7! and White is just a bit worse.

33 ...           Kxe5  
 34 Rb3           Ra4?

By rushing things Black throws away the excellent winning chances that were to be had after 34 ... f5, followed by 35 ... Ra4.

35 Rb7!

Belatedly — but not too late — White correctly recognizes the virtues of the active rook. Though Black remains better, White can now draw.

35 ...           Rxa2  
 36 Rxf7           Rc2  
 37 Rh7           Rxc3+  
 38 Kg2           Rc2+  
 39 Kh3           c4

40 Rxh5+       Kd4  
 41 Rh8           Re2  
 42 Rd8+       Ke3  
 43 Re8+       Kd2  
 44 Rd8+       Kc2  
 45 g4           c3  
 46 Kh4!

To draw White will have to sacrifice his rook for Black's pawn and then try to queen his pawn. For this the assistance of his king is required and White makes sure that his king doesn't get cut off from the pawn.

46 ...           Re4  
 47 Kh5!       Kb3  
 48 Rd1!       c2  
 49 Rc1       Kb2  
 50 Rxc2+     Kxc2  
 51 g5       Re1  
 52 g6       Rg1  
 53 Kh6     Kd3  
 54 g7       Ke4  
 55 Kh7     Kf5  
 56 g8 = Q   Rxc8  
 57 Kxc8.  
 Draw.

In summary, after 7 Be3 or 7 Bg5+ Black should not have too many difficulties. However, the active 7 f4! does give White excellent chances for a normal type of opening advantage. Then both 7 ... Nd7 and 7 ... Nc6 are somewhat dubious, but the solid 7 ... Be6 should allow eventual equality.

# 8

## King's Indian Defense: Normal Variation

1 d4	Nf6
2 c4	g6
3 Nc3	Bg7
4 e4	d6
5 Nf3	0-0
6 Be2	

The so-called Normal Variation is a sound and straightforward method against the King's Indian. White establishes a good measure of central superiority and then develops his kingside in a simple healthy way. The approach is exactly the same as against the Pirc Defense (Chapter 6), but as a result of having played c4, White is one move behind with the development of his kingside.

6 ... e5

Because White's king is still in the center, Black can immediately execute this thematic advance, challenging White's center. The usual responses are Petrosian's 7 d5

and 7 0-0 Nc6 8 d5 Ne7, which brings about the Mar del Plata Variation. Both of these lead to very complicated, blockaded positions where White tries to capitalize on his spatial advantage on the queenside and Black starts attacking on the kingside.

7 dxe5!

This rather obvious capture is in my opinion no weaker than the two complicated alternatives and has the practical advantage of leading to positions which are both easier to understand and allow Black less opportunities for counterplay. There is another practical advantage of this variation. It is less common and because of its nature also gets much less theoretical coverage in the leading chess publications. This means that a well prepared White will tend to know more about it than Black.

7 ... dxe5  
8 Qxd8 Rxd8

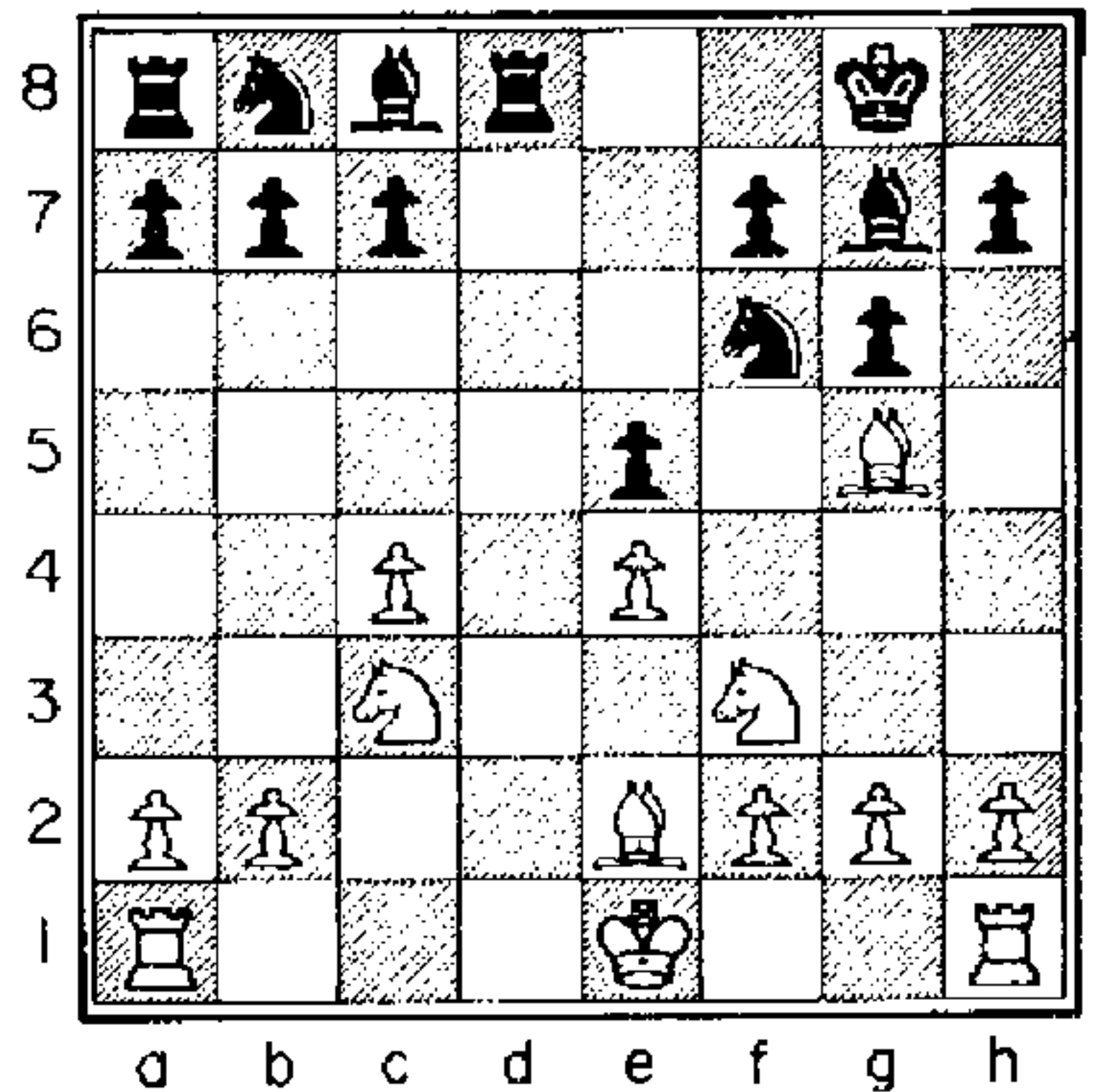
One thing that this variation does not do is win a pawn. Thus 9 Nxe5?! Nxe4 10 Nxe4 Bxe5 11 0-0 Nc6 12 Re1 Kg7 13 a3 Bf5 14 Ng3 Be6 15 Bf1 a5 even yields the more actively placed Black pieces a slight advantage, as already demonstrated in Sanchez-Geller, Stockholm Interzonal 1952. Also harmless is 9 Nd5, with Black having the choice between 9 ... Rd7!? and 9 ... Nxd5 10 cxd5 c6 11 Bc4 b5 12 Bb3 Bb7 13 Bg5 Rdc8! with equality in Botov-Smyslov, Hastings 1962-63.

A cursory evaluation of the position after Black's 8th move could give the impression that everything is fine for Black. His kingside development is complete, he has castled and the KR seems to control the open d-file. Moreover, White's d4 square is permanently weakened whereas Black can guard d5 with ... c6. All that White has developed are three minor pieces and to rather normal squares. Nevertheless, after his next move White has excellent chances of retaining his characteristic opening advantage.

**9 Bg5!**

*(See next diagram)*

This active developing move immediately shows up the negative side of Black's development. The KN is caught in an unpleasant pin



and White threatens both 10 Bxf6 Bxf6 11 Nd5 and 10 Nd5, winning material in each case. Moreover, Black's e-pawn is unprotected and in some danger of going lost.

When the King's Indian got its start, theoreticians dismissed White's chances in this position out of hand. Even now the prevailing theoretical evaluation is that this method is innocuous and that Black should have no difficulties in equalizing. Things are not that simple, however. White's threats are real and Black must defend extremely accurately to achieve and hold the balance. As a matter of fact, Black's immediate choices are rather limited. Thus 9 ... h6? is refuted by 10 Bxf6 Bxf6 11 Nd5 and the same fate awaits 9 ... Nc6? and 9 ... Bg4?. The four satisfactory plans are the standard 9 ... Re8, the newer 9 ... Na6 and 9 ... Nbd7, and the "newest" 9 ... c6. These

will be discussed in conjunction with illustrative games.

## 8.1 THE STANDARD

### 9 ... Re8

This move has two clear pluses: the e-pawn is protected and the pin on the knight removed. Thus Black has no need to fear 10 Bxf6 Bxf6 11 Nd5 as 11 ... Bd8 protects everything. Yet the move also has noticeable demerits: control of the important d-file is handed over to White and nothing is done to further development.

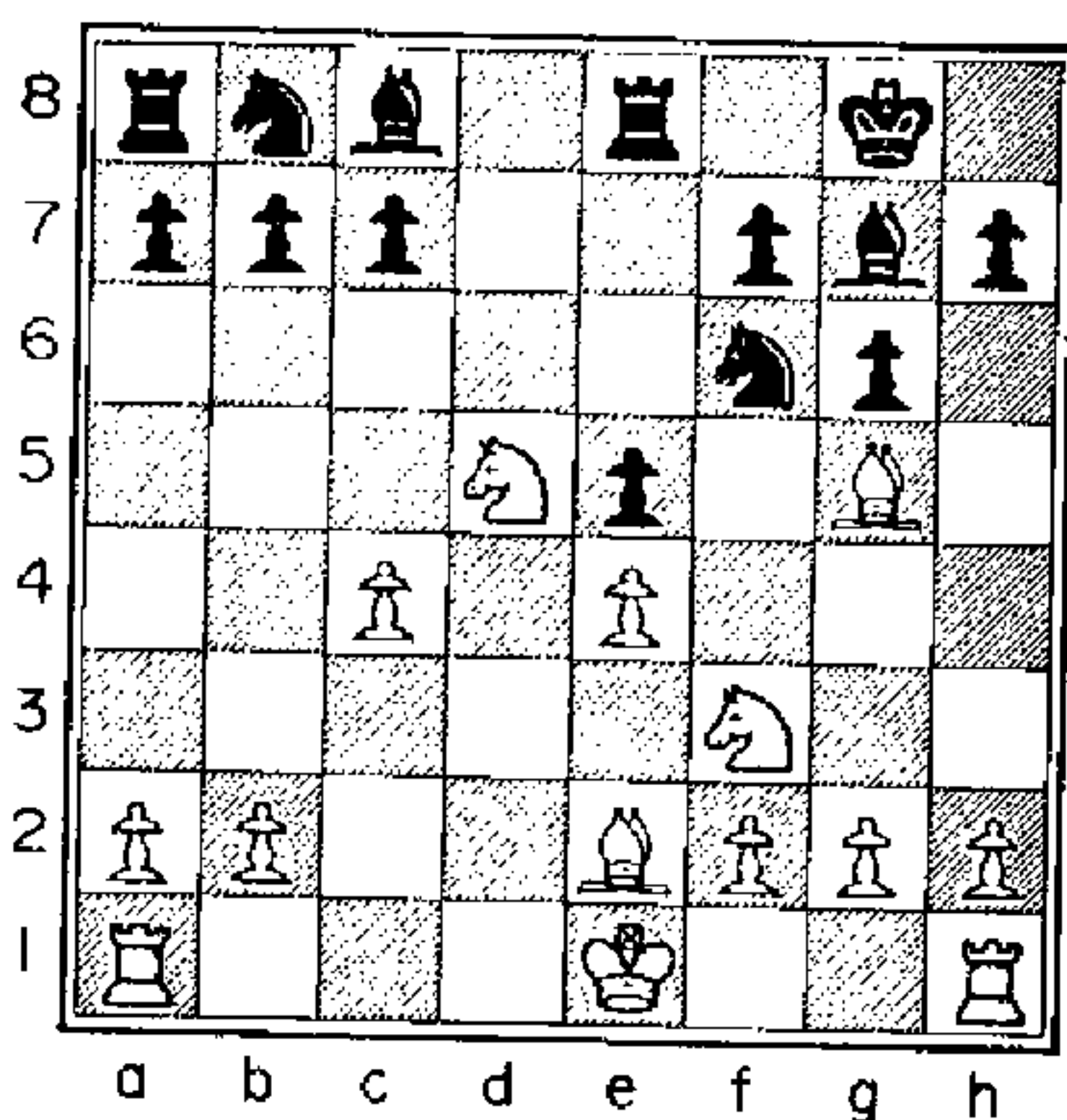
Nevertheless, Black's position is quite sound and unless White tries to take immediate advantage of his edge in development his prospects for an initiative will disappear. Too slow is 10 h3 c6 11 0-0-0 since White is playing the 10 0-0-0 line a tempo down and after 11 ... Na6 12 Be3 Bf8 13 Nd2 Nc5 14 g3 a5 Black had full equality in Kozlovskaya-Chiburdanidze, USSR 1976. Also without danger is 10 Rd1, even though White does head immediately for the d-file. But he remains with the handicap of the uncastled king in a position where developmental factors are of major significance. A good example of typical play is 10 ... h6 (Or 10 ... Na6 11 0-0 Nc5 12 Nd5 Nxd5 13 exd5 Na4 14 Rd2 Bd7 with equality in Shamkovich-Stein, USSR 1969.) 11 Bxf6 Bxf6 12 Nd5 Bd8 13 Nxe5!

Rxe5 14 Nb6 axb6! 15 Rxd8+ Kg7 16 Rxc8 Rxa2! 17 Rxb8 Rxe4 (threatening 18 ... Ra1+) 18 Rd8 Rxb2 19 Rd2 Rb1+ 20 Rd1 Rb2, draw by repetition of moves, Kochiev-Dvoretzky, 1976 USSR Championship (1st league), Minsk.

The two active plans to make Black sweat are 10 Nd5! and 10 0-0-0!

### 8.11 10 Nd5!:

U. Andersson-R. Byrne,  
Sao Paulo 1979



Formerly thought to be nothing but a safe drawing method, now it is considered a strategically logical way of aiming for the win. White strives for a relatively clear position wherein he will attempt to exploit his more active piece placement and superior dark square bishop.

10 ...                      Nxd5  
 11 cxd5                    c6!

A dual purpose move, both challenging White's strong d-pawn and removing itself from a potential attack by White's Rc1.

**12 Bc4 cxd5**

The usual move. In this position little explored is 12 ... b5!?, as played in Schmidt-Uhlmann, Decin 1979. After 13 Bb3 Bb7 14 Rc1 Rc8 15 Be3 a5! White could retain some initiative with 16 Ng5! a4 17 dxc6.

**13 Bxd5 Nd7**

The fact that Black must develop his knight is obvious enough, but to where? The text is well regarded by theory, as is 13 ... Nc6. Black then gets sufficient play to equalize after 14 Bxc6 bxc6 15 0-0 Be6 (Or 15 ... h6 16 Be3 Be6 17 Rfe1 Reb8, as in Panno-Browne, Madrid 1973) 16 Rfc1 Reb8 17 b3 a5! 18 Rxc6 a4. The routine 14 0-0 Be6 15 Bxe6 Rxe6 also allowed Black to equalize in Flohr-Bronstein, Budapest Candidates 1950. However, White retains excellent prospects for an advantage with the centralizing 14 Ke2!:

(a) **14 ... Be6:** 15 Bxe6 Rxe6 16 Rhd1 Bf8 17 Rd7 f6 18 Be3 Re7 19 Rdd1! Kf7 20 Rac 1, Knezevic-Ungureanu, Timisoara 1979. The well placed rooks and the superior bishop give White a slight, yet pleasant, advantage.

(b) **14 ... Bg4:** Black was O.K.

after 15 Be3 Nd4 + 16 Bxd4 exd4 17 Rac1 Rac8 18 Kd3 Bxf3 19 gxf3 Bh6 20 Rc4 Rxc4 21 Bxc4 Re7 22 Re1 Bg7 23 h3 Be5, draw agreed in Dzindzihashvili-Keene, New York 1980. However, a number of improvements come into view for White, starting with 15 Rfc1!.

An apparently new knight move for Black is 13 ... Na6!?, as played in Dzindzihashvili-Biyiasas, New York State Championship 1980. After 14 Rc1?! Nb4! 15 Bc4 Be6 16 a3 Na2! Black had at least equality. Here too 14 Ke2! is the right plan and should keep some advantage. After 14 ... Nc7 15 Bb3 Be6?! (15 ... Ne6!? 16 Rhd1 b6!? must be explored.) 16 Rhd1! Bxb3 17 axb3 Ne6 18 Be3 Nd4 + 19 Bxd4 exd4 20 Kd3 White was clearly better in Andersson-Biyiasas, Hastings 1979-80. His knight is superior to Black's bishop, Black's d-pawn is vulnerable and White has the centralized king.

**14 Nd2!**

Not only getting ready to bring the knight to greener pastures on the queenside, but also by protecting the e-pawn White takes the sting out of Black's threatened ... Nf6. After 14 Rc1 h6! 15 Be3 Nf6! 16 Bb3 Nxe4 17 Rc7 Be6 18 Bxe6 Rxe6 19 Rxb7 Ra6 20 a3 Nd6 21 Rb4 Rc6 22 0-0 f5 Black had full equality in Teschner-Fischer,



Stockholm Interzonal 1962 and the game ended a draw on move 41.

**14 ... Nb6?**

From the standpoint of strategic considerations this must be called the losing move. Black remains without counterplay and is unable to neutralize White's various advantages. Mandatory is the active 14 ... Nc5! after which the following examples are known:

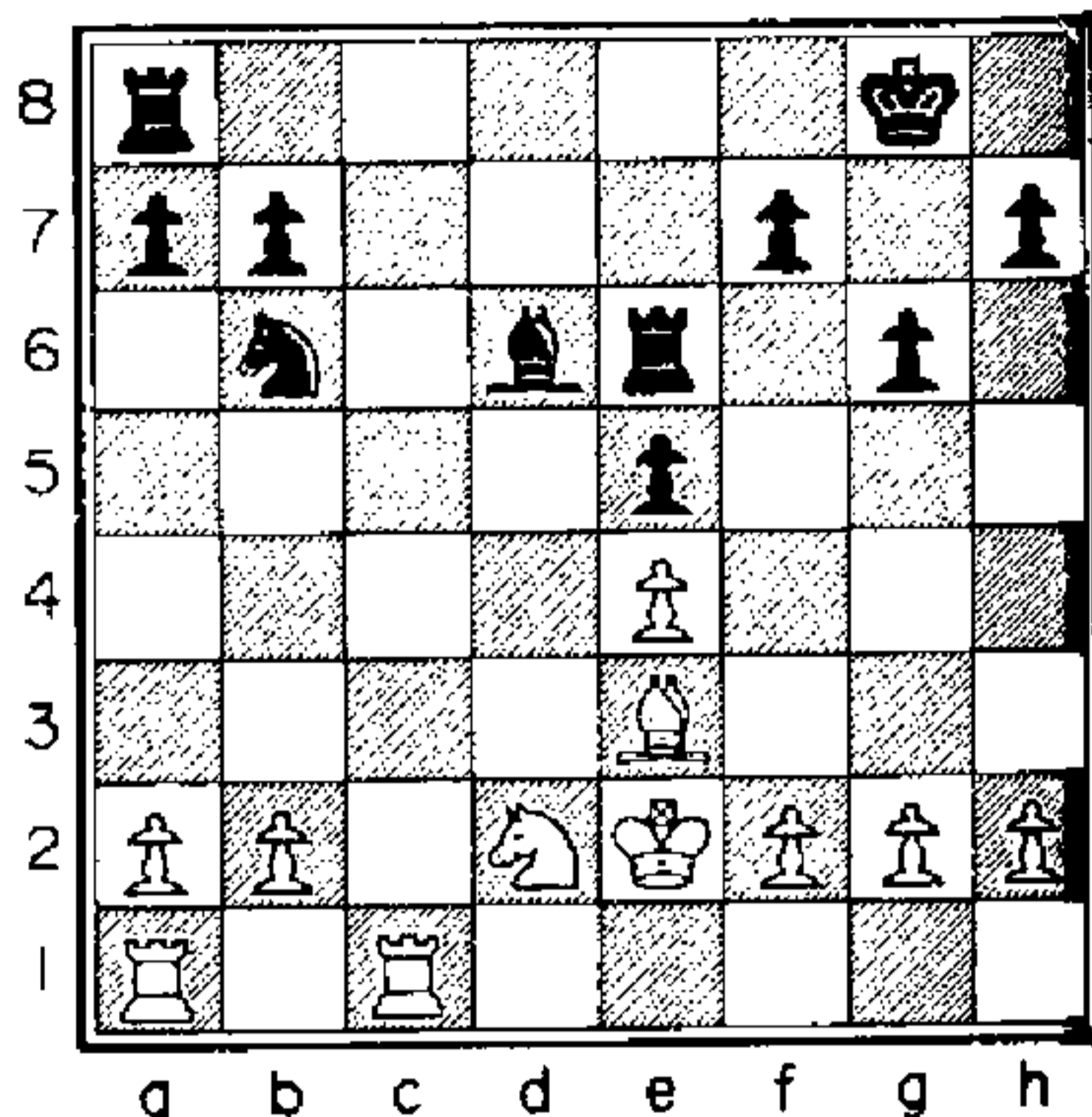
(a) 15 0-0-0 Ne6 16 Be3 Nf4 17 Bxf4 exf4, with sufficient counterchances against White's king position for equality, Andersson-Panno, Palma de Mallorca 1972.

(b) 15 Be3 Nd3+ 16 Ke2 Nf4+ 17 Bxf4 exf4 18 Kf3 Be6 19 Nc4 Bxd5 20 exd5 Red8, Nikolac-Kavalek, Wijk aan Zee 1977. Black eventually created good attacking chances against White's king and even went on to win. Still it seems to me that White can search for improvements in this line, as well as explore 15 Nc4!?. White should be able to retain some advantage thereby.

**15 Bb3 Be6**  
**16 Ke2!**

The modern way of handling such a position. Since we are now in an endgame, White's centralized king will be placed much more usefully than Black's castled king.

**16 ... Bf8**  
**17 Rhc1 Bd6**  
**18 Bxe6 Rxe6**  
**19 Be3!**



White here has the advantage of control of the c-file and the superior bishop, which leads to strong pressure against Black's queenside. Moreover, White has the centralized king. All this means that Black has immense practical difficulties in holding this apparently almost equal position. The fact that a world class GM can't hold it is full testament to Black's inherent problems. It is not so clear even to suggest where Black can play better: perhaps now 19 ... Rc8 20 Rxc8 Nxc8 21 Rcl Re8! leads to a more comfortable defensive set-up.

**19 ... Kf8**  
**20 Rc3! Rc8**  
**21 Rac1 Rxc3**  
**22 Rxc3 Ke8**  
**23 g4!**

Though the main pressure will come on the queenside, White makes sure that he both has chances on the kingside himself while preventing Black's ... f5.

- |                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| <b>23 ...</b>  | <b>f6</b>  |
| <b>24 Rb3</b>  | <b>Bc7</b> |
| <b>25 a4!</b>  | <b>Re7</b> |
| <b>26 a5</b>   | <b>Nc8</b> |
| <b>27 Nc4!</b> | <b>Bd8</b> |
| <b>28 Rb5</b>  | <b>Rc7</b> |
| <b>29 b3</b>   | <b>a6</b>  |
| <b>30 Rd5</b>  |            |

Black has prevented any immediate trouble on the queenside, but at the cost of giving White full control of the chessboard. Despite its ugly appearance, necessary now is 30 ... g5!, since White's next move simply must be prevented.

- |                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| <b>30 ...</b>   | <b>Rd7?!</b> |
| <b>31 g5!</b>   | <b>Rxd5</b>  |
| <b>32 exd5</b>  | <b>fxg5</b>  |
| <b>33 Kd3!</b>  | <b>g4</b>    |
| <b>34 Ke4</b>   | <b>Be7</b>   |
| <b>35 Nxe5</b>  | <b>Bb4</b>   |
| <b>36 Nxg4!</b> |              |

The passed d-pawn, assisted by the active king, is a winning advantage.

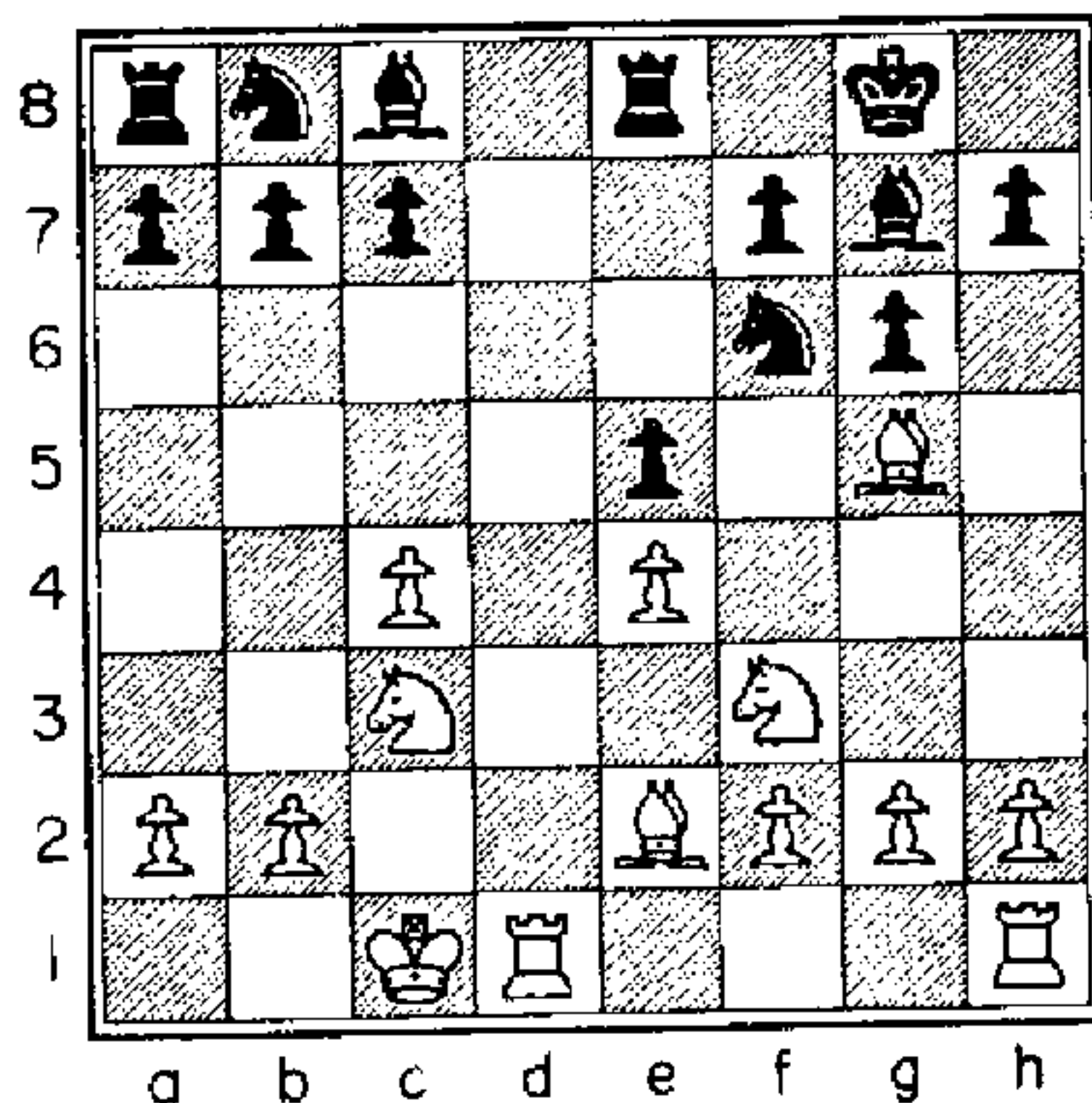
- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| <b>36 ...</b>  | <b>Bxa5</b> |
| <b>37 Ke5!</b> | <b>Ke7</b>  |
| <b>38 Bc5+</b> | <b>Kf7</b>  |
| <b>39 d6</b>   | <b>Nb6</b>  |
| <b>40 Bxb6</b> |             |

Or 40 Nh6 + Kg7 41 Be3!, followed by 42 Ke6 — as pointed out by Andersson after the game.

- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| <b>40 ...</b>  | <b>Bxb6</b> |
| <b>41 Kd5</b>  | <b>Bd8</b>  |
| <b>42 Ne5+</b> |             |
| <b>Black</b>   |             |
| <b>resigns</b> |             |

After 42 ... Kf6 43 Nd7+ Kf7 44 Nc5 White wins easily.

8.12 10 0-0-0!  
P. Benko-D. Kopec,  
World Open, New York 1975



What a difference 1 1/2 moves make! If after Black's 8th move it was possible to think that Black is ahead in development, then now it is quite clear that it is all White's. He controls the d-file, his king is secure and three of his minor pieces are actively placed. Black here has the choice of one losing move, one

inferior move and a number of reasonable ones:

(a) **10 ... Nbd7?** = **Losing!**: 11 Nb5! c6 12 Nc7 Rb8 13 Nxe8 and White easily realized his material advantage in Pribyl–Ryc, Czechoslovakia 1976.

(b) **10 ... Bg4?!** = **Inferior**: see the game continuation.

(c) **10 ... h6**, making the bishop declare its intentions:

(i) 11 Bh4 Na6 12 Nd2 c6 13 f3 Nh5 14 Bf2 Nf4 15 Bf1 Bf8 with approximately equality in Pomar–Donner, Madrid 1960.

(ii) 11 Be3! c6 (11 ... Ng4?! 12 Nd5 Na6 13 c5! is good for White) 12 Ne1! Be6, Nei–Tal, Tallin 1973 and now instead of the unnecessary 13 f3, White could immediately mobilize his forces with 13 Nc2!, 14 Rd2!, 15 Rhd1 and obtain a slight edge.

(d) **10 ... Nc6**, aiming for d4:

(i) 11 Nd5 Nxd5 12 cxd5 Nd4 13 Nxd4 exd4 14 Bd3 Bd7 15 Kb1 c5 16 dxc6 bxc6, with a slight edge to White after 17 Rc1 Bf8, Petursson–Sahovic, Lone Pine 1978, as well as after 17 Bf4 Be5 18 Bxe5, McDonald–Ross–Goodman, Brighton 1979.

(ii) 11 h3 Be6 12 Be3 a6 13 Ng5 Nd4! 14 Bd3 Rad8 15 Nxe6 and now if instead of ruining his pawn formation with 15 ... fxe6? (Knezevic–Biel, Olomouc 1975), Black simply plays 15 ... Rxe6, he has approximate equality.

(e) **10 ... Na6**, directly protecting c7 and hoping to get to c5: 11 Ne1! c6 12 Nc2 Be6?! (The correct move order is 12 ... Nc5! 13 f3 a5 and if 14 Be3, 14 ... Bf8) and now instead of 13 f3, allowing Black to equalize with 13 ... Nd7!, Malich–Vogt, East Germany 1975, White can grab a significant space advantage on the queenside with 13 b4! Nd7 14 a3! and if 14 ... Nb6, then simply 15 Ne3 holds all territory.

(f) **10 ... Ng4!?**, trying to buy time for protection of d5 and e5 by means of attacking the f-pawn:

(g) **10 ... c6!?** — see 9 ... c6 10 Nxe5 Re8 11 0–0–0.

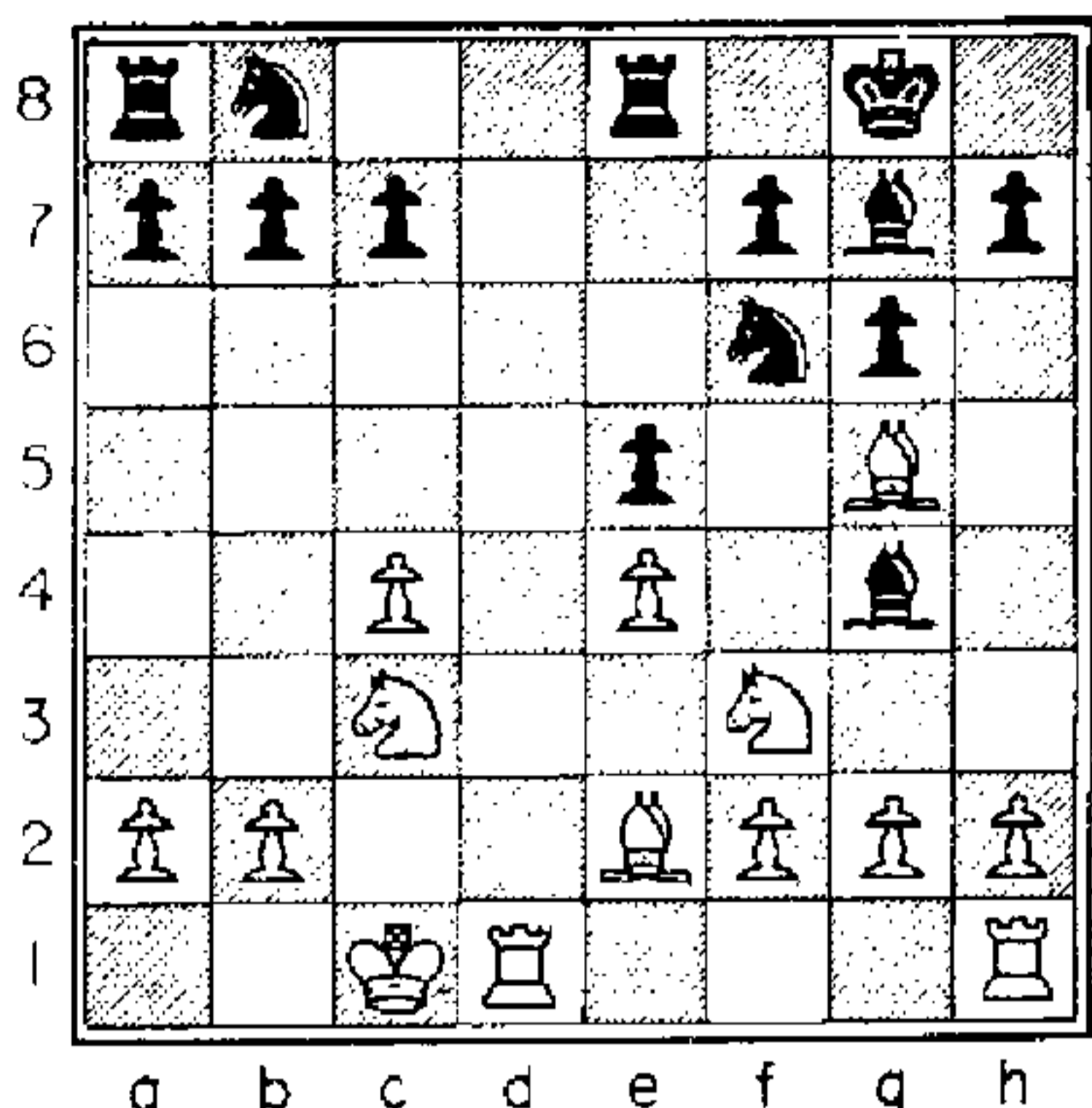
(i) 11 Nd5!? Na6 12 Bh4 c6 13 Ne7+ Kf8 14 Nxc8 Raxc8 15 Rd6 Nh6 with White a bit better, but Black's weakness-free position should lead to eventual equality.

(ii) 11 Bh4 c6 12 Ne1 Na6 13 Nc2 h5 14 h3 Nf6 15 Rd6 Nh7 16 Rhd1 Be6 17 Rd8 Rfxd8 18 Bxd8 Bf8 19 Bh4 f6 20 f3 Be7 21 Bf2 Nf8 22 a3 Bf7 23 b4 Nc7 24 Kb2, draw agreed in Benko–Vukcevic, 1975 USA Championship. White's advantage, if any, is too minute to do anything with.

The game continuation allows White an enduring initiative.

**10 ... Bg4?!**

*(See next diagram)*



I have selected the text move for the illustrative game because it is common, has a good theoretical reputation (e.g. ECO IV says that it equalizes) — and because this game demonstrates so well White's prospects in the 7 dxe5 variation. However, 10 ... Bg4 seems of dubious strategic merit to me. Black's "good" bishop is the QB, so why exchange it off for White's KN or the inferior KB?

**11 Nd5!**

Ensuring White a clear central superiority and leaving Black's QB as an "uninterested" spectator. Pointless is 11 h3?! Bxf3 12 Bxf3 Nc6! 13 Nb5 as after 13 ... Re7! 14 Rd2 a6 15 Nc3 Ree8! 16 Nd5 Nxd5 17 Rxd5 Nd4! White has been chased back and Black's QN has been able to come forward, Pribyl-Kubicek, 1974 Czechoslovakian Championship. At best White has equality.

**11 ... Nxd5**

**12 cxd5 f5**

Black has no satisfactory way of obtaining full equality. After 12 ... Nd7 13 h3 Bxf3 14 gxf3! a6 15 Kb1 Bf8 16 Rc1 Bd6 17 Rc2, White has the two bishops and potential play both on the queenside and on the kingside, Ritov-Perasinov, Tallin 1975. Or 12 ... h6 13 Be3 Nd7 14 h3 Bxf3 15 gxf3! Bf8 16 Kb1 Kg7 17 Bb5! Red8 18 f4! and White is pressing along all fronts, Ritov-Kotkov, Kiev 1967.

**13 Ng1!**

Of course. White's e4-d5 pawn complex locks in his KB and thus exchanging it for Black's light square bishop is in White's strategic interest.

**13 ... Bxe2**  
**14 Nxe2 Nd7**  
**15 Nc3**

A good steady continuation. For winning purposes, though, White will feel the lack of open lines. Worth considering therefore is 15 exf5!? gxf5 16 Ng3 with which White was successful in Ritov-Gevorkian, Kiev 1963. After the text move it is safe to say that we have definitely reached the endgame phase: more exchanges have taken place, both kings are safe and developmental factors no longer exist. It's time for strategic maneuvering.

**15 ... Bf8**  
**16 Kb1 a6**

17 Rc1            Bd6  
18 Rc2            Kg7  
19 f3              b5?!

The previous moves were easy to understand. White took command of the half-open c-file while Black hurried to protect his c-pawn. However, Black's last move is an unmotivated weakening of the queenside. A more logical approach is 19 ... f4, followed by 20 ... h6 and 21 ... g5, thereby creating some play on the kingside.

20 Rhc1           Rf8  
21 Be3            Nf6  
22 Bg5            Nd7  
23 Nd1            Rf7  
24 Nf2            h6  
25 Be3            Nf6  
26 Rc6            fxe4  
27 fxe4            g5  
28 R1c2           a5  
29 Kc1            Nd7?!

White thematically brings his king towards the center where it can help guard various squares and prevent the incursion of Black's rook. As Benko has pointed out, Black's king should also head for the center and particularly the good defensive post d7. The text just brings the knight to an inferior location.

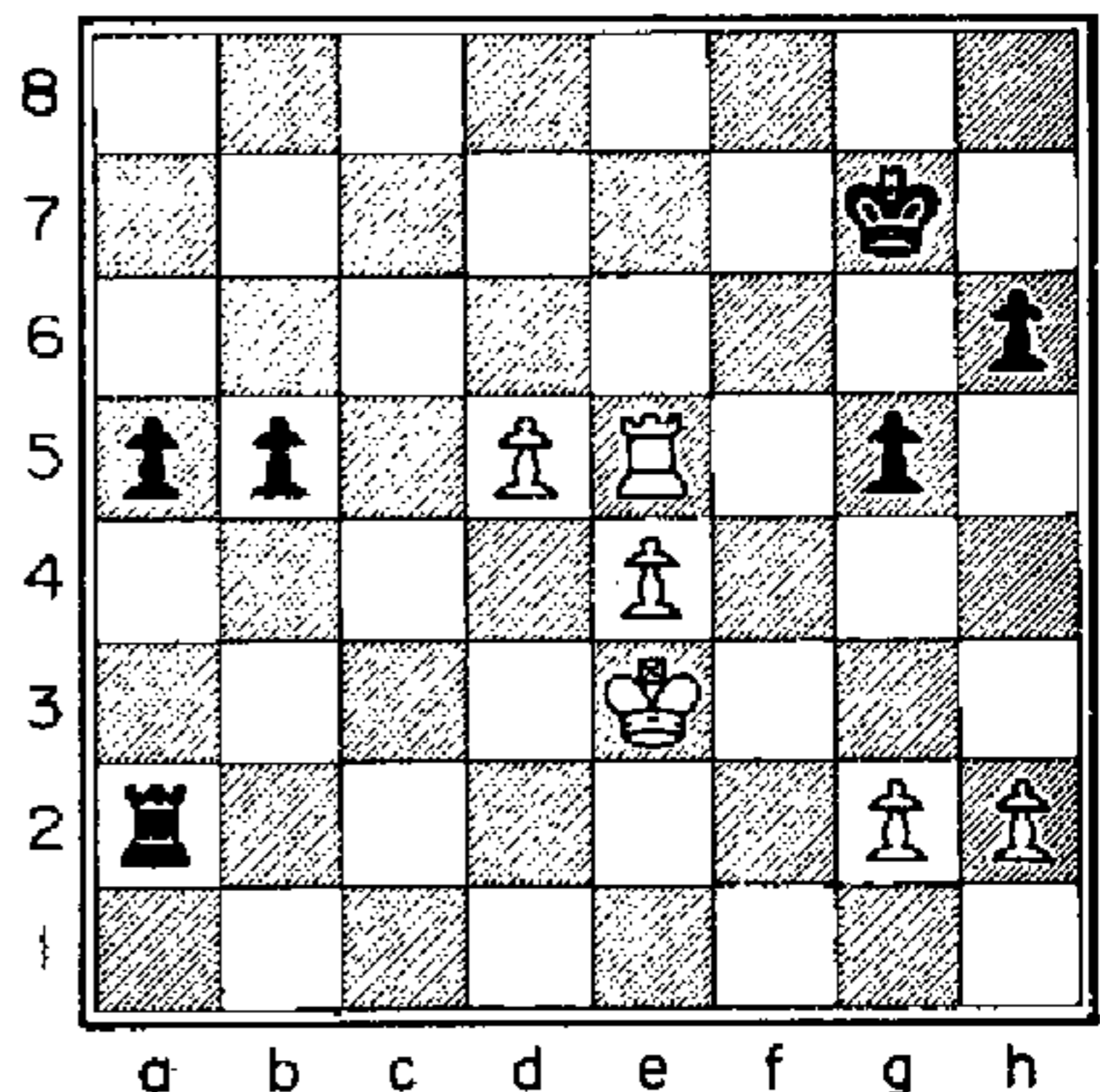
30 Kd1!           Nb8  
31 R6c3           Na6  
32 Re2            Raf8  
33 Rc1            Rc8  
34 Nd3            Nb4?!

A constructive plan is difficult to suggest, yet exchanging knights just serves to emphasize the superiority of White's bishop.

35 Nxb4           Bxb4  
36 Rf2!           Rcf8  
37 Rxf7+          Rxf7  
38 Ke2            Bd6  
39 Rc6            Rf8  
40 Bc5?!

Up to here White has played perfectly but this careless move gives Black's rook access to f4 and undeserved counterchances. As Benko points out, after 40 g3! and only then 41 Bc5 or 41 Bb6, Black would be doomed to a slow death.

40 ...            Rf4!  
41 Ke3            Rf1!  
42 Bxd6           cxd6  
43 Rxd6           Re1+  
44 Kd3            Rd1+!  
45 Ke2            Rb1  
46 Re6            Rxb2+  
47 Ke3!           Rxa2  
48 Rxe5



In the recent past both active rooks gobbled up pawns. Black now has two logical approaches:

(a) 48 ... b4, which looks good (passed pawns must be pushed!) but fails, according to the following analysis by Benko: 49 d6! Ra3+ (40) Kd4 Ra1 51 Re7+ Kf6 (51) ... Kg6 allows the decisive (52) Ke5!.) 52 e5+ Kf5 53 d7 Rd1+ (53) ... Rc1 54 Rf7+ Ke6 55 d8=N (mate!) 54 Kc4 Rc1+ 55 Kb5 Rd1 (56) Ka4!, followed by 57 e6 and (58) Re8.

(b) 48 ... Ra1! to immediately get the rook behind the d-pawn. This gives Black good drawing chances after 49 d6 Rd1! 50 Rxb5 Rxd6 (51) Rxa5 Rb6.

**48 ... Kf6??**

By handing White two tempos on a silver platter Black ensures his loss.

**49 Re6+ Kf7**  
**50 Rb6**

Rooks belong *behind* passed pawns!

**50 ... b4**  
**51 e5 Ra1**  
**52 Rb7+ Ke8?!**

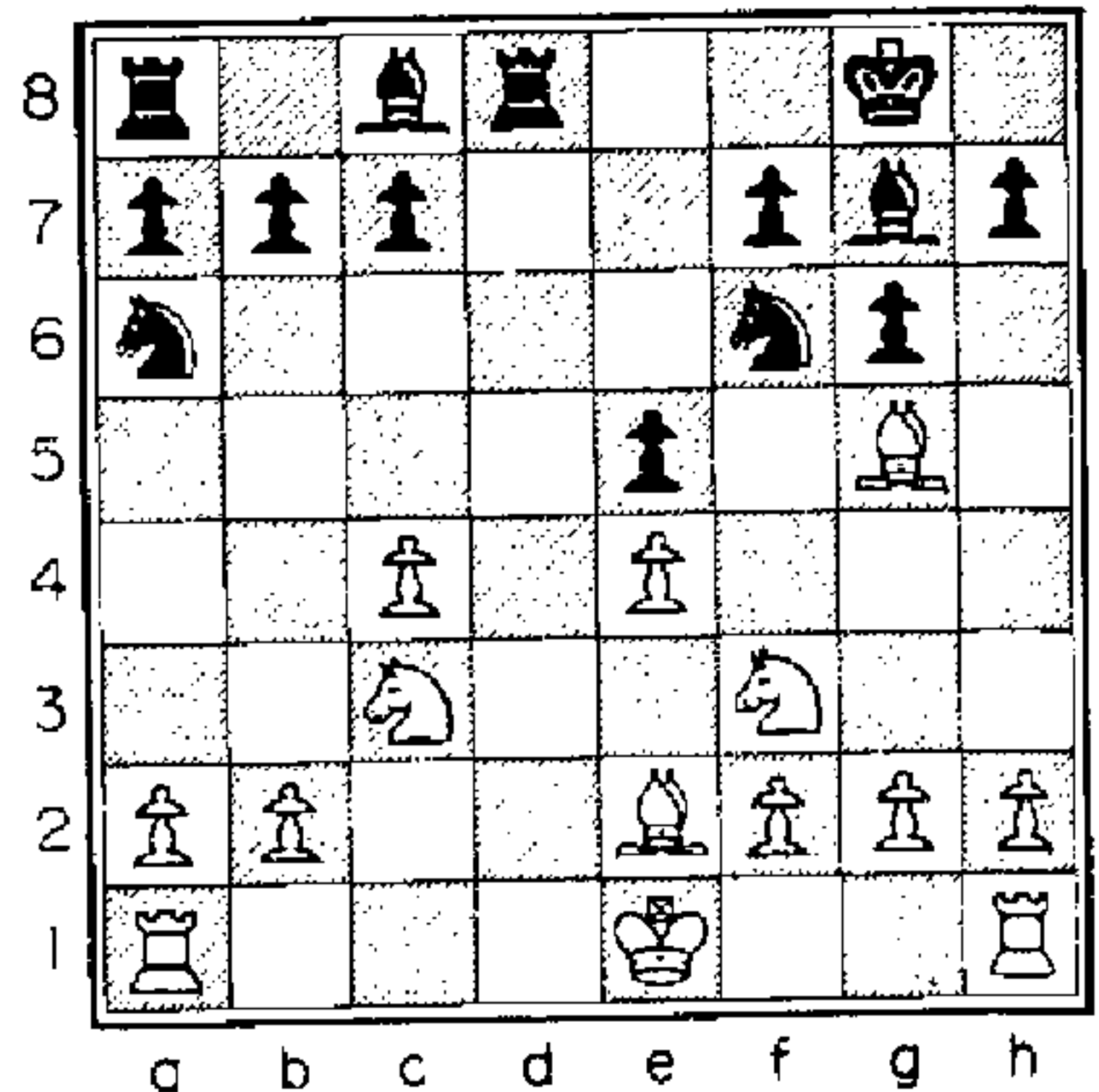
Allowing the king to be trapped on the back rank is hopeless. The only try is 52 ... Kg6 after which Benko gives the following win: (53) e6 a4! 54 e7 Kf7 55 d6 a3 56 Rb8

Re1+ 57 Kf2 a2! 58 d7! Rxe7 (58 ... Rf1+ 59 Kg3!.) 59 d8=Q a1=Q 60 Qg8+ Kf6 61 Rf8+ Ke5 62 Qh8+.

**53 e6 a4**  
**54 Ke4 Re1+**  
**55 Kf5 Rd1**  
**56 Ke5**  
**Black resigns**

56 ... b3 leads to mate after 57 d6, while 56 ... Re1+ loses to 57 Kd6.

**8.2 THE NEWER 9 ... Na6:  
L. VOGT-J. PINTER,  
BUDAPEST 1976**



The reasoning behind this move is quite logical: by protecting the c-pawn Black tries to minimize the power behind White's coming Nd5 and thus hopes that he can retain the rook along the d-file, rather than having to place it on e8. The poten-

tial disadvantage also is quite clear, since the rook remains in a nasty pin.

### 10 Nd5!

The only thematic way to proceed. Harmless is 10 Nxe5 Re8 11 0-0-0 when Black has the choice between 11 ... Nc5 and 11 ... Rxe5 12 Rd8+ Re8! 13 Bxf6 Rxd8 14 Bxd8 Bh3!, Ghinda-Biriescu, Rumania 1976, in both cases with equality.

### 10 ... Rd6

10 ... Nxd5?! is fine for tactical reasons: 11 Bxd8?! Nf4 12 g3 Nxe2 13 Kxe2 Be6 14 Be7 Bxc4+ 15 Kd2 Re8, Luik-Didishko, Vilnius 1975, where Black has excellent compensation for the Exchange. However, there is a strategic refutation: 11 cxd5! and White will obtain devastating pressure along the c-file, e.g. 11 ... f6 12 Be3 Nb4 13 Rc1!.

### 11 Bxf6 Bxf6

### 12 Nxf6+!

At the moment the position is still rather complicated and White must pay major attention to developmental factors and king safety. If he doesn't, then trouble is not far away. An instructive example is Knezevic-Zaitsev, Dubna 1976: 12 b4?! c6 (12 ... Bd8!? is also promising.) 13 Nxf6+ Rxf6 14 a3 Bg4 15 Nxe5? (Opening up White's king

position to Black's rooks is suicidal. Correct is 15 Rd1 Re8 16 Nd2 with equality.) 15 ... Bxe2 16 K Re8 17 Nf3 Rxe4+ 18 Kd3 R 19 Rhg1 c5! 20 h3 Rgf4 with strong pressure by Black against White's position. White's-in-the-center is more a liability than a strength.

12 ...	Rxf6
13 Nxe5!	Re6
14 f4	Nc5
15 0-0-0!	

White gets his king to safety castling, while completing development. He will exploit edge in development to cause Black to cramp his forces, particularly the queenside.

15 ...	f6
16 Ng4	Nxe4
17 Bf3	Kg7
18 Rhe1!	Nc5
19 Nf2!	c6
20 b4!	

Only now, when he is well ahead in development and Black is without counterchances, does White advance this pawn in order to gain space on the queenside.

20 ...	Rxe1
21 Rxe1	Ne6
22 Nd3	Kf7
23 Re4!	

Preventing 23 ... Nd4. White wants to keep Black as cramped as possible.

23 ... Bd7  
 24 Kb2 a5  
 25 a3 axb4  
 26 axb4 b6  
 27 g3 Ra4?

Allows the following favorable strategic regrouping, because White establishes tactical threats with gain of time. With the careful ... Rc8 Black can keep a defensible position.

28 Bd1! Ra7  
 29 c5! bxc5  
 30 Bb3! f5

This and the following move are mandatory in order not to lose material, but now White achieves an endgame with the vastly superior minor piece.

31 Re5 Kf6  
 32 Bxe6!! Bxe6  
 33 Nxc5 Bf7  
 34 Kc3 h6  
 35 Re2 g5  
 36 Kd4 Rc7  
 37 h4 Ra7  
 38 hxg5+ hxg5  
 39 Re3! g4  
 40 Re1 Ra3?

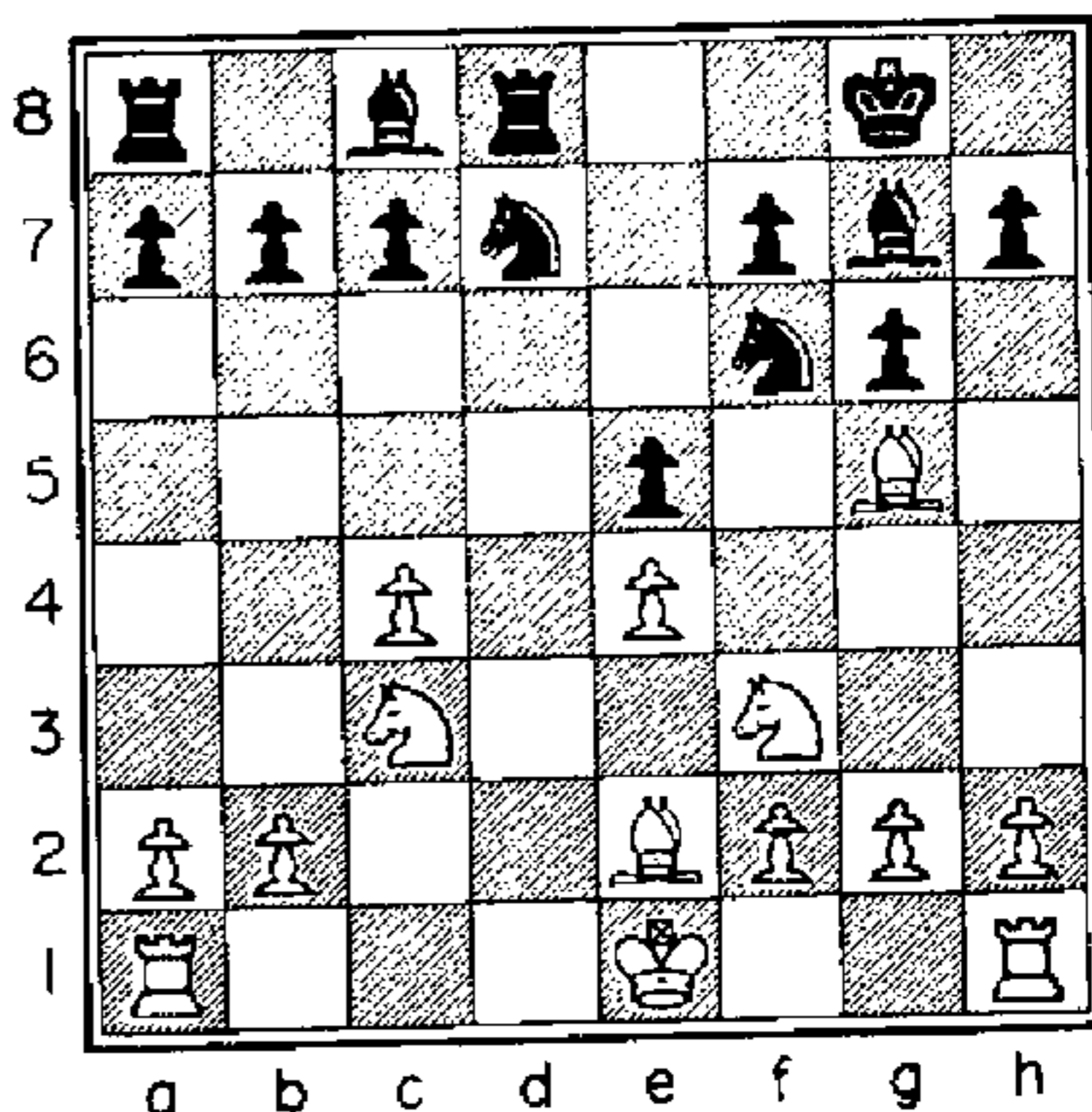
This active move leads to a forced loss. Necessary is 40 ...Rc7, though Black's position remains most unpleasant.

41 Nd7+! Kg6  
 42 Re3!

**Black  
resigns**

Hopeless is 42 ... Ra6 43 Ne5+ Kf6 44 Kc5 Bd5 45 b5; equally so the minor piece endgame after 42 ... Rxe3 43 Kxe3.

**8.3 THE NEWER 9 ... Nbd7:  
U. ANDERSSON-Y. BALASHOV,  
MOSCOW 1981**



How to date a variation? This move was already played in 1949 by Geller, and Keres drew attention to it in 1971. However, it generated no interest at all in master chess until the late 1970s. By then it was clear that Black's task in equalizing after both 9 ... Re8 and 9 ... Na6 was not so simple, after all.

By developing the QN to d7 Black immediately takes care of two items: he protects the e-pawn and gives additional protection to f6. Moreover, on d7 the knight is placed very flexibly and can choose to go



to f6, c5, b6 or f8. Therefore it is a much more favorable waystation than a6.

### 10 0-0-0!

Developing with a gain of time (11 Nxe5 is threatened) and bringing the king to safety by castling is by far White's best move. Harmless is 10 Nd5 c6 11 Ne7+ Kf8 12 Nxc8 Rdxc8!. Black is completely secure and controls d4 whereas White is without prospects for active play. In Flohr-Geller, 1949 U.S.S.R. Championship, White held the endgame after 13 Nd2 Nc5; in Dainalov-Kasparov, 1980 World Junior Championship, White quickly got the worst of it and lost: 13 0-0-0? Nc5 14 Bxf6 Bxf6 15 Bd3?! a5 16 Rhe1 Re8! 17 Bf1 Bd8 18 g3?! a4 19 Kc2 Ba5 20 Re3 Rad8! 21 Rxd8 Rxd8 22 Bh3 f6 23 Re2 Ke7 24 Bg2 Nd3! 25 a3 Nc5 26 h4 h5 27 Re3 g5 28 hxg5 fxg5 29 Re2 Nb3 30 Kb1 Kf6 White resigns.

Also illogical is 10 Rd1, since the king stands poorly in the center. In Gutop-Vasyukov, 1978 Moscow Championship, Black gained a slight edge after 10 ... Rf8 11 Nd5 c6 12 Nxf6+?! Nxf6 13 Nd2 Be6 14 f3 Nd7 15 Nb3 Rfc8 16 Be3 Bf8, since White has nothing to show for his weakness on d4.

10 ... Rf8!

The only satisfactory way to cope with the threatened 11 Nxe5, since

10 ... Re8? loses to 11 Nb5 a6  
10 ... h6? to 11 Bxf6 Bxf6 12 Nd2

### 11 Nd2!?

By protecting his e-pawn sufficiently, White is able to gain space on the queenside. More common has been 11 Ne1 c6 12 Nc2 Nd2 13 f3, with the following experiences:

(a) 13 ... a5 14 b3 Re8 15 Rd2 with virtual equality in Ritonov-Gufeld, Riga 1969.

(b) 13 ... Be6 14 Be3, drawn agreed in H. Olafsson-Byrne, Reykjavik 1980.

(c) 13 ... Ne6 14 Be3 Nh5 15 Rd2?! (correct is 15 Kb2) 15 ... Nd4! 16 Rhd1 (16 Nxd4 exd4 17 Bxd4 Bh6) 16 ... Nf4 17 Bf1 Nf5 and the solid control of d4 gives Black the advantage, Heggheim-Westerinen, Hammerfest 1977.

Also worth exploring is 11 Nd5! In the game Sr. Cvetkovic-A. Kuzmin, Linz 1990, White gained a slight edge after 11 ... c6 12 Ne7 Kh8 13 Be3! Re8 14 Nxc8 Raxc8 15 c5.

11 ... c6  
12 b4! a5  
13 a3 Re8!

Making way for the QN so that it can be developed via f8 to e6.

14 Kb2 Nf8  
15 c5! Ne6  
16 Bxf6

White is aiming to grab space on the queenside as fast as possible

and, with the changed pawn formation there, the KB now has more scope than the QB.

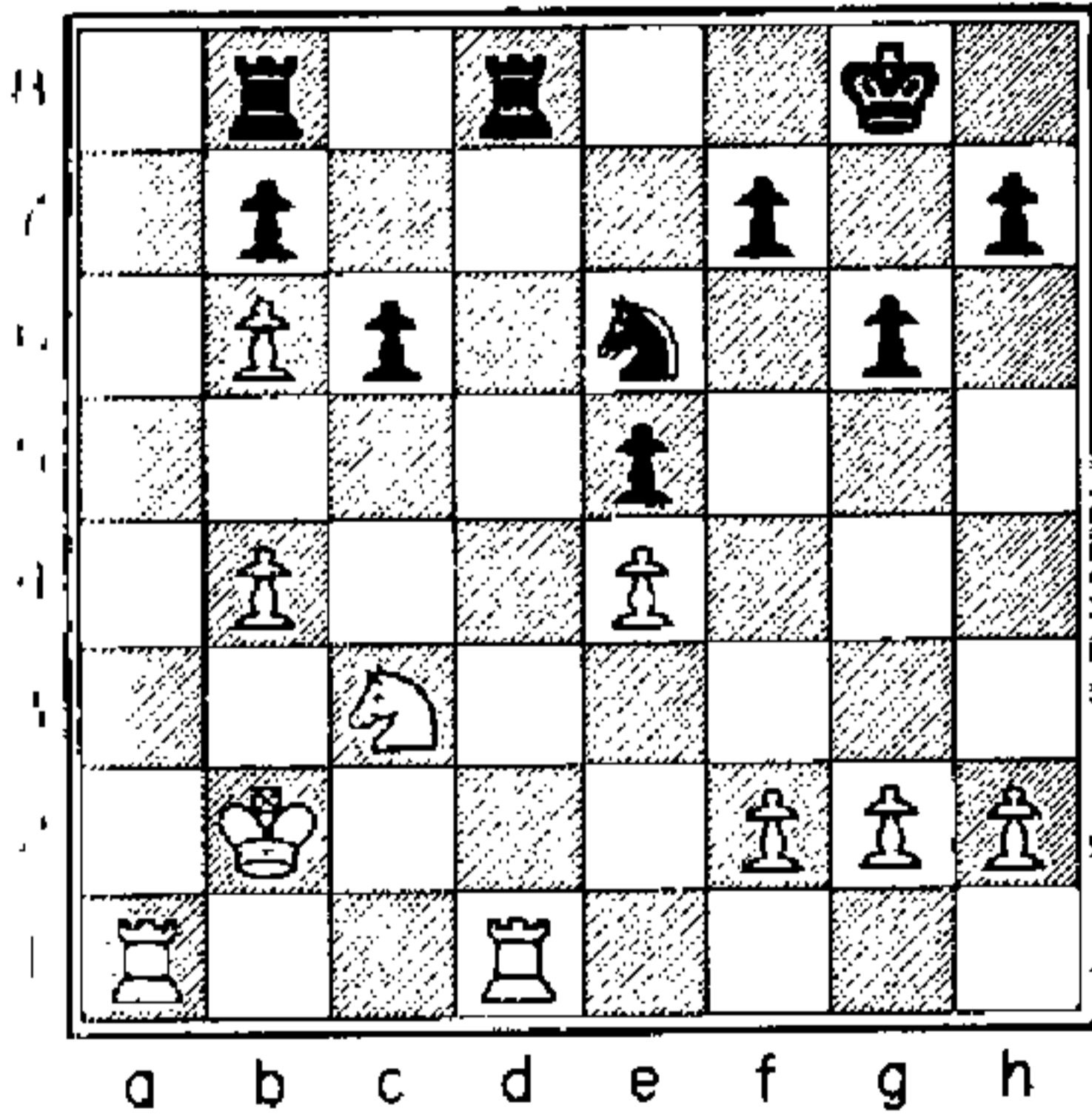
16 ... Bxf6  
 17 Nc4 axb4  
 18 axb4 Nd4  
 19 Nb6 Rb8  
 20 Bc4 Bd8!

Since Black's KB has little to do, it exchanges itself for White's annoying knight.

21 Ra1! Bxb6  
 22 cxb6 Be6!  
 23 Bxe6 Nxe6  
 24 Rhd1 Red8!

The only vulnerable point in Black's position is b7. As long as he can comfortably safeguard that he will be alright.

29 Kc3 Ke7  
 30 Nb2 f6  
 31 Nd3 Nd4  
 32 Nc5 Nb5 +  
 33 Kd3 Nd6  
 34 g3 g5  
 35 h3 h5  
 36 Ke2 Kf7  
 37 f4 Ke7!  
 38 Kf3 Kf7  
 39 Ke2 Ke7  
 40 Kf3  
 Draw.

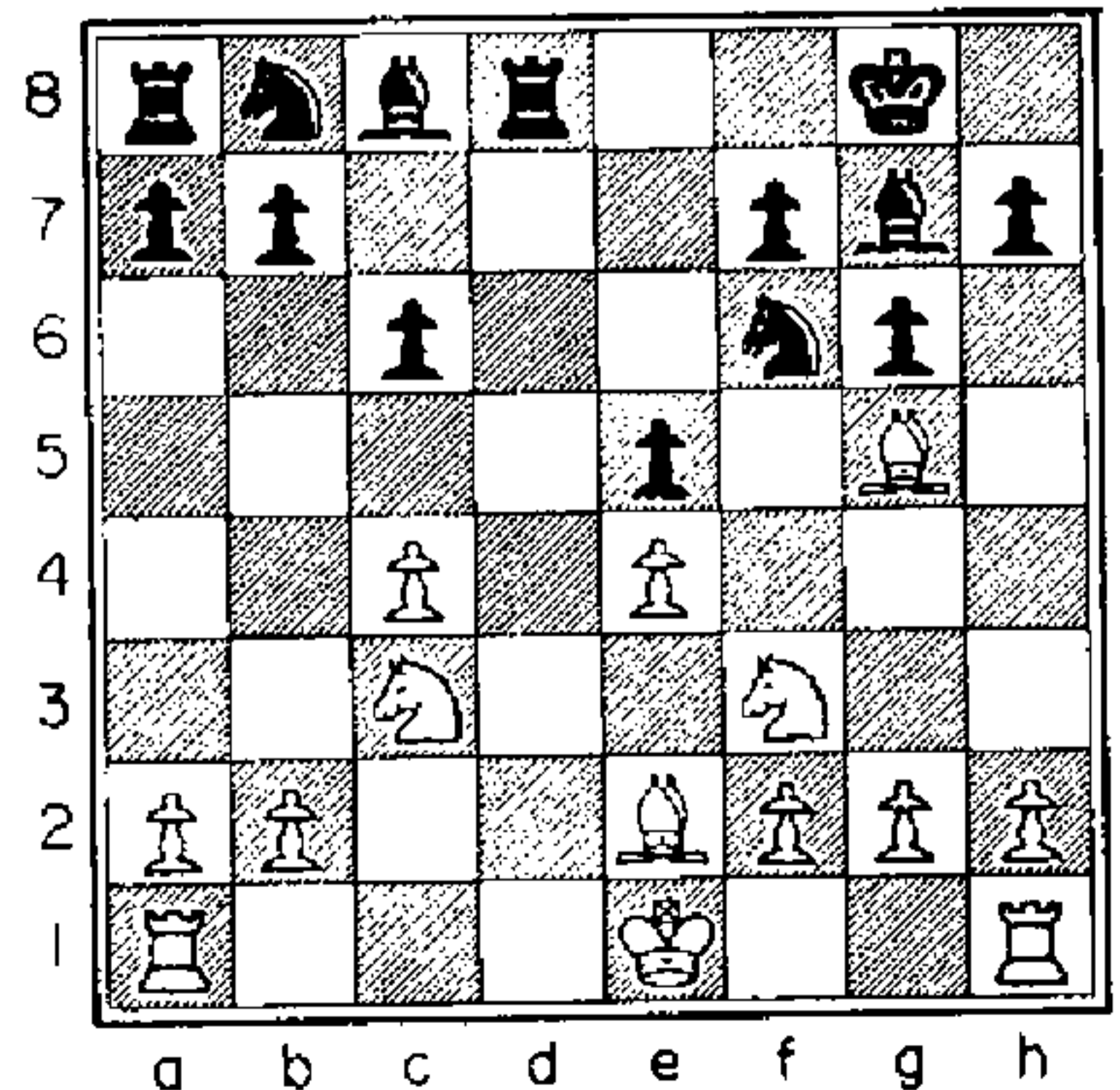


Black has judiciously completed his development and is just able to prevent any nasty penetration by White.

25 Rxd8+ Rxd8  
 26 Rd1 Kf8  
 27 Rxd8+ Nxd8  
 28 Na4 Ne6

There is no way for White to make progress.

8.4 THE NEWEST 9 ... c6:  
 M. TAL-I. SMIRIN,  
 USSR 1990



This move is actually a rather old one, but only very recently did it gain respectability. Its positive points are very clear: White's Nd5 is prevented for evermore and Black's KR remains master of the d-file; the demerit is just as obvious: Black's e-pawn remains unprotected.

### 10 Nxe5

There is no other way to hope for an advantage.

10 ...            Re8  
11 0-0-0        Na6!

It is this "positional" plan, introduced into high level chess by GM William Watson in 1986, that is giving new life to the old 9 ... c6. Rather than hurrying into recapturing the pawn, Black wants to do it only on his terms. The "greedy" moves are unsatisfactory for Black:

(a) 11 ... Rxe5?: 12 Rd8+ Re8 13 Bxf6 leaves Black a pawn down.

(b) 11 ... Nxe4?!: 12 Nxe4 Bxe5 13 Nd6 (Also good is 13 Rhe1 Nd7 14 Nd6) 13... Bxd6 (13 ... Bxb2+?! fails to 14 Kd2! Rf8 15 Be7) 14 Rxd6 Na6 15 Be3, with White having a myriad of advantages: control of the d-file, the bishop pair in an open position, attacking prospects against Black's weakened kingside. Notice how quickly Black goes under in Van Meter-Wegman, USA 1980: 15 ... Be6 16 a3 Kf8 17 h4! Ke7 18 Rhd1! Nb8?! (A better try is 18 ... Bd5 though White can sacri-

fice the exchange for more than enough compensation.) 19 Bc8 Na6 20 Rd7++ Kf6 21 Bd4+ Kf8 22 Rxb7 Black resigns.

### 12 Rd6!

White takes advantage of his superior development to apply immediate pressure against Black's position. Recent master practice has shown that Black gets excellent counterplay after 12 f4 h6 13 Bh4 g5!: (a) 14 Bg3 Nc5 15 Bf3 g4; (b) 14 fxg5 hxg5 15 Bg3 Nc5.

### 12 ...            Rxe5?!

Works out poorly. As possible improvements Tal suggests 12 ... Be6, 12 ... Nh5 and 12 ... Bf8 13 Rxf6 Rxe5.

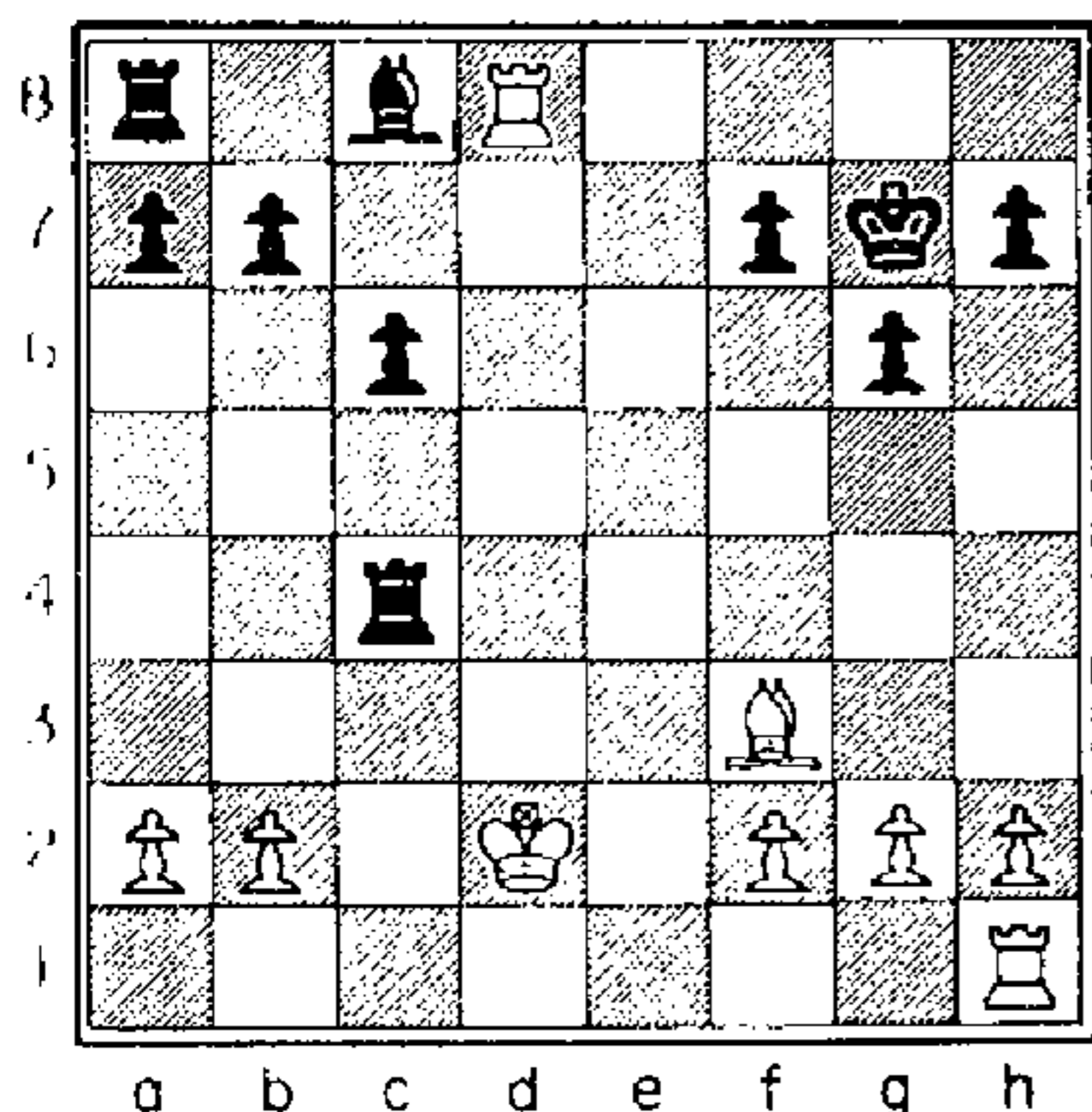
13 Bxf6            Bxf6  
14 Rxf6            Nc5  
15 Rd6!

Instead, 15 f4? is met by 15 ... Rxe4!, whereas 15 f3 Be6 16 f4 Rxe4 17 Nxe4 Nxe4 18 Rxe4 fxe6 19 Rd1 has White trying to exploit a superior pawn formation. Characteristically, Tal goes for an immediate initiative.

15 ...            Nxe4  
16 Rd8+        Kg7  
17 Nxe4        Rxe4  
18 Bf3!        Rxc4+

After 18 ... Re7 19 Rhd1 Black's queenside cannot be developed.

### 19 Kd2



30 bxa3 a5  
 31 Kf4 a4  
 32 f3! Kg7  
 33 Be6 Bxe6  
 34 Rxb8 Bb3  
 35 Rb5  
 Black  
 resigns.

After 35 ... c4, White has 36 Rxb5 — the point of 32 f3!.

19 ... c5?

Black now will be tied up in knots. As the only defense Tal gives 19 ... b6 20 Rc1 Rxc1 21 Kxc1 Bb7, with White retaining a pleasant advantage after 22 Rd7 Rb8 23 Rc7.

20 Rc1! Rxc1

Equally poor is 20 ... Rd4+ 21 Rxd4 cxd4 22 Rc7. In each case, White's three remaining pieces control the board.

21 Kxc1 h5  
 22 h4 Rb8  
 23 Re8 f6  
 24 Bd5 g5  
 25 g3 gxh4  
 26 gxh4 Kg6  
 27 Kd2 b5

27 ... Be6? is refuted by 28 Bb4+.

28 Ke3! b4  
 29 a3 bxa3

# 9

## Grünfeld Defense: Modern Exchange Variation

1 d4	Nf6
2 c4	g6
3 Nc3	d5
4 cxd5	

The Grünfeld is an inherently complicated and unbalancing defense and there is nothing that White can do to prevent that. And if White believes in playing 1 d4 followed by 2 c4, there is no good way to prevent Black from challenging the c-pawn with ... d5. The Exchange Variation — 4 cxd5 — has at least the advantage that the play, though unavoidably unbalanced, is strategically clear from White's standpoint. White immediately grabs a significant space advantage in the center and then hopes to turn back all of Black's attempts at undermining this center.

4 ...	Nxd5
5 e4	Nxc3
6 bxc3	c5
7 Nf3	

It is this simple enough knight move that forms the beginning of the Modern Exchange Variation. For more than 50 years since the introduction of the Grünfeld, it was felt to be strategically wrong to play the cxd5 exchange if White's KN was already on f3. The reasoning was that Black with a ... Bg4 will be able to put strong pressure on the d4 pawn. However, very recently it has been discovered that the matter is not so simple at all and that developing the KN to its best central square also has a significant advantage: the knight is actively placed here. In the standard Exchange Variation (7 Bc4 Bg7 8 Ne2) White's knight only serves to protect the d-pawn and can't do anything else.

There also is a practical reason why the Modern Exchange Variation is important and that is because White can aim for it with various move orders and thus retain more

imum flexibility for himself. Four popular examples:

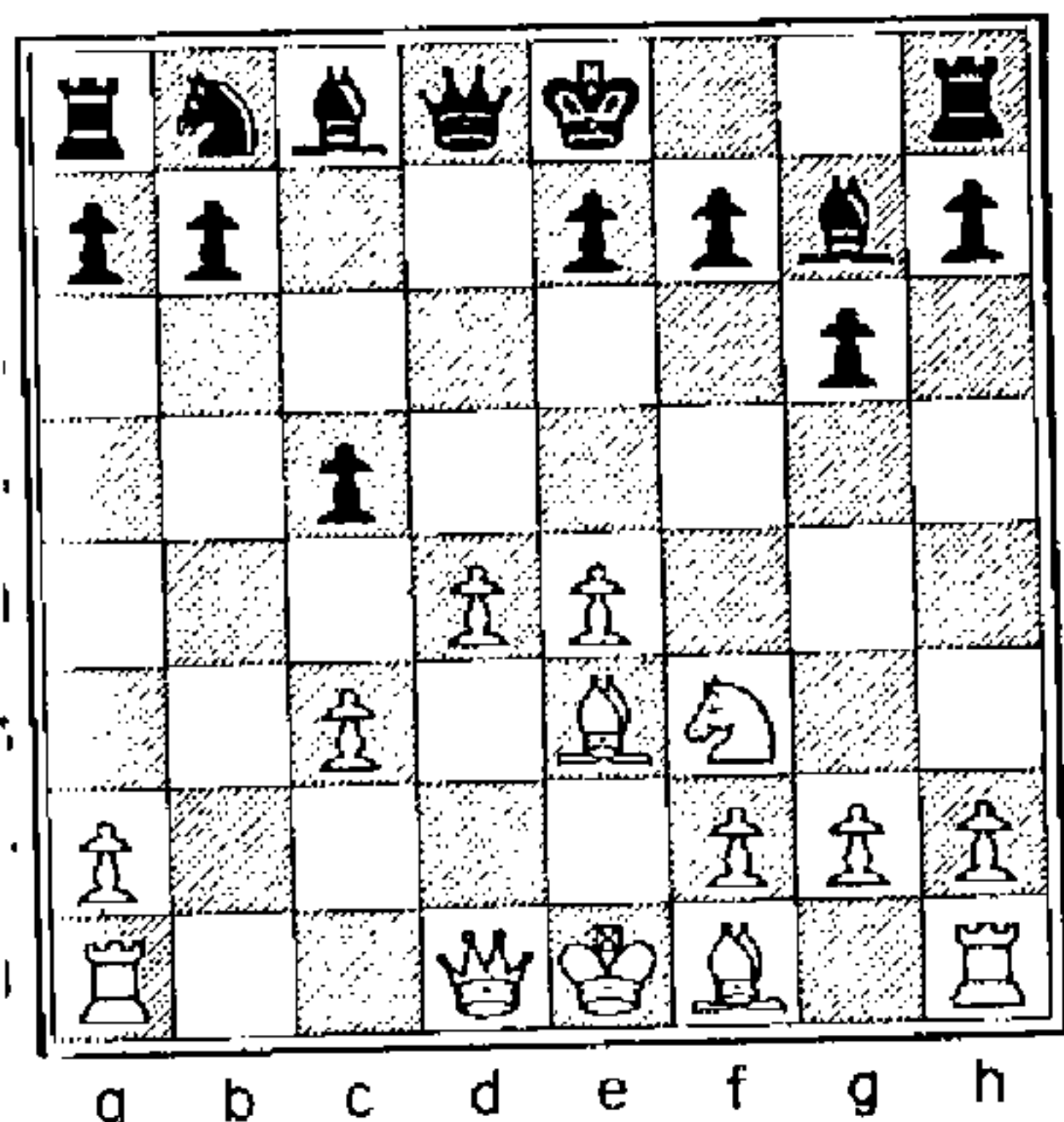
(1) From the Grünfeld: 1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 g6 3 Nc3 d5 4 Nf3 Bg7 5 cxd5 Nxd5 6 e4 Nxc3 7 bxc3 c5.

(2) From 1 d4 openings: 1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 g6 3 c4 Bg7 4 Nc3 d5 5 cxd5 Nxd5 6 e4 Nxc3 7 bxc3 c5.

(3) From 1 Nf3 openings: 1 Nf3 Nf6 2 d4 g6 3 c4 Bg7 4 Nc3 d5 5 cxd5 Nxd5 6 e4 Nxc3 7 bxc3 c5.

(4) From the English Opening: 1 c4 Nf6 2 Nc3 d5 3 cxd5 Nxd5 4 Nf3 c5 5 d4 Nxc3 6 bxc3 g6 7 e4 Bg7.

7 ...                    Bg7  
8 Be3!



A move logical in every respect: the QB gets developed to a central square from where it reinforces the key d4 point and the way is cleared for the QR to remove itself from the diagonal of Black's KB. Therefore in this variation White's initial emphasis is on the central and left side of the board. Moreover, there is

a specific value to this variation for those who enjoy playing queenless games. As part of his normal counterplay, Black's queen usually must go to a5 and in all of the main lines this gives White excellent opportunities for a queen exchange.

Though 8 Be3! now looks obvious enough, this is thanks to hindsight. Foresight is a tougher goal to achieve. Thus, for instance, the excellent *Encyclopedia of Chess Openings* has its Grünfeld Exchange Variation sections written by Karpov. Though published as recently as 1976, Karpov considers for White the main lines to be 8 h3 and 8 Be2; he doesn't even mention 8 Be3. What this means for the present is that the 8 Be3 variations are still in a fairly early developmental stage and that to a minor degree at least there will be some updates and modifications. Nevertheless, a large body of theoretical data already exists. Black's main continuations are 8 ... Bg4, 8 ... 0-0 and 8 ... Qa5 and it seems logical that they will continue to be so in the future. Each of these will be considered in detail in the following sections — in each case featuring a queenless game in full.

It should also be pointed out that at best 8 ... Nc6 has no independent value and after 9 Rc1! will transpose into lines to be considered. Aiming for independence by e.g. 9 ... Qa5?! is good only for

White after 10 d5!, since 10 ... Bxc3+? 11 Rxc3 Qxc3+ 12 Bd2 followed by 13 dxc6 leads to a significant plus for White.

### 9.1 8 ... Bg4:

**J. PLACHETKA-G. SAX,  
SKARA 1980**

Surely a very logical way to try to cope with White's system: White's center supporting knight is pinned. Yet the move has not attracted that much support. The reason: White can safeguard his center well enough, leaving the pinning bishop out on a limb.

### 9 Rc1!

White always does best by continuing with the basic plan behind the 8 Be3 move. Kasparov's original plan of 9 Qa4+ Nc6 10 Ne5 has been successfully countered by 10 ... Bxe5! 11 dxe5 Qc7!. In this unbalanced position Black seems O.K. After 12 Bb5 Bd7 13 f4 a6 Black was fine in Morovic-Gutman, Israel 1980. And after 12 f4, Tal-G. Fernandez, Malaga 1981, Black should play 12 ... 0-0 13 Bb5 Na5! (Gutman), again with good play.

### 9 ... cxd4

Black's most popular continuation. The immediate clearing of the center ensures that Black will get some thematic pressure against d4 and the maximum "length" for his

KB. If Black avoids this exchange, White has the option of an early d5 or the unpinning Be2.

Of course a reasonable alternative for Black is the immediate 9 ... 0-0. White's most consistent method then is again 10 Qd2 so that 10 ... Qa5 is negated by 11 d5!. Therefore Black has been playing 10 ... cxd4 and after 11 cxd4, the following two moves are known:

(1) 11 ... Nc6?! 12 d5 Na5 13 Be2 e6?! 14 Bc5 Re8 15 Bb5 winning the Exchange, Atkins-Prins, 1937 (!).

(2) 11 ... Bxf3 12 gxf3 e6 13 Bb5! a6?! (Better is 13 ... Qb6, though 14 Bc4! Nc6 15 Rd1 should give White a slight plus.) 14 Ba4 b6 15 Bb3 Nd7 16 h4! Nf6 17 Ke2, Najdorf-Franco, Buenos Aires 1979. White has a large edge (center, two bishops, attacking chances on the kingside), whereas Black's counterplay against d4 is stillborn.

A third possibility for Black is 9 ... Qa5 10 Qd2 Bxf3 11 gxf3 Nd7. This somehow does not look very inspiring, yet in Fedorowicz-Shamkovich, New York 1980, Black emerged victorious from the complications resulting after 12 d5 b6 13 f4 Rd8. As an improvement for White 12 Rb1! comes into view.

### 10 cxd4 0-0

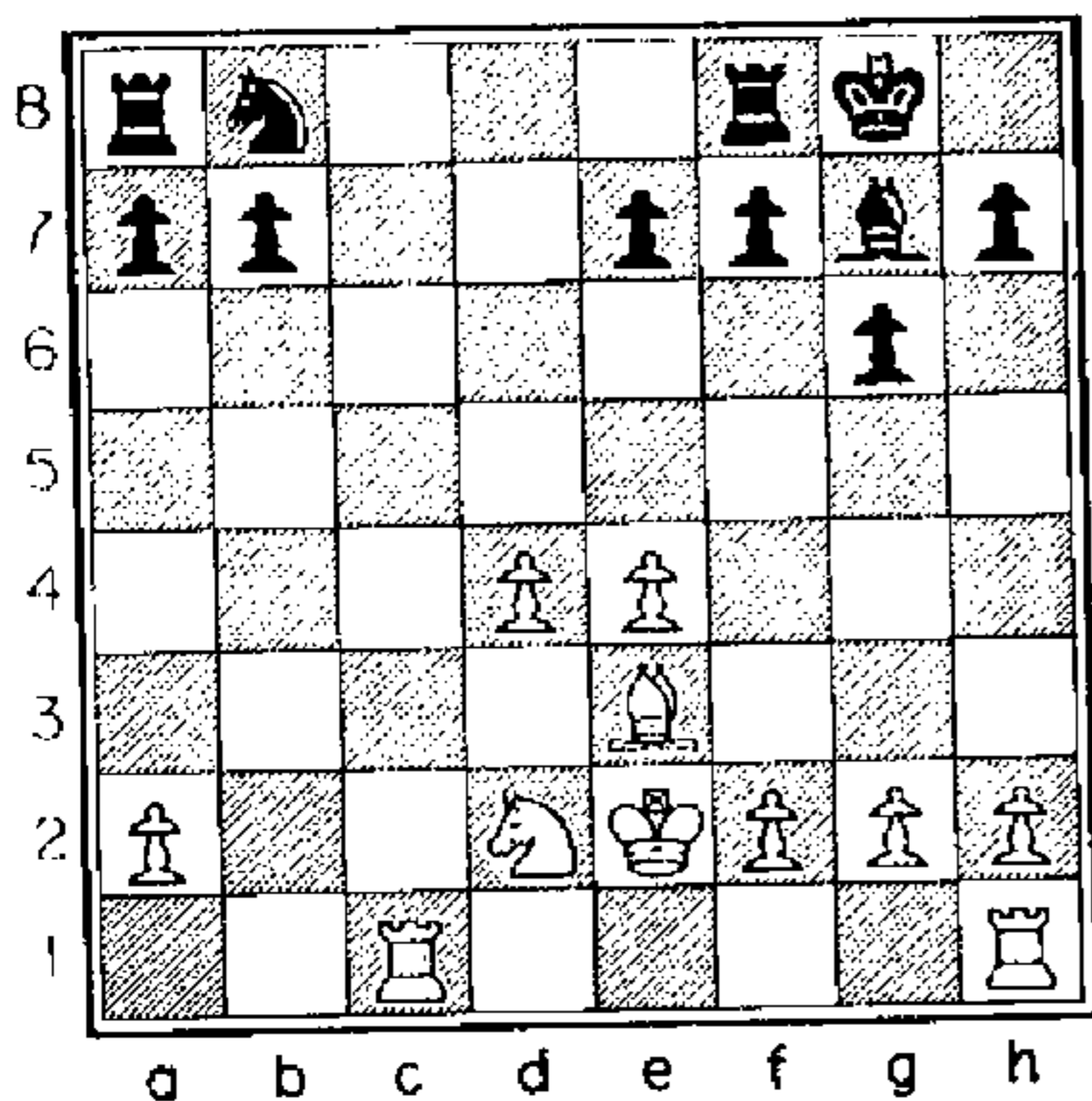
Here 10 ... Qa5+ is pointless since after 11 Qd2 Qxd2+ 12 Nxd2 Black's QB is misplaced on g4.

However, of strategic importance is 10 ... Bxf3, forcing doubled pawns onto White since 11 Qxf3 allows 11 ... Bxd4. In Gligoric-Belyavsky, Baden 1980, White showed that his central superiority and the bishop pair does give White the better chances: 11 gxf3 0-0 12 Bc4 Qa5+ 13 Kf1 Nc6 14 d5 Ne5 15 Bb3 Rac8 16 Kg2. White's king is secure and his positional advantages remain.

**11 Be2                    Qa5+**

The passive 11 ... e6?! led to a debacle in Petursson-Shamkovich, Lone Pine 1980: 12 0-0 Nc6 13 d5 exd5 14 exd5 Bxf3?! 15 Bxf3 Ne5 16 Be2 b6 17 d6! Qh4 18 Qd5 Rad8 19 Rc7 Qa4 20 Rd1 h6 21 Bd4 Rde8 22 Re7! Qc2 23 Bxe5 Black resigns.

**12 Qd2                    Qxd2+**  
**13 Nxd2                Bxe2**  
**14 Kxe2**



An endgame pleasantly — though in theory only slightly — superior for White. He has a clear central advantage and pressure along the open c-file. Moreover White is ahead in development since the immediate 14 ... Nc6?! allows 15 d5. The active 14 ... f5!? was tried in Andrianov-Gulko, 1981 Moscow Championship: 15 f3 e6 16 Rc7 Nc6 and now White could retain his edge with 17 Rb1!. To immediately restrain the advance of the d-pawn is Black's soundest approach.

**14 ...                    e6**  
**15 Rc7                    Rd8**  
**16 Rb1!**

After the immediate 16 Rxb7?!, 16 ... Nc6 equalizes. But now 16 ... Nc6? is refuted by 17 Rxb7. Also good is the central 16 Nf3! and after 16 ... b5, Bukic-Simic, 1981 Yugoslav Championship, White's strongest plan is 17 Rb1! a6 18 a4! bxa4 19 Rb4, with a clear advantage (Bukic).

**16 ...                    Na6!**  
**17 Rxb7?**

The position is not yet ripe for an attack. In order is the patient 17 Rc4! Rd7 18 Nb3!. Then White has a plethora of nice small pluses: center, pressure along the b- and c-files, centralized king.

**17 ...                    Bxd4**  
**18 Nf3                    Bxe3**  
**19 Kxe3                    Rac8!**



Establishing strong counterplay. Inferior is 19 ... Nc5? 20 Rc7 Rdc8 21 Rxc8 + Rxc8 22 Rc1! with strong pressure by White.

**20 Kf4?**

This nervous king move negates any prospects White could have for an advantage. The king should stay put until it has to move! The obvious 20 Rxa7 is also the correct move, with the likely continuation being: 20 ... Rc3+ 21 Kf4 Nc5 22 h3! Rc4 23 Kg3 Nxe4+ 24 Kh2. The existence of the passed a-pawn gives White a slight edge, since the f-pawn is poisoned [24 ... Nxf2? 25 Rbb7 Rd1 (25 ... Rf8 26 Ng5 Rf4 27 Nxe6!!) 26 Ne5! Rh1+ 27 Kg3 Ne4+ 28 Kh4 Rc5 29 Ra8+ and White wins — analysis by Plachetka].

<b>20 ...</b>	<b>Rc2!</b>
<b>21 Rxa7</b>	<b>Nc5</b>
<b>22 Rb5!</b>	<b>Rc4</b>
<b>23 a3!</b>	<b>e5+ !?</b>

With the ambitious text move Black tries for more than the safe equality possible after both 23 ... Rxe4+ 24 Kg3 followed by 25 h3, and 23 ... Nxe4 24 Rb4!.

The e-pawn is of course taboo: 24 Nxe5? Rxe4+ wins the knight; 24 Kxe5? Rxe4+ 25 Kf6 h6! wins the king. Yet Black's pawn can turn out to be en prise in the future.

<b>24 Kg4!</b>	<b>h5+ ?</b>
----------------	--------------

Chasing White's king where it will be both safe and strong. The main line as given by Plachetka is 24 ... Nxe4 25 Nxe5! Nxf2+ 26 Kf3 Rc2! 27 Rxf7! Nd3! with equality.

<b>25 Kg5!</b>	<b>Nxe4+</b>
----------------	--------------

Unfortunately for Black 25 ... Kg7? is refuted by 26 Rxf7+! Kxf7 27 Nxe5+ followed by 28 Nxc4.

<b>26 Kh6</b>	<b>Nd6</b>
<b>27 Rxe5</b>	<b>Rf4</b>

By now both sides were in extreme time pressure. If instead 27 ... Nf5+ 28 Rxf5 gxf5 29 Nd3 with play similar to what occurred later — and similarly advantageous for White.

<b>28 h3!</b>	<b>Nf5+</b>
<b>29 Kg5</b>	<b>Rc4</b>
<b>30 Rxf5</b>	

O.K., but simpler and at least as good is 30 g4.

<b>30 ...</b>	<b>gxf5</b>
<b>31 Ne5</b>	

In an active position White will have at least two pawns for the Exchange and the better chances.

<b>31 ...</b>	<b>Rc2</b>
<b>32 Nxf7</b>	<b>Rd5</b>
<b>33 Nh6+ ?!</b>	

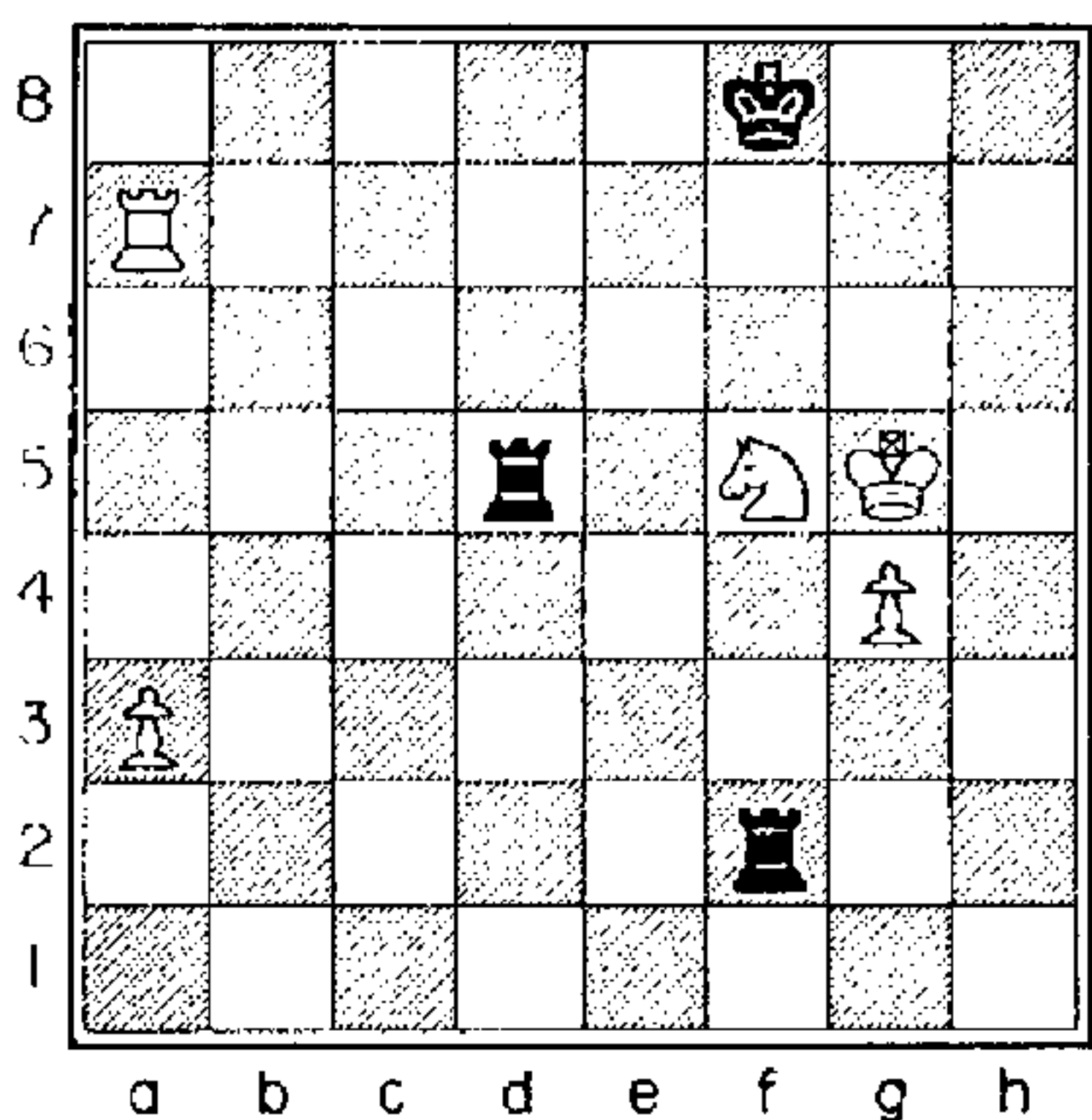
The resulting pawn exchanges are welcomed by Black. Con

considerably stronger is 33 f4! as 33 ... Rxf2+ ? loses to 34 Kf6.

**33 ... Kf8**  
**34 Nxf5 Rxf2**

Safer than 34 ... Rxf5+?! 35 Kxf5 Rxf2+ 36 Kg5 Rxf2+ 37 Kxh5 even though in many situations the two rook pawns do not allow a theoretical win.

**35 g4 hxg4**  
**36 hxg4**



White has both some theoretical and practical chances of winning. Still, careful play by Black will draw. But without time, how can one play carefully?

**36 ... Rf3**  
**37 Kf6 Rd6+**  
**38 Kg5 Rc6??**

Allows a devastating knight fork. Correct is 38 ... Rd5 after which White could play 39 a4 with a continuing slight edge.

**39 Nd4! Rc5+**  
**40 Kg6 Re3**

Otherwise 41 Ne6+.

**41 Ra8+ Ke7**  
**42 Nf5+**  
**Black resigns.**

After 42 ... Rxf5 43 Kxf5 the endgame is an easy theoretical win.

**9.2 8 ... 0-0**

A flexible, non-committing move. Since Black must castle early in any case, he does so immediately. This way he can postpone by a bit the decision on selecting his further set-up.

**9 Rc1**

Remaining true to our basic build-up. The more modest 9 Be2 is also playable.

**9 ... Qa5**

Fully logical of course. Alternatives are:

(1) **9 ... cxd4** 10 cxd4 and now  
(a) 10 ... Nc6?! 11 d5! Na5 (White is also better after 11 ... Ne5 12 Nxe5 Bxe5 13 Bc4) 12 Be2 e6?! (12 ... b6 is required) 13 d6! e5 14 Rc7 with a large edge for White, Miles-R. Rodriguez, Riga Interzonal 1979.

(b) 10 ... e6 11 Bc4 Nc6 12 0-0 Na5 13 Bd3, with a small comfort-

able edge for White, Kaplan-Liberzon, Lone Pine 1980.

(2) 9 ... e6 10 Be2 (Also good is 10 Qd2) 10 ... cxd4 11 cxd4 b6 12 0-0 Bb7 13 Qd3 Nc6 14 Rfd1 Qd6 15 d5 exd5 16 Qxd5, again with a slight initiative for White, Korchnoi-Timman, Wijk aan Zee 1978.

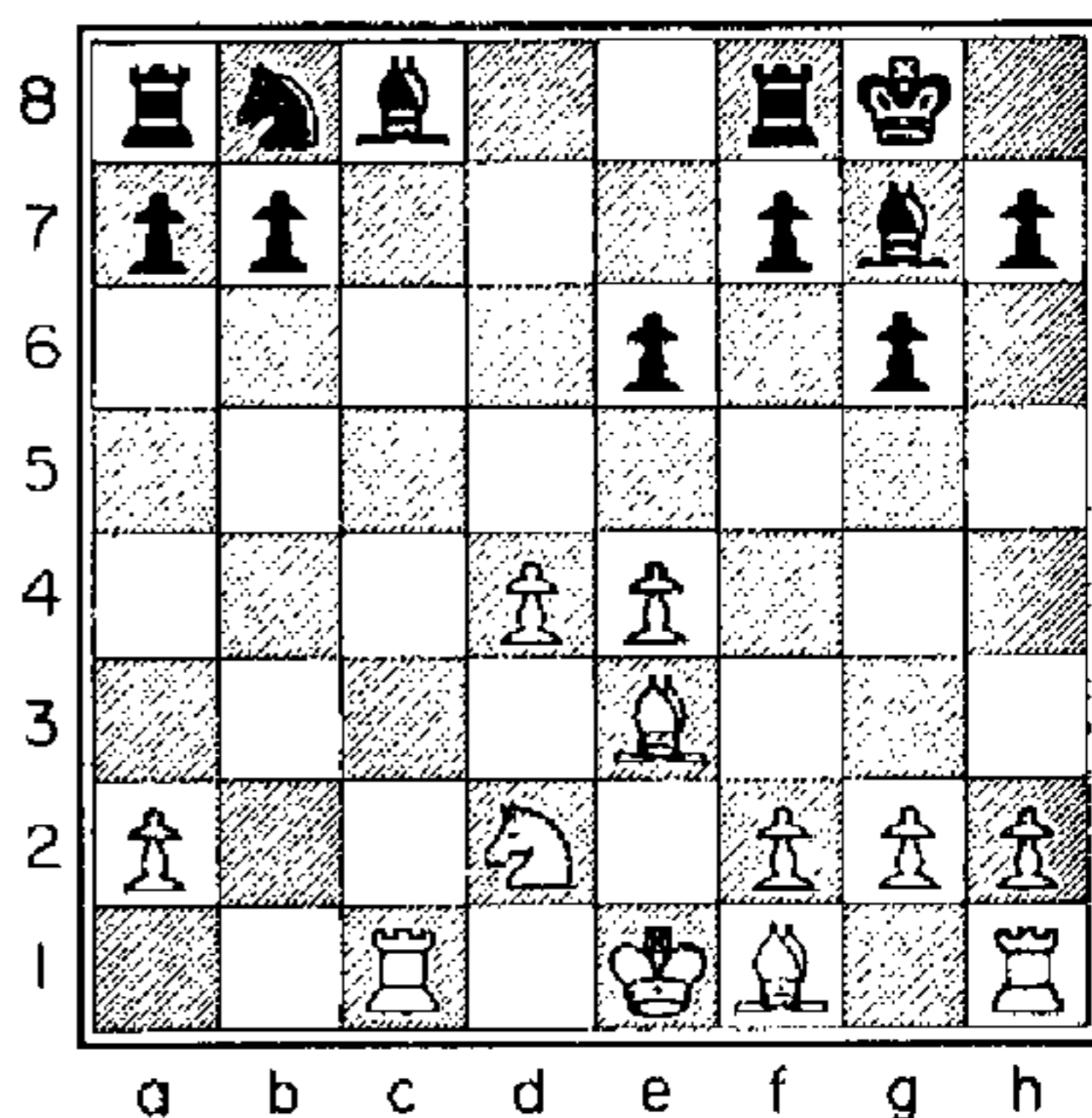
**10 Qd2                    cxd4**

The most consistent follow-up. Too slow is 10 ... e6?! because of 11 d5! exd5 12 exd5 and the passed d-pawn is a great strength both in the endgame after 12 ... Nd7 13 c4! Qxd2+ 14 Nxd2 b6 15 Be2 and in the middlegame after 12 ... Bf5 13 Be2 Na6 14 0-0 Rac8 15 Bh6! Bxh6 16 Qxh6 f6 17 Nh4!, Ftacnik-Jansa, Czechoslovakia 1979.

**11 cxd4                    Qxd2+**  
**12 Nxd2!**

After 12 Kxd2 the somewhat exposed location of White's king gives Black good chances for counterplay: 12 ... Rd8! 13 Bb5 Bg4 14 Rc7 Nc6 15 d5 Rab8! as in Tseitlin-Schmidt, Lodz 1980. Now after the text move, Adorjan has twice ventured the immediate 12 ... Nc6 against Portisch. But the second time (Portisch-Adorjan, 1981 Hungarian Championship) White retained a clear edge with 13 Nb3! Rd8 14 d5 Nb4 15 a3 Na2 16 Rc2 Nc3 17 Bd3 e6 18 Bg5! f6 (18 ... Rd6!?) 19 Bd2.

**12 ...                    e6**



An important position for this type of endgame. Black inhibits the d5 advance and gets ready to start undermining the d-pawn with ... Nc6, ... Rd8 etc. Therefore in Hübner-Adorjan, Match Game No. 1, 1980, White played 13 Bb5, but after 13 ... Bd7! 14 Bxd7 Nxd7 15 Ke2 (15 Rc7?! Rfc8!) 15 ... Rfc8 16 Nc4 Bf8 17 Bf4 Rc6 the chances were equalized and the game drawn on move 28. Yet White can play more skillfully, as shown in the following complete game:

**13 Nb3!:**

A. Karpov-R. Hübner,  
Tilburg 1980

A fine dual purpose move: the d-pawn is securely defended and the knight is ready to jump to an offensive location on c5.

**13 ... Rd8**

White easily parries this method of pressuring the d-pawn. Yet no matter how Black plays, White's slight endgame superiority is assured. Consider the following possible defensive approaches:

(1) 13 ... Nc6 14 Bb5! Bd7 15 0-0.

(2) 13 ... Bd7 14 Bc4 Rc8 15 0-0 or 15 Nc5.

(3) 13 ... b6 14 Bb5! Bb7 (14 ... Ba6 15 a4!) 15 f3 Rc8 16 Rxc8+ Bxc8 17 Kf2 Bd7 18 Rc1! Kf8 19 Bf4!.

**14 Bg5! f6**  
**15 Be3 f5**

Otherwise Black's KB remains buried, yet now there appear chronic weaknesses on Black's kingside: the e-pawn, and the e5, f4 and g5 squares.

**16 exf5 gxf5**  
**17 Bb5! Nd7**

The threat was 18 Bg5. After 17 ... Bd7 White retreats with 18 Bc4 to keep his edge, e.g. 18 ... Nc6 19 Nc5 or 18 ... b5 19 Be2 Bc6 20 Nc5. Tal recommends "immediately sacrificing a pawn with 17 ... Nc6!?" but it seems to me that after 18 Bxc6 bxc6 White would first castle (19 0-0), after which Black would be left with ugly weaknesses on c6 and e6, with *no* chance for counterplay.

**18 0-0 Nf6**  
**19 Bg5 Bd7**  
**20 Bc4 b6**

Necessary to prevent Nc5, but because White's KB now has access to a6, White obtains excellent chances of dominating the c-file. Since after 20 ... b6 White's knight has no prospects on b3, Karpov maneuvers it to a more useful square.

**21 Nd2! Re8**  
**22 Nf3! Bc6**  
**23 Ne5 Bd5**  
**24 Bb5 Rec8**  
**25 a4 Ne4**  
**26 Bf4 Bf8**  
**27 f3 Nf6?**

The knight has no future here — either for defense or offense. Karpov now puts on a fantastic exhibition of how to further improve the location of *his* pieces while appearing to force Black to move backwards. It is difficult to explain this in words, but easy enough to demonstrate it with moves.

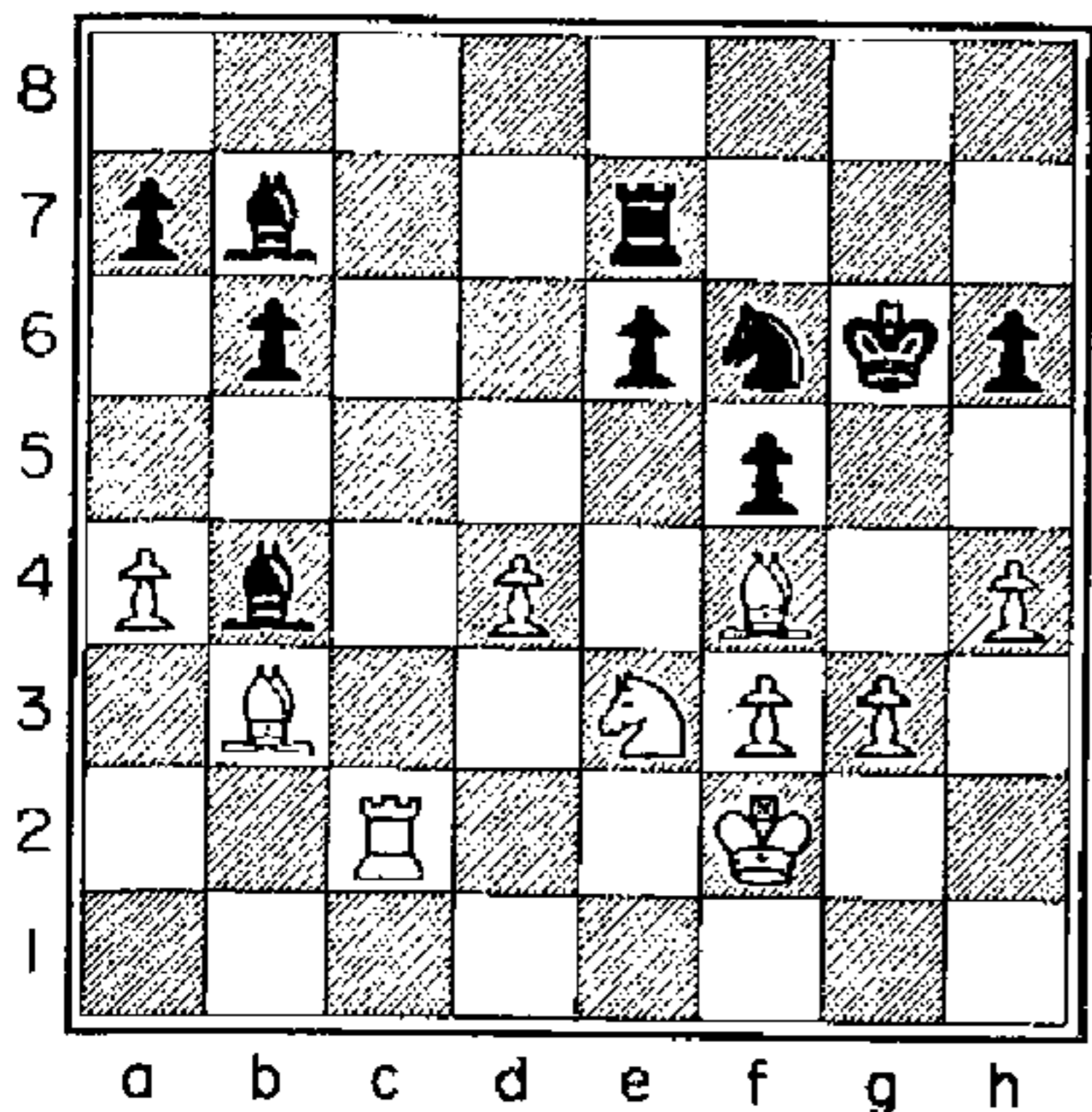
Even worse is 27 ... Nc3? because of 28 Ba6 Rc7 29 Rf2! Bb3 (otherwise 30 Rfc2) 30 Nd3 (Krnicek). However, GM Keene's suggestion of 27 ... Nd6! does give Black good prospects for holding on, e.g. 28 Ba6 Bb7 or 28 Bd7 Rxc1 29 Rxc1 a6.

**28 Bg5! Kg7**  
**29 Ba6 Rxc1**  
**30 Rxc1 Bd6**

- 31 Nc4!                    Bb4
- 32 Ne3                    Re8
- 33 Bb5!                   Rf8
- 34 Bf4                    Kg6
- 35 Kf2!                   Bb7
- 36 Rc7                    Rf7
- 37 Rc2!                   Rf8
- 38 Bc4                    Re8

Equally unsatisfactory are the endgames after 38 ... Nd5 39 Nxd5 Bxd5 40 Bb5 or 39 ... exd5 40 Bd3. The weaknesses in Black's position remain and White's active rook + bishop pair are in excellent condition for exploiting these.

- 39 Bb3!                   Re7
- 40 h4!                    h6
- 41 g3



In as precarious a position as Black's, the slightest mismaneuver can have devastating consequences. Therefore Karpov gives his opponent the chance to do something wrong. For instance,

41 ... Kg7? is refuted by 42 Bxe6! Rxe6 43 Rc7 + Re7 44 Nxf5 + . Only with the careful 41 ... Kh7! would Black retain chances of holding on.

- 41 ...                    Ba3?

Though this doesn't lose any material, the "loss" of the bishop pair will make Black's porous position indefensible.

- 42 Nc4!                   Bd5

The result is the same after 42 ... Bb4 43 Ne5 + Kg7 44 Nc6! Bxc6 45 Rxc6.

- 43 Ba2!                   Bxc4
- 44 Bxc4                   h5
- 45 Bb3!                   Kf7
- 46 Rc6                    Bb2
- 47 Ke3!

Threatening 48 Be5, 49 Kf4, 50 Kg5. Black's response forces White to part with one of his bishops, but at a new cost to Black: indefensible f-pawn.

- 47 ...                    Nd5 +
- 48 Bxd5                   exd5 +
- 49 Be5                    Re6
- 50 Rc7 +                   Re7
- 51 Rc2!                   Ba3
- 52 Kf4                    a6

52 ... Kg6 fails to 53 Rc6 + .

- 53 Kxf5                   b5
- 54 Rc6                    b4
- 55 Rb6!

Stopping Black's passed pawn, after which White's kingside pawns will run.

55 ... Ke8  
 56 g4! Kd7  
 57 gxh5 Rf7+  
 58 Kg4  
 Black  
 resigns.

9.3 8 ... Qa5:  
 D. RAJKOVIC-Z. KRNIC,  
 KLADOVO 1980

In a sense Black's most thematic plan, placing White's c3-d4 pawns under immediate pressure.

9 Qd2

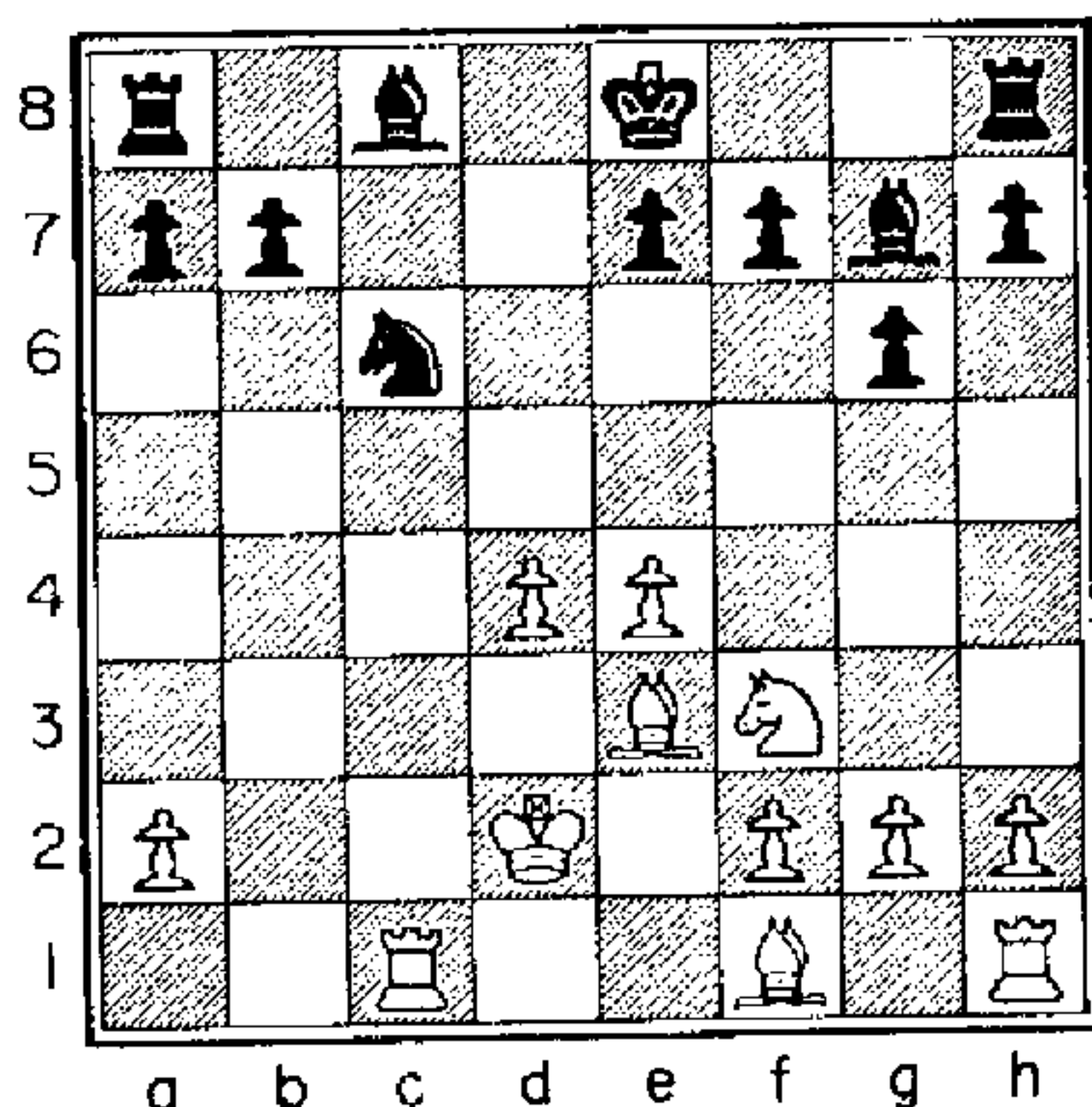
A perfectly good move and in line with our plan. Also popular currently are 9 Nd2!? and 9 Bd2!?. Because of the speed with which theory is presently developing in this variation it is not possible to say with authority which 9th move for White is objectively the strongest.

9 ... Nc6  
 10 Rc1

Again as per our plan and containing the positional threat 11 d5. Instead inferior is 10 Rd1?! because of 10 ... Bg4 11 Bc4 Rd8!. After 12 Bd5 0-0 13 0-0 cxd4! 14 cxd4 Rxd5! 15 exd5 Qxd5 Black had more than enough compensation for the sacrificed Exchange, Todorovic-

Plachetka, Zemun 1980. However, worth consideration is 10 Rb1!?, a suggestion by Polish GM Schmidt. After 10 ... cxd4 11 cxd4 Qxd2+ 12 Kxd2 the endgame is similar to our main line.

10 ... cxd4  
 11 cxd4 Qxd2+  
 12 Kxd2



With the move order chosen, Black has forced White's king to recapture, thereby increasing Black's potential for counterplay. The other side of the coin is that because of the presence of Black's knight on c6, White may be able to execute the d5 advance or the KB development to b5 with gain of time.

12 ... 0-0

Before he can counterattack Black should safeguard his king. Therefore premature is 12 ... f5? because of 13 d5!: 13 ... fxe4 14 Ng5

Nd4 15 Bxd4! Bxd4 16 Rxc8+! Rxc8 17 Bb5+ Kf8 18 Ne6+ Kf7 19 Nxd4, as in Napolitano–Arnlind, Correspondence 1970-71. After 19 ... Kf6 20 Re1 Ke5 the players agreed on a draw, though, as pointed out by Keene, White can retain a significant advantage with 21 Nf3+ Kxd5 22 Ng5.

### 13 Bb5

A logical move which develops as it attacks. However, very interesting is the direct 13 d5!? and after 13 ... Rd8, 14 Ke1!. In Kasparov–Romanishin, Moscow 1981, White built up a very strong initiative after 14 ... Na5 15 Bg5!? Bf6 16 Bd2 b6 17 Rc7!.

### 13 ... f5!

Passive play is fruitless:

(1) 13 ... Rd8?! 14 Bxc6 bxc6 15 Rc5! followed by 16 Kc3 (Ftacnik). White will first consolidate and only then embark on attacking Black's weak c- and a-pawns.

(2) 13 ... Bd7?! 14 d5 Rfd8 15 Ke2! Nd4+ 16 Nxd4 Bxd4 17 Bxd7 Bxe3 18 Rc7 Bb6 19 Rxb7 with a healthy pawn advantage (Keene).

### 14 exf5

After 14 d5? Black has the luxury of gaining the advantage in two ways: 14 ... fxe4 15 dxc6 exf3 16 gxf3 bxc6 17 Rxc6 Bb7 18 Rc7 Rad8+ 19 Kc2 Bxf3, Ligterink-

Smejkal, Amsterdam II, 1980 or 14 ... Rd8 15 Ke2 fxe4 16 Ng5 Nb4 17 Bc4 Nxd5 18 Nxe4 e6, Plachetka-Smejkal, Trnava 1980.

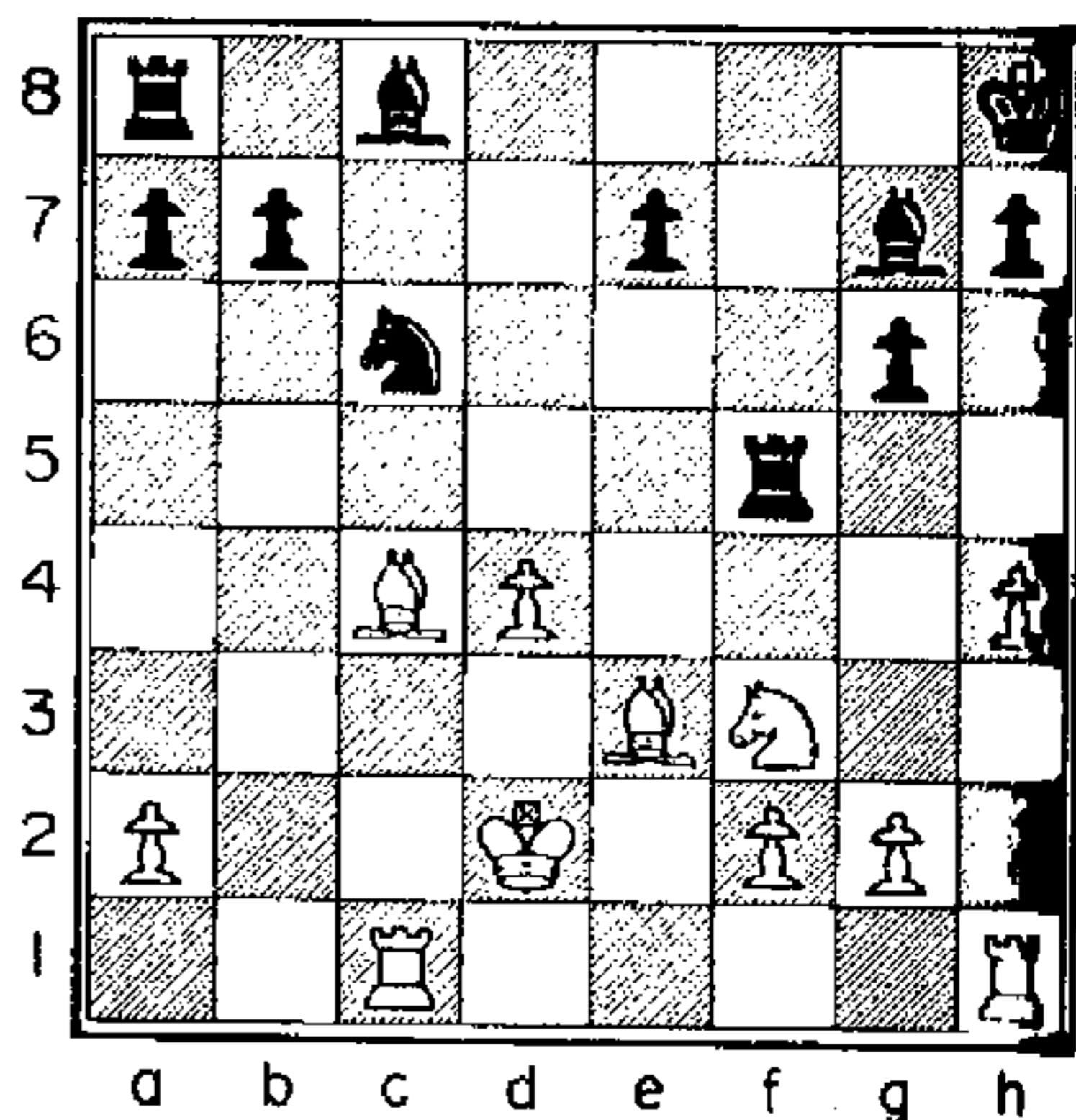
### 14 ... Rxf5 15 Bc4+

The open lines and active position give Black more than enough compensation for the pawn after 15 Bxc6?! bxc6 16 Rxc6 Ra5.

### 15 ... Kh8

The alternative is 15 ... e6. In Rajkovic–Jansa, Kladovo 1980, White achieved an advantage after 16 Ke2 Bd7 17 Rhd1 Re8 18 h3 Ra8? 19 Kf1 Ne7 20 Bd2 Ra4 21 Bb3 Re8 22 Re1! Nf5 23 d5 e5 24 Rc7. However, according to Jansa, Black can improve on his 18th move with either 18 ... Ne7 or 18 ... Na8 19 Bd3 Bb5 — in each case having approximately equal chances.

### 16 h4



This kingside demonstration comes to nothing. Therefore better is the positional 16 Ke2 followed by 17 Rhd1 with chances for a slight advantage.

16 ...	Bd7
17 h5	Rxh5
18 Rxh5	gxh5
19 d5	Ne5
20 Be2	Rd8!
21 Ke1	Bg4!
22 Rc7	

In this unbalanced position chances are approximately equal. With the coming double exchange Black makes his h-pawn a passed one.

22 ...	Nxf3+
23 Bxf3	Bxf3
24 gxf3	Bf6

Obviously 24 ... Rxd5?? loses to 25 Rc8+.

25 Rxb7	a5
---------	----

Again not 25 ... Rxd5? since after 26 Rxa7 White's a-pawn is much more dangerous than Black's h pawns.

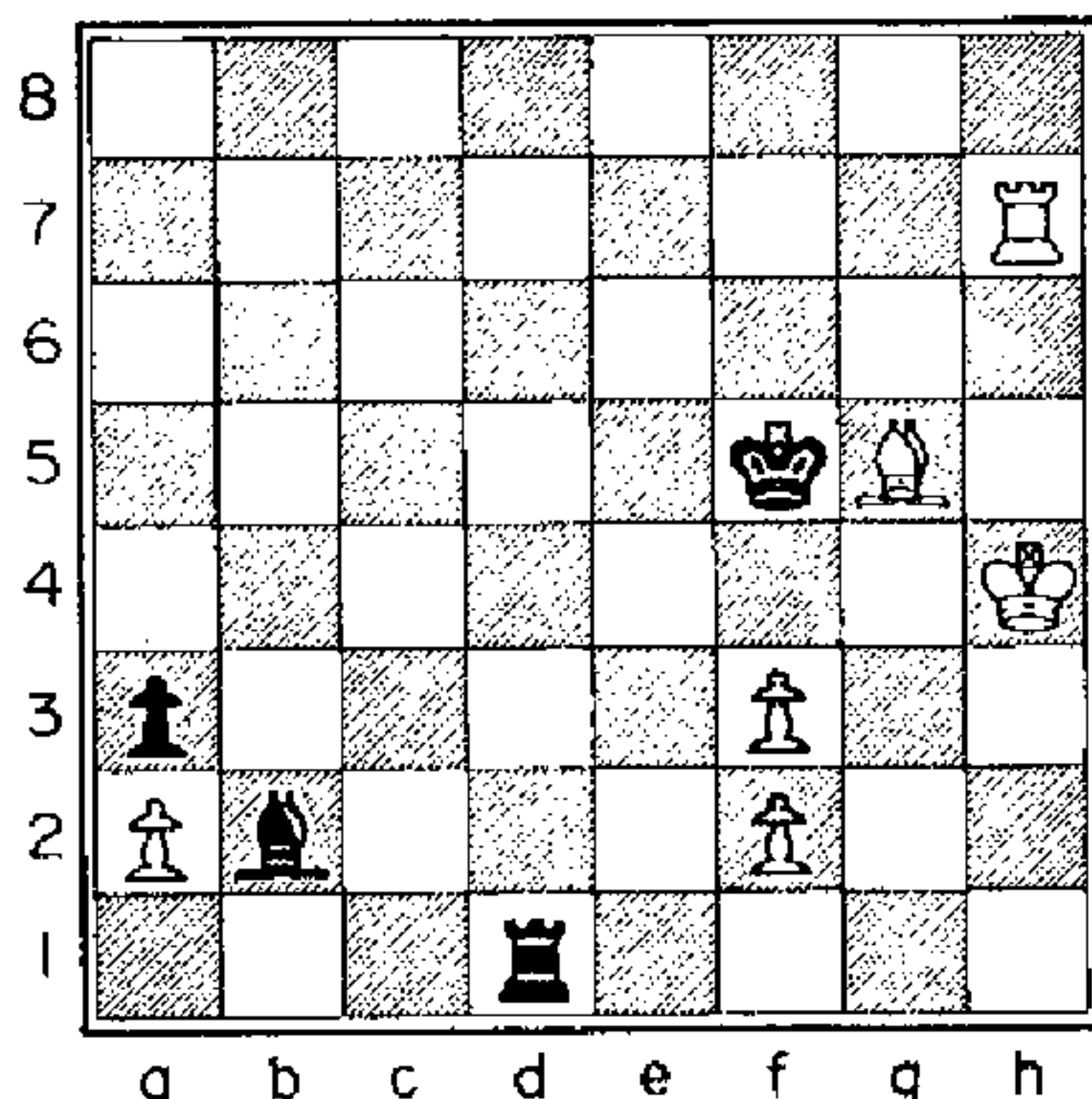
26 Rb5	h4?!
--------	------

More accurate is the immediate 26 ... a4 with full equality. As it turns out, Black's h-pawn is much more vulnerable on h4 than it would have been on h5. Of course, after 26 ... a4, silly is 27 d6? since this gives Black a nice passed d-pawn after 27 ... exd6 28 Rxh5 d5.

27 Kf1	a4
28 Kg2	Rc8!
29 Rb4!	a3
30 Rb3	Bb2
31 Kh3	Kg7
32 Bg5?!	

White's plan of going for the e-pawn is harmless, because Black gains in turn the d-pawn and active rook play. Correct is the simple 32 Kxh4 and a small edge by virtue of the extra doubled pawn.

32 ...	Rc7
33 Kxh4	Kg6
34 Rb6+	Kf5
35 Re6	Rd7
36 Rxe7	Rxd5
37 Rxh7	Rd1!



With both sides in horrible time pressure, a nasty threat: 38 ... Rh1+. Mandatory now is 38 Rf7+ Kg6 39 Rf8!. White then saves the piece since 39 ... Rh1+ 40 Kg4 Rg1+ 41 Kh4 Rxc5? loses to



42 Rg8+ Bg7 43 Rxg7+!. After 41 Kh4 Black should take the draw with 41 ... Rh1+ etc. Instead dangerous is 41 ... Ra1?! (Or immediately 39 ... Ra1?!) because of 42 f4! Rxa2 43 f5+ and White's f-pawn is at least as strong as Black's a-pawn.

**38 Rh6??**

Saves the rook but at the cost of the bishop.

<b>38 ...</b>	<b>Rh1+</b>
<b>39 Kg3</b>	<b>Rg1+</b>
<b>40 Kh2</b>	<b>Rxg5</b>
<b>41 Rb6</b>	<b>Be5+</b>
<b>White</b>	
<b>resigns</b>	

# 10

## Queen's Indian Defense: Normal Variation

**1 d4                    Nf6**  
**2 c4                    e6**  
**3 Nf3**

This is the safest and least committing move and has recently become very popular in master play. After the sharper 3 Nc3 (pressure on d5 and e4!) Black can choose the unbalancing Nimzo-Indian Defense (3 ... Bb4) and this has led to good results for Black.

**3 ...                    b6**

Since White has momentarily ignored the important d5 and e4 central squares, Black plans to bear down on this diagonal via his fianchettoed QB. Black can, of course, play 3 ... Bb4+, but here it lacks the power of the Nimzo-Indian since White doesn't have to proceed with 4 Nc3 but can instead choose between the safe and sound 4 Bd2 and 4 Nbd2. In either case, White

reaches a strategically clear position with a slight edge.

Very solid Blacks can also transpose into the Queen's Gambit Declined with 3 ... d5. Black can also try to transpose into the Benoni by playing 3 ... c5 and hoping for 4 d5, but White can ignore this invitation to strategic complications with 4 Nc3 or 4 g3.

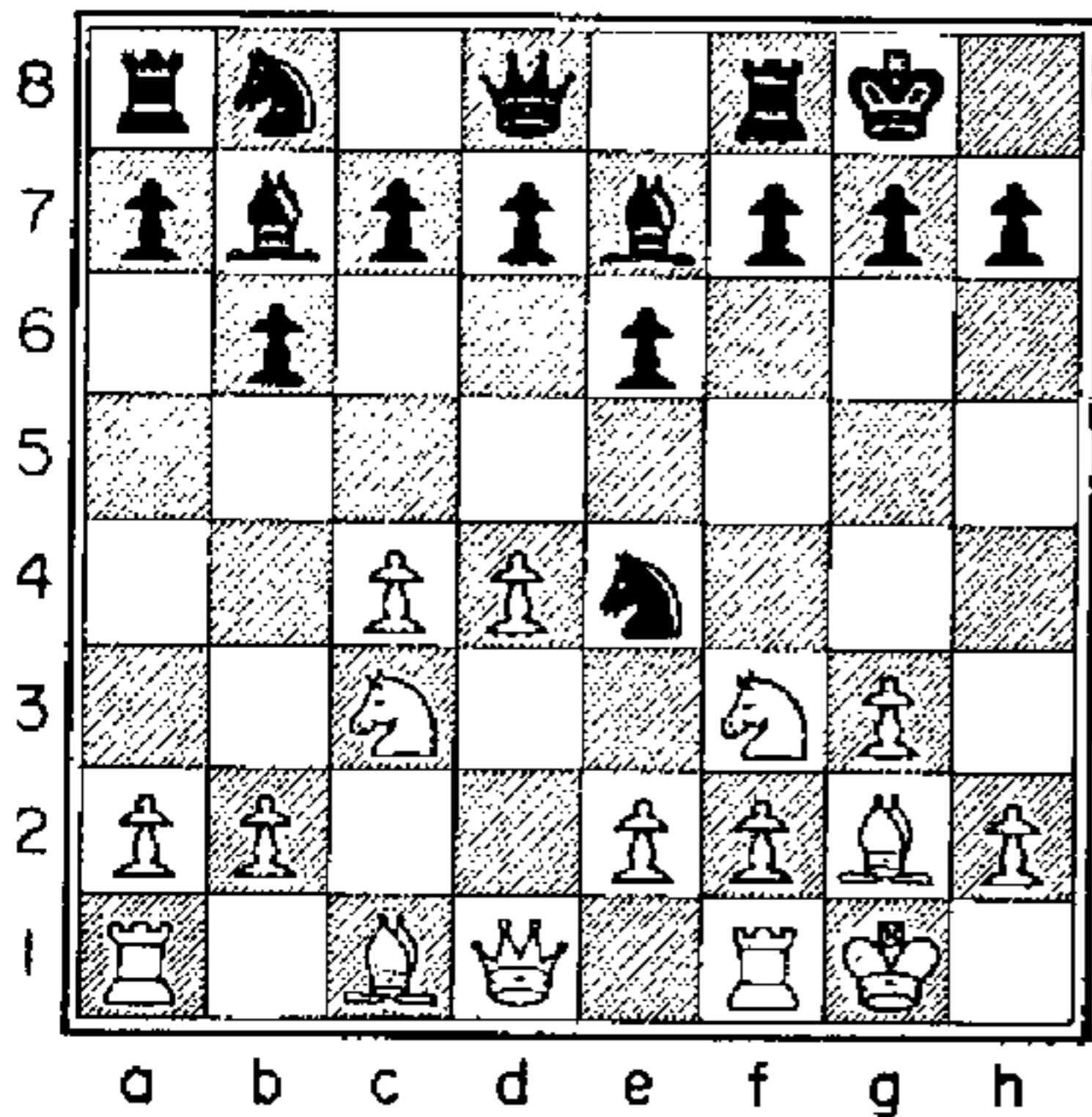
**4 g3**

Getting ready to immediately oppose Black's QB is the most common plan and is strategically flawless. Moreover, the resultant positions make it relatively easy for White to play sensible moves.

**4 ...                    Bb7**

Leading to the normal variation(s), this is the most logical and popular move. However, the outlandish looking 4 ... Ba6 is also playable. White's steadiest response then is the simple 5 b3.

5 Bg2            Be7  
6 0-0            0-0  
7 Nc3            Ne4



Retaining control of e4 is Black's primary strategic objective in the Queen's Indian and the text move is Black's most thematic plan. Black can also play 7 ... d5, leading to a position which usually results from the Catalan Opening (1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 e6 3 g3 d5 4 Bg2 Nf6 5 Nf3 Be7 6 0-0 b6 7 Nc3 Bb7). With 8 Ne5! White retains a typical advantage.

Now the main lines start with 8 Qc2 Nxc3 9 Qxc3. Also fairly common is 8 Bd2. Both 8 Qc2 and 8 Bd2 are good, yet the resulting play is strategically rather sophisticated. There is, however, a good and strategically clear plan:

8 Nxe4!            Bxe4  
9 Nh4!?

A recent sophisticated discovery by GM Portisch, allowing White to

achieve apparently by force the "desired" position occurring after White's 10th. The commonly played move is 9 Ne1, and after 9 ... Bxg2 10 Nxc3 our basic position has been reached. However, after 9 Ne1 Black has the option of 9 ... d5!?. Then 10 cxd5 is completely harmless, e.g. 10 ... Bxg2! 11 Nxc3 Qxd5 12 Be3 Rd8 13 Qa4 Nd7 14 Rac1 c5 15 Rfd1 Qb7 16 dxc5 Nxc5 17 Rxd8+ Rxd8 18 Qc4 Ne4, draw, Andersson-Korchnoi, London 1980. Therefore, to retain chances for an initiative, White must try 10 f3!? Bg6 11 cxd5!? exd5 12 Nd3, as in Antoshin-Makarichev, Frunze (USSR) 1979. This, however, leads to very complicated, difficult-to-judge possibilities.

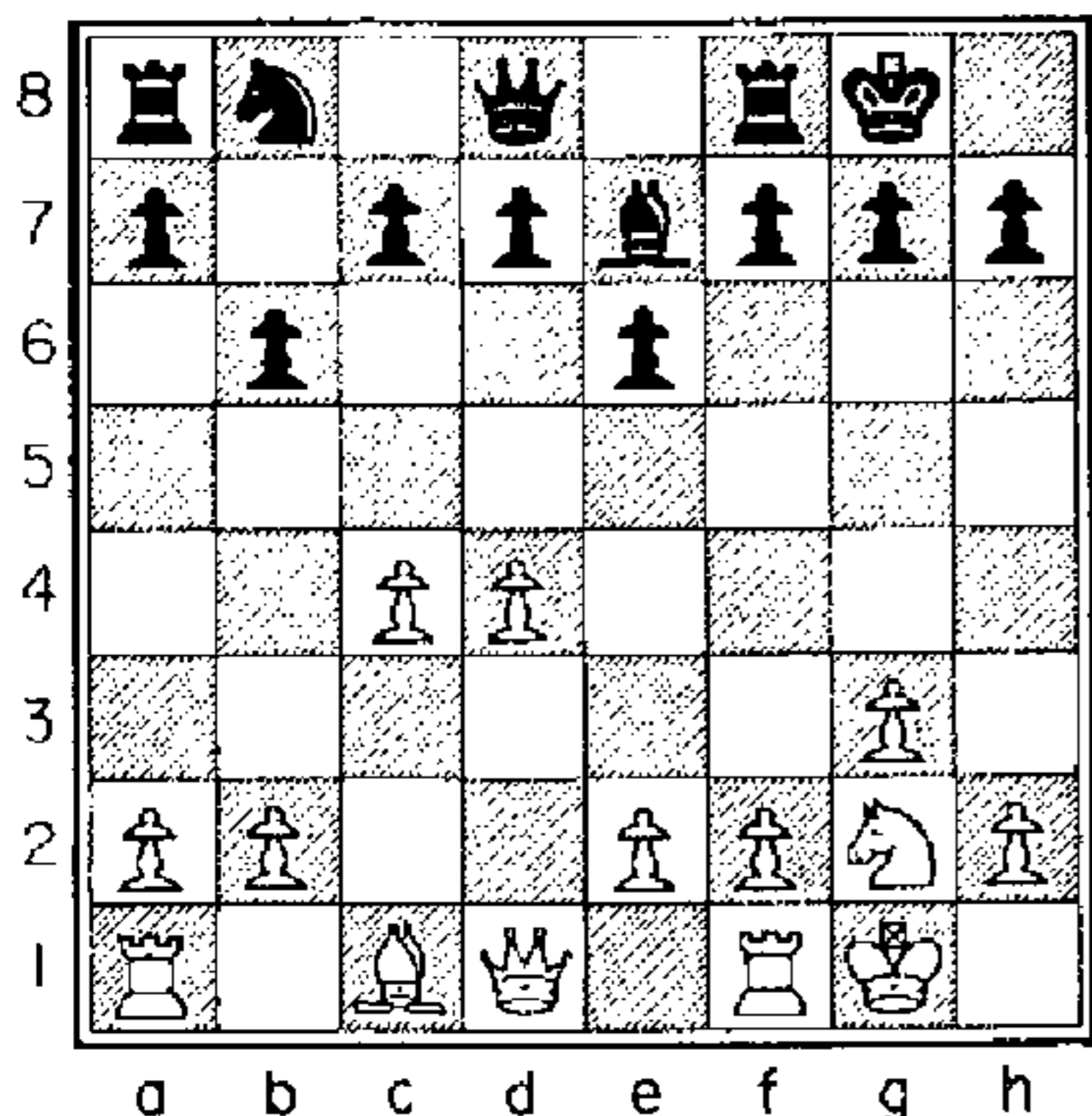
9 ...            Bxg2

Now 9 ... d5? can be met by 10 f3! Bg6 11 Nxc3 hxg6 12 cxd5! exd5 (12 ... Qxd5?? 13 f4) 13 f4!. Not only is Black's d-pawn vulnerable but White will break open Black's kingside with f5 and obtain a significant advantage.

At first glance 9 ... f5 looks dubious since after 10 Bxe4 fxe4 11 Qc2! d5 12 Ng2 Black's d- and e-pawn complex appears vulnerable. However after 12 ... Nc6! 13 Be3 Na5 14 b3 Rc8 15 Rad1 Qe8 16 f3? exf3 17 exf3 dxc4 18 Nf4 (18 bxc4 Qc6) 18 ... cxb3 19 axb3 Bd6 Black had a large advantage and went on to win in Portisch-Christiansen,

Mar del Plata 1981. I do expect Portisch to come up with a meaningful strengthening of this line.

**10 Nxc2**



The double exchanges have led to two clear results: (1) The position has become simplified, and (2) Black has lost control over e4. As a matter of fact, White is now ready to obtain a significant central superiority with 11 e4. If Black decides to ignore this, the following lines can occur:

(1) **10 ... Nc6:** 11 d5 Na5 12 b3 exd5 13 Qxd5 Bf6 14 Rb1 Re8, Lukmakov–Gulko, Eravan 1976. By playing 15 Nf4 White can ensure a steady advantage.

(2) **10 ... c5:** 11 d5 Bf6 12 e4! Re8 13 Ne3 d6 14 Rb1 Na6 15 Nc2 Nc7 16 b4, Lengyel–Portisch, Budapest 1970. White’s spatial edge gives him a slight, yet clear, advantage.

(3) **10 ... d6:** This has been played a lot in master circles in order to keep the position as flexible and unbalanced as possible, thereby increasing Black’s potential winning chances. Yet the White central superiority that it allows (almost encourages!) tips the scales too much in White’s favor. One example: 11 e4! Bf6 12 d5 Re8 13 f3!? c6 14 Rb1! exd5 15 cxd5 c5 16 Bd2 Nd7 17 Bc3 b5 18 Ne3, Kuligowski–Andersson, Polonica Zdroj 1978. White’s central superiority gives him a comfortable plus and he went on to win in good style over the famous Swedish GM. This was the only game Andersson lost at Polonica and again illustrates the dangers of playing for a win by utilizing non-best moves.

**10 ... d5!**

The above discussion should have made clear the need for Black to reestablish control over e4.

**11 Qa4!**

Applying pressure to Black’s queenside while protecting the c-pawn. Nothing else offers prospects for an advantage. Black’s three most important moves are 11 ... c6, 11 ... Qd7 and 11 ... dxc4. Each of these will be investigated in depth, using an illustrative game. Other logical plans are:

(1) 11 ... **Qe8**: 12 Qxe8 Rxe8  
13 cxd5 exd5 14 Rd1, with an end-  
game similarly favorable for White  
as after 11 ... Qd7, Filip-Taimanov,  
Kharkov 1966.

(2) 11 ... **Bf6**: 12 Rd1! with  
White retaining a slight edge.

(3) 11 ... **c5**: 12 Be3 cxd4! (The  
endgames after 12 ... Qd7 13 Qxd7  
are again favorable for White)  
13 Bxd4 dxc4 and Black has  
excellent prospects for eventual  
equality after both 14 Rfd1 Qc8 and  
14 Qxc4 Qc8.

Black's most solid equalizing  
methods in this variation are  
11 ... c5 and the to-be-discussed  
11 ... dxc4. Yet it must be  
emphasized that in these lines a  
draw is the ultimate that Black can  
expect. Therefore White risks  
nothing and if Black plays perfectly,  
he will draw — so be it.

### 10.1 11 ... c6:

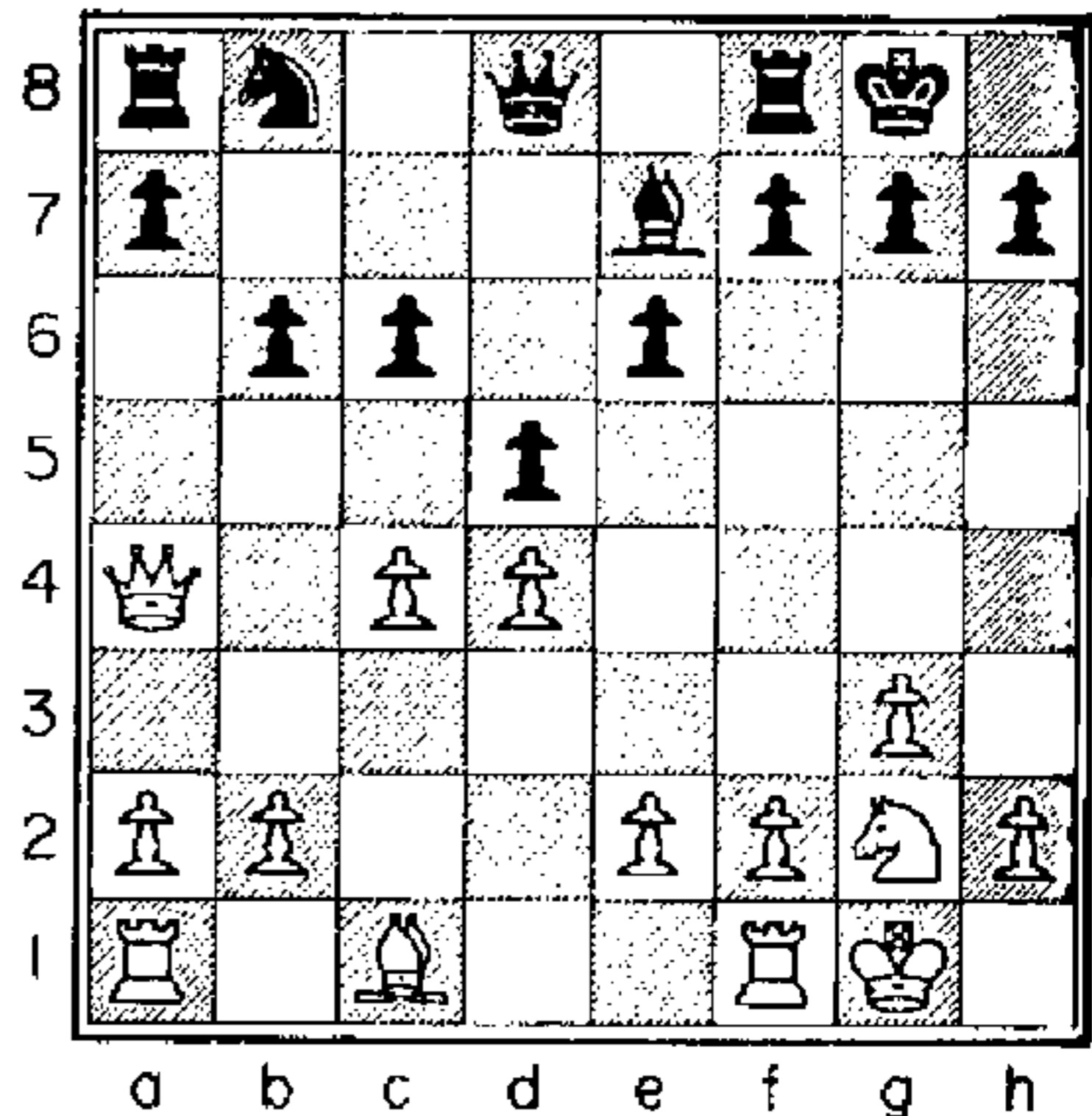
**U. ANDERSSON-JOVČIĆ,  
BELGRADE 1977**

*(See next diagram)*

The primary purpose of 11 ... c6  
is to enable the symmetrical recap-  
ture ... cxd5, in case of White's  
cxd5. This would bring about a sym-  
metrical, approximately equal posi-  
tion.

**12 Bf4                      Qd7!**

Black must take immediate steps  
to try to develop his knight. Too



slow are both 12 ... Qe8?! 13 Rfd1  
a5 14 Rac1, Liebert-Mititelu,  
Luhačovice 1971 and 12 ... Bd6?!  
13 Rac1 dxc4 14 Qxc4 a5 15 Rfd1,  
Podgaets-Holmov, USSR 1976. In  
each case Black has weakened his  
queenside some more, without  
receiving anything in turn.

**13 Rac1                      b5**  
**14 cxb5                      cxb5**  
**15 Qc2**

If 15 Qa5, Black can resist that  
attempt at infiltrating along the  
c-file with 15 ... Bd8 16 Bc7 Bf8!  
17 e3 Rc8 (Andersson).

**15 ...                      Bf6**  
**16 Rfd1                      Na6**

Just in the nick of time, before  
White can play 17 Qc7. White must  
now continue with his c-file infiltra-  
tion, as otherwise after 17 ... Rfc8  
Black will be completely secure.

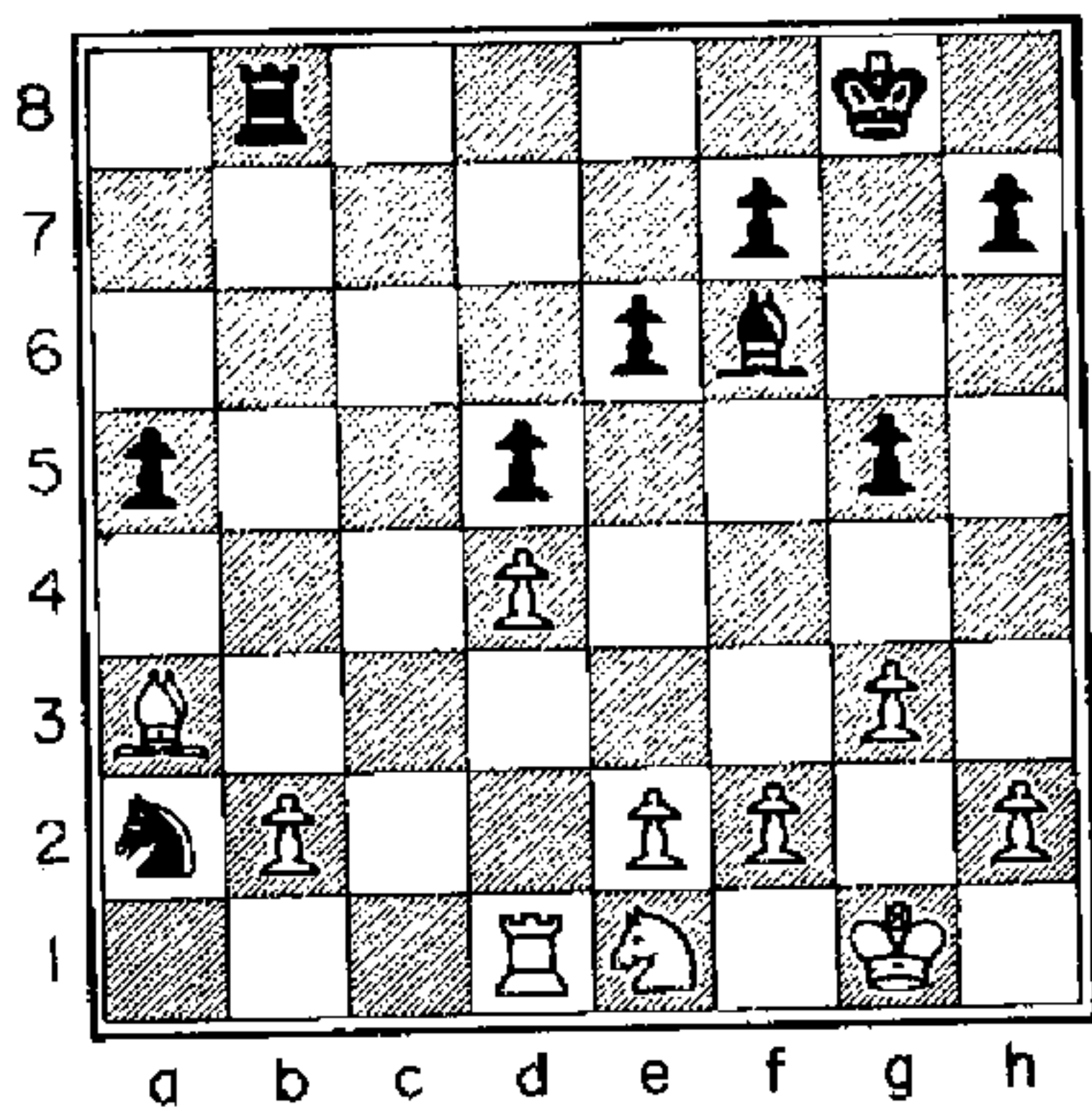
17 Qc6!            Qxc6  
 18 Rxc6            Nb4  
 19 Rc5             Nxa2  
 20 Rxb5            g5!

Even though Black's knight seems precariously placed, its safety can be assured, thanks to this fine maneuver. Inferior is 20 ... a5? 21 Bc7! and the a-pawn will be lost.

21 Bd6

After 21 Bc7, Andersson gives the following equalizing line: 21 ... Rfc8 22 Rb7 Nb4 23 Ne1 Nc6 24 e3 Nd8 25 Bxd8 Bxd8.

21 ...            Rfd8  
 22 Ba3            a5  
 23 Ne1            Rdb8  
 24 Rxb8           Rxb8



Up to now Black has played perfectly. On a strictly objective evaluation basis, this position should be rated as equal. Still whatever advantage could exist

would be in White's favor, since Black's a-pawn is somewhat more vulnerable than White's b-pawn and after a ... Nb4, Bxb4 exchange, White's knight would be a more flexible minor piece than Black's bishop. Black's practical difficulties are well illustrated by the speed with which he loses this endgame.

25 e3            Rb3?

Starting here Black loses his way. The active looking text just serves to misplace the rook. Black could either immediately return with the knight (25 ... Nb4) or work to exchange the bishops with 25 ... Bg7 and 26 ... Bf8.

26 Kf1!        Kg7?!

Here and over the next two moves, retreating the rook is the best plan.

27 Nc2        Kg6  
 28 Ke2        h5  
 29 Kd2        Kf5?

Loses by force. Required are either 29 ... Rb8 or the active 29 ... e5!?

30 Ra1!        Nb4  
 31 Bxb4        axb4  
 32 Rb1!

Threatening to win the trapped rook with 33 Na1.

32 ...        Ke4  
 33 Ne1!

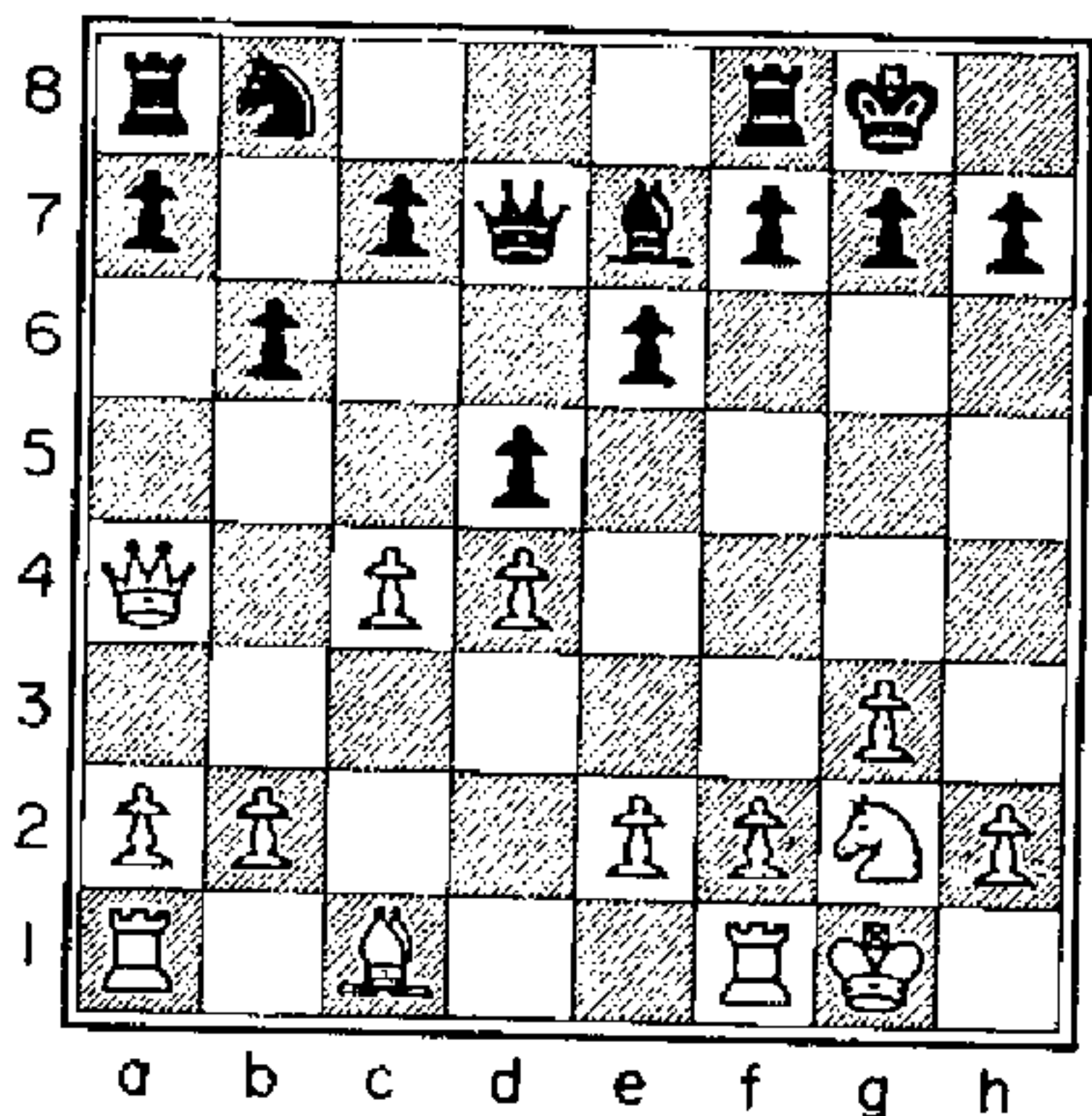
Threatening to win the trapped rook with 34 Kc2. Black's bishop sacrifice offers only a short term respite.

33 ...	Bxd4
34 exd4	Kxd4
35 Kc2	Kc4
36 Ra1!	d4
37 Ra7	d3+
38 Nxd3	
Black	
resigns	

The threat is 39 Rc7+; 38 ... Rxd3 39 Rc7+ Kd4 40 Rd7+ wins the wayward rook.

### 10.2 11 ... Qd7:

#### L. POLUGAEVSKY-H. MECKING, MATCH GAME NO. 11, 1977



Black decides to shake off the queenside pressure by exchanging queens. He enters an endgame which he anticipates will be approx-

imately equal. Yet as we shall see, in practice White's chances are clearly superior.

12 Qxd7	Nxd7
13 cxd5!	

To hope for an advantage it is necessary to leave Black's center pawn formation inflexible. There is nothing in 13 Ne3 dxc4! 14 Nxc4 c5, with equality in Szabo-Ribli, Budapest 1973.

13 ...	exd5
14 Bf4	

Much played here, in order to force the c-pawn forward and thus hopefully make Black's center pawn more vulnerable. Still the immediate 14 Be3!? is worth a careful evaluation. If then 14 ... c5, we have reached by transposition a position possible after 11 ... c5 (12 Be3 Qd7 13 Qxd7 Nxd7 14 cxd5 exd5), which is known to be favorable for White: 15 Nf4! Nf6 16 dxc5 bxc5 17 Rac1 and now:

(1) 17 ... d4 18 Bd2, followed by Nd3, as in Petrosian-Botvinnik, 1963 World Championship — and similar to what happens in our illustrative game.

(2) 17 ... Rfb8 18 Bxc5 Bxc5 19 Rxc5 Rxb2 20 Ra5! g5 21 Nxd5 Nxd5 22 Rxd5 h6 23 Rc1 with initiative in the double rook endgame, Furman-Antoshin, USSR 1964.

If Black does not respond to 14 Be3 with 14 ... c5, then White can aim for pressure along the c-file with 15 Rac1, 16 Rc6 etc.

**14 ... Bf6**

The alternative is 14 ... c5 after which the immediate 15 dxc5 Nxc5! does give Black excellent prospects for reaching full equality, e.g.:

(1) 16 Be5 Rfe8 17 Rfd1 Bf8! 18 Rxd5 f6 19 Bc3 Rxe2 20 Re1, Draw, Polugaevsky-Smyslov, Sochi 1974.

(2) 16 Rad1 Rfd8 17 Be5 f6 18 Bc3 (or 18 Bd4 Ne6 19 Nf4 Nxf4 20 gxf4 Kf7, draw, Bilek-Lengyel, Bad Pyrmont 1970) 18 ... Ne6! 19 Nf4 Nxf4 20 gxf4 Rac8 21 Rd3, Smyslov-Holmov, 1969 USSR Championship and now, with the careful 21 ... Kf7, Black could have equalized.

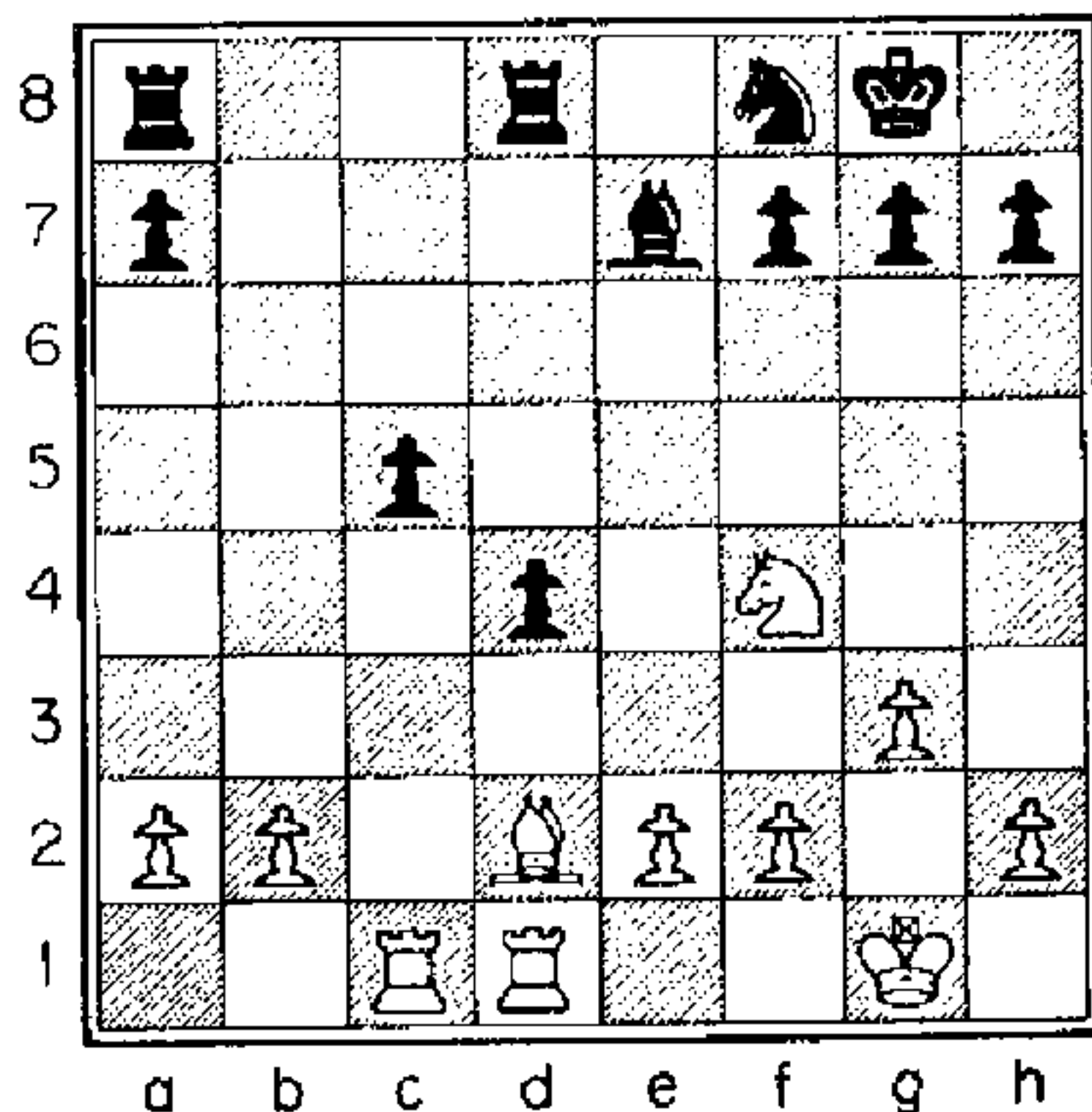
Therefore it seems better to apply immediate pressure on the d-pawn with 15 Ne3! and if then 15 ... Bf6, 16 dxc5 Nxc5 17 Nxd5 Bxb2 18 Rab1 with some initiative for White because of Black's precariously placed bishop.

**15 Rfd1 c5**  
**16 Be3!**

Giving Black no time to establish a queenside pawn majority with 16 ... c4? because 17 Nf4 wins the d-pawn.

**16 ... Rfd8**  
**17 Nf4 Nf8**

**18 dxc5!**            **d4**  
**19 Bd2**             **bxc5**  
**20 Rac1**            **Be7**



A favorable situation for White, since Black's c-pawn is clearly vulnerable and if the c-pawn is dislodged, then the d-pawn can become weak.

**21 Nd3**

Also good is 21 Ba5 Rd7 22 Rc4!, as in Ivkov-Polugaevsky, Hilversum 1973. After 22 ... Ne6, White should not have, however, rushed things with 23 b4?! (allowing Black to eventually equalize and draw on move 41), but instead first increased the pressure with 23 Nd3.

**21 ... Nd7**

This passive placement is the best there is since after 21 ... Ne6?! White enlarges his advantage with 22 Ne5!.



Clearly White's next objective now is to undermine the support of Black's d-pawn. Yet how to accomplish this? Analysis by GM Bagirov subsequently showed that the most effective method is 22 b4!, e.g. 22 ... Rac8 23 bxc5 Nxc5 24 Nxc5 Rxc5 25 Rxc5 Bxc5 26 Rc1 Bb6 27 a4!, with a strong initiative for White.

<b>22 e3?!</b>	<b>Rac8!</b>
<b>23 exd4</b>	<b>cxd4</b>

What has occurred is that White's e-pawn has been exchanged for Black's c-pawn, thereby turning the d-pawn into a passed pawn. It is not particularly weak and, being passed, helps to contain some of White's activity. White does have a queenside majority, but there is no good way to immediately mobilize it.

White should now centralize the king with 24 Kf1!, retaining perhaps a tiny edge. Giving Black control of the c-file with the text move can not lead to anything positive.

<b>24 Rxc8</b>	<b>Rxc8</b>
<b>25 Kf1</b>	<b>f6!</b>
<b>26 Rc1</b>	<b>Rxc1+</b>
<b>27 Bxc1</b>	<b>Kf7</b>
<b>28 b3</b>	<b>Ke6</b>

The d-pawn is secure enough and Black's more active king ensures him full equality.

<b>29 Ke2</b>	<b>g5!</b>
<b>30 Bd2</b>	<b>Kd5</b>

<b>31 Bb4</b>	<b>Bxb4</b>
<b>32 Nxb4+</b>	<b>Kc5</b>
<b>33 Nd3+</b>	<b>Kd5</b>
<b>34 g4?!</b>	

White overvalues his prospects. In order is the checking and drawing 34 Nb4+.

<b>34 ...</b>	<b>Nc5!</b>
<b>35 f3</b>	<b>Ne6</b>
<b>36 Nf2?!</b>	

White keeps asking for trouble. Keeping the status quo with 36 Kd2 retains the balance.

<b>36 ...</b>	<b>Nb4!</b>
<b>37 a3</b>	<b>Nc2</b>
<b>38 Ne4</b>	<b>Ke5</b>
<b>39 a4</b>	<b>Nb4</b>

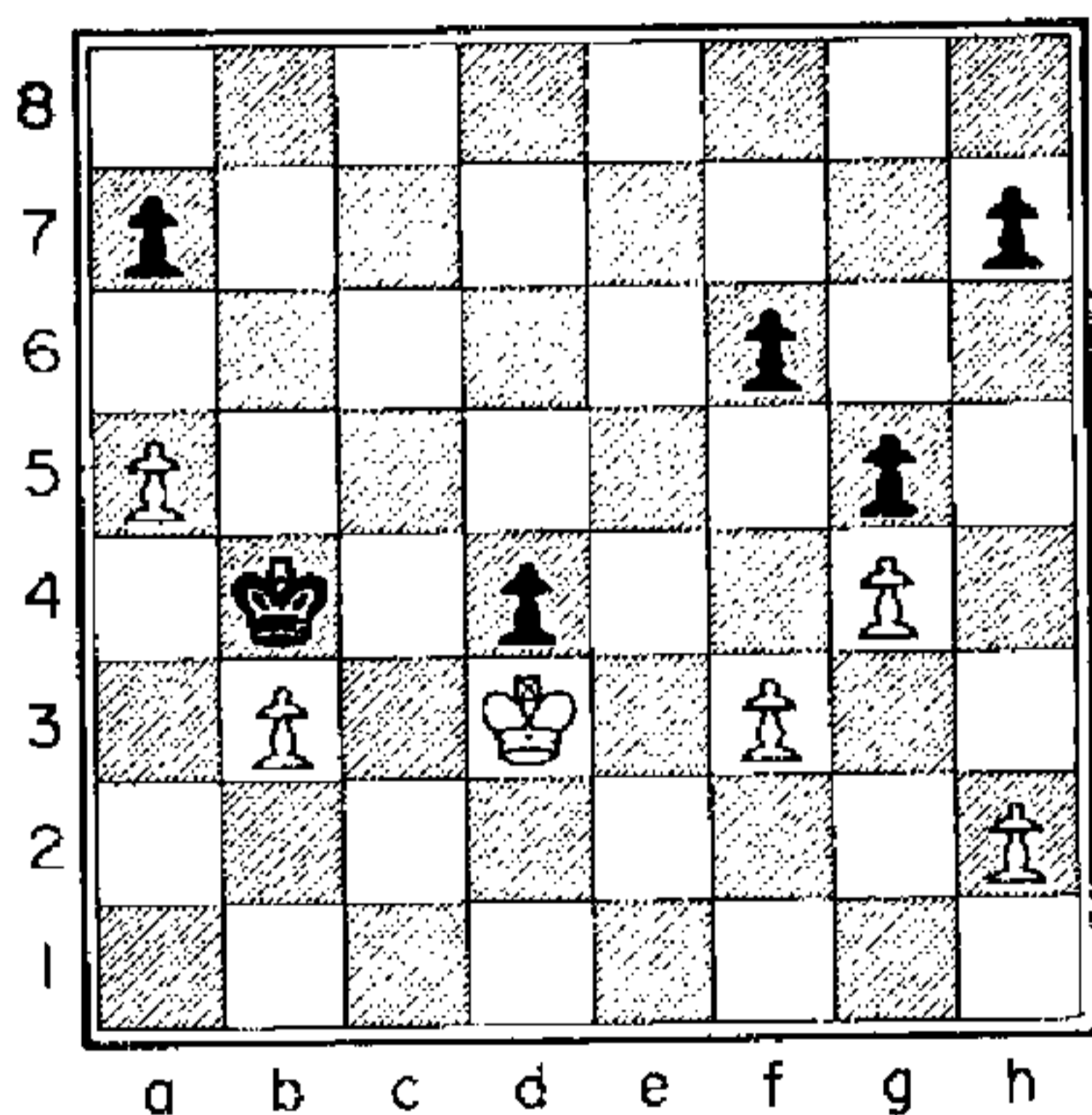
White's majority is rather lame and Black's passed pawn and active king give him the edge.

<b>40 Nc5</b>	<b>Kd6</b>
<b>41 Nd3!</b>	<b>Nxd3?!</b>

The K + P endgame is — if anything — slightly favorable to White. Surely the knight should have been retained. According to Bagirov the critical line is as follows: 41 ... Nc6! 42 Nf2 Kc5! 43 Nd3+! (but not 43 Ne4+? Kb4 44 Kd3 Kxb3 45 Nxf6 because of 45 ... h6! 46 Ng8 Kxa4 47 Nxh6 Kb3!) 43 ... Kd5 44 Nf2 a5 45 Ne4 h6! 46 Nxf6+ Kc5 47 Kd3 Kb4 48 Ng8 Kxb3 49 Nxh6 Kxa4 50 Nf7 Kb3 51 Nxc5 a4 52 Ne4 Nb4+ 53 Kxd4 a3

54 Nd2+ Kc2 55 Kc4!! a2  
 (55 ... Kxd2 56 Kb3 a2 57 Kb2  
 draws) 56 Nb3 Nc6 57 Na1+ Kb2  
 58 Kd3! Ne5+ 59 Kd2 Nxf3+  
 60 Kd1 Kxa1 61 Kc2!. White just  
 escapes with a draw since his king  
 can not be prevented from shuttling  
 between c1 and c2.

42 Kxd3 Kc5  
 43 a5! Kb4



Black must go for the queenside,  
 leaving the kingside to White — for  
 continuing equality.

44 Kxd4 Kxb3

Obviously 44 ... Kxa5 45 Kc5! can  
 not give Black anything better than  
 the text.

45 Kd5 Kb4  
 46 a6! Kb5  
 47 Ke6 Kxa6  
 48 Kxf6 h6

48 ... Kb6?! leads to a slightly in-  
 ferior Q + P endgame after 49 Kxg5

a5 50 f4 a4 51 f5 a3 52 f6 a2 53 f7  
 a1=Q 54 f8=Q Qe5+ 55 Kh6  
 Qxh2+ 56 Kg7.

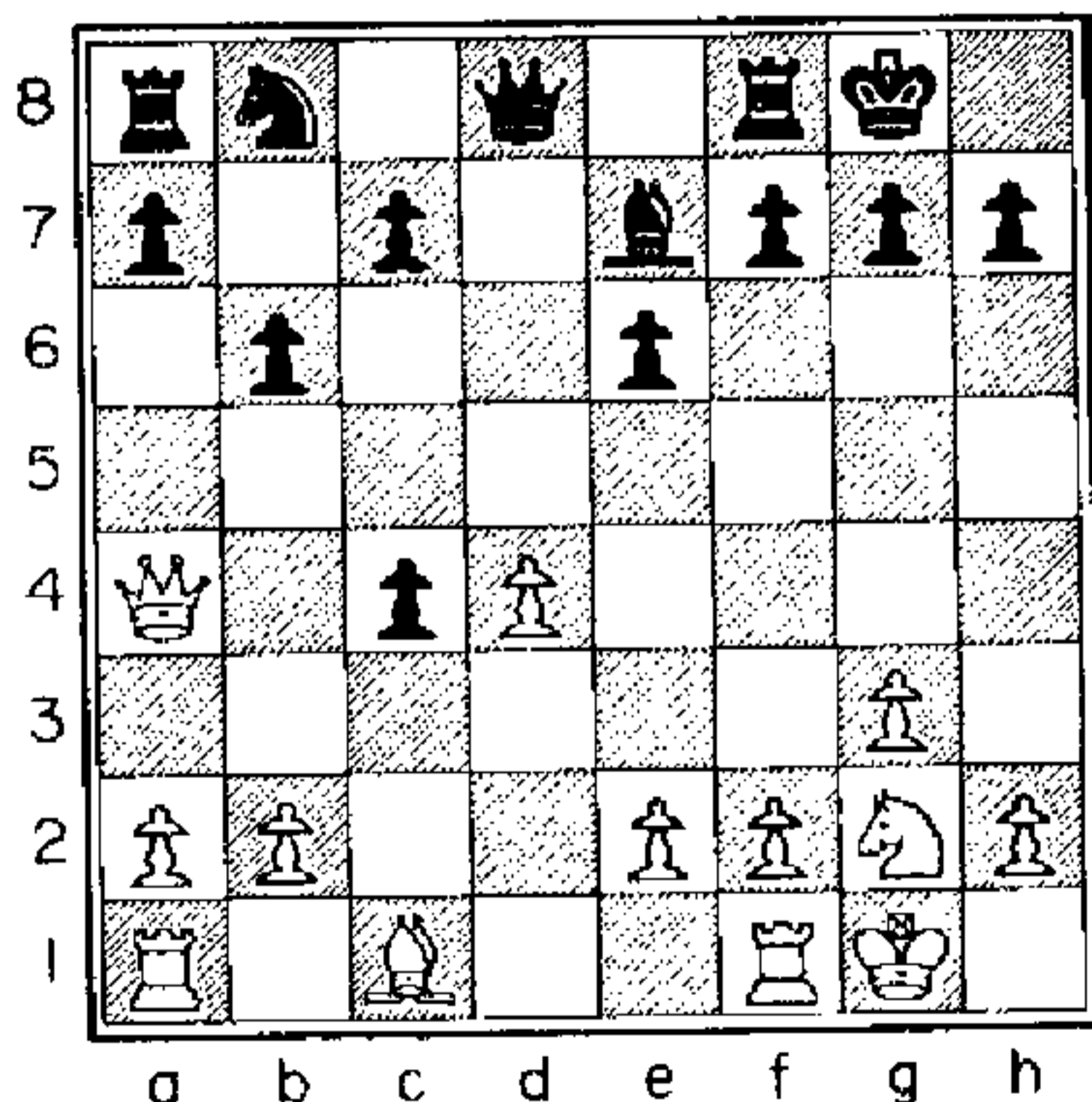
49 Ke5! Kb5  
 50 f4! gxf4

Definitely losing is 50 ... a5? 51 f5  
 a4 52 Kd4! Kb4 53 f6 a3 54 f7 a2  
 55 f8=Q+.

51 Kxf4 a5  
 52 Ke3 Kc5  
 53 h4 Kd5  
 54 Kd3 Ke5  
 Draw

Nothing but the kings will be left!

10.3 11 ... dxc4:  
 L. PORTISCH-A. KARPOV,  
 TILBURG 1980



With this and the following move  
 Black aims for total equality by a  
 symmetrical type of exchange of the  
 c- and d-pawns. This is Black's  
 most solid way of going for a draw;

however, the resulting positions offer no winning chances for Black.

**12 Qxc4           c5**  
**13 Be3**

There is little logic in furthering Black's development with 13 dxc5 Bxc5, since Black achieves easy equality after 14 Be3 Nd7 15 Rfd1 Qc8 16 Rac1 Bxe3, Popov–Parma, Copenhagen 1970.

**13 ...           cxd4**

In Krogius–Holmov, 1967 USSR Championship, Black played 13 ... Nd7. After 14 Rfd1 Qc8 15 Rac1 Qb7 16 dxc5 Nxc5 17 b4 the game was called a draw. Perhaps a bit prematurely since after 17 ... Na6 18 a3 the on-the-edge placement of Black's knight does give White a slight edge.

**14 Bxd4**

Since the pawn formations are inherently symmetrical, White must aim for an edge in development if he hopes for an advantage. Harmless is 14 Qxd4 Qxd4 15 Bxd4 Nc6 16 Bc3 Rfd8 with total equality in Adorjan–Sax, London 1975.

**14 ...           Qc8!**

At this moment Black must be very careful. Inferior is 14 ... Nd7? 15 Rfd1 Rc8 16 Qa4 and Black is

already subject to very unpleasant pressure, as in Krogius–Spassky, Sochi 1965.

**15 Rac1**

There is no great retreat square for White's queen, e.g. 15 Qb3 Nc6! or 15 Qa4 Qc6!.

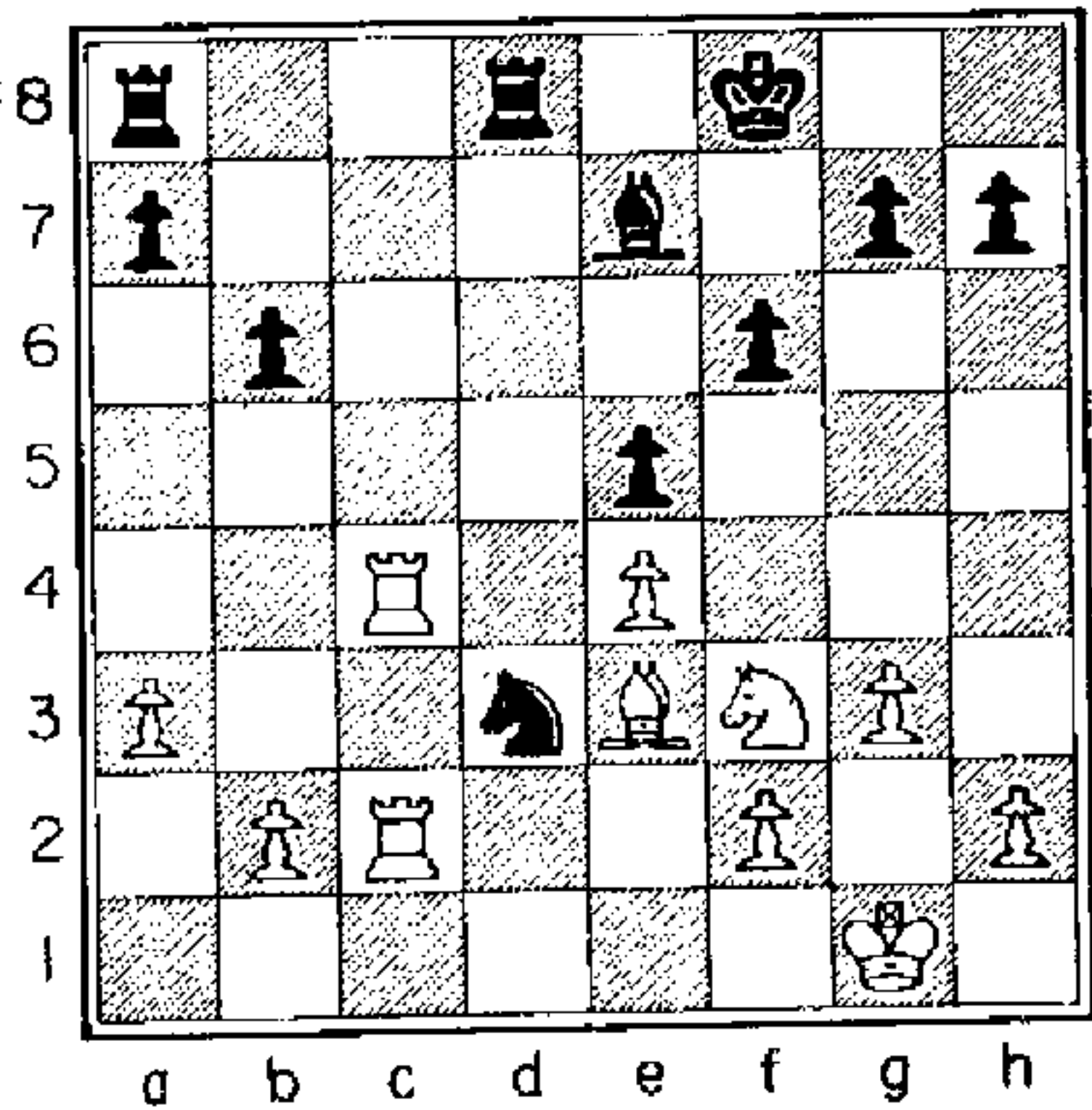
**15 ...           Qxc4**  
**16 Rxc4       Rd8**  
**17 Be3         Nd7**  
**18 Rfc1**

White controls the c-file and has a bit more active bishop. But, since Black has no fundamental weaknesses, there is no reason why — with continued careful play — he should not achieve full equality.

**18 ...           Kf8!**  
**19 Ne1**

That White needs to reposition his knight is clear, but the text allows Black to also improve the location of his knight. Perhaps 19 Nf4!? offered more of a chance to retain a tiny edge.

**19 ...           Nf6!**  
**20 Nf3         Nd5**  
**21 Bd4         f6**  
**22 e4          Nb4**  
**23 a3          Nd3**  
**24 R1c2       e5**  
**25 Be3**  
**Draw**



It is quite in order not to continue such a position against the World Champion. A purist could say, however, that White's control of the c-file gives him an edge somewhere between infinitesimal and tiny.

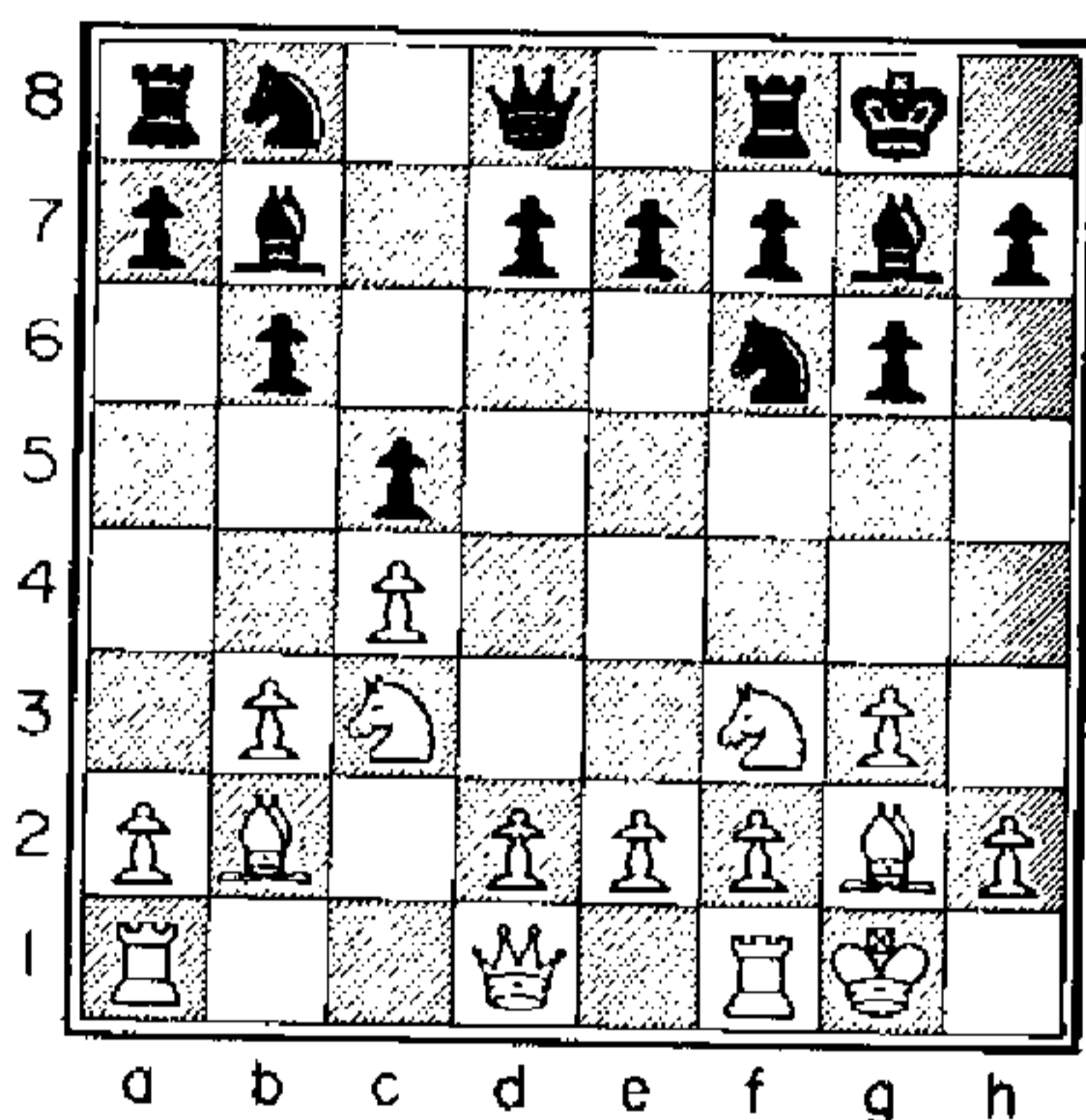
## English/Reti Opening: Mutual Double Fianchetto

1 c4                    c5  
2 Nf3                  Nf6  
3 g3

The first basic position in this opening scheme occurs after White's 8th move. As I shall illustrate at that point, there are many routes to that position. In heading for it White should, however, postpone the development of his QN until the QB fianchetto is complete. Therefore an inaccurate move order is 3 Nc3 b6 4 g3 Bb7 5 Bg2 g6 because now 6 b3?! is ineffective: 6 ... d5! 7 cxd5 Bg7! 8 Bb2 Nxd5. Black has gained — without any cost — good central presence and as was shown in Andersson-Korchnoi, Sao Paulo 1979, has full equality.

3 ...                    b6  
4 Bg2                  Bb7  
5 0-0                  g6  
6 b3                    Bg7  
7 Bb2                  0-0  
8 Nc3

(See next diagram)



Our first important position. Perhaps *the* single most important reason for the great *practical* significance of this position is the ease with which it occurs from many different move orders. Consider some of these:

(1) 1 Nf3 Nf6 2 b3 g6 3 Bb2 Bg7 4 g3 b6 5 Bg2 Bb7 6 0-0 c5 7 c4 0-0 8 Nc3.

(2) 1 c4 c5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 g3 g6 4 b3 Bg7 5 Bb2 b6 6 Bg2 Bb7 7 0-0 0-0 8 Nc3.

(3) 1 Nf3 c5 2 b3 Nf6 3 Bb2 g6 4 c4 Bg7 5 g3 b6 6 Bg2 Bb7 7 0-0 0-0 8 Nc3.

(4) 1 c4 c5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 b3 g6  
4 Bb2 Bg7 5 g3 b6 6 Bg2 Bb7 7 0-0  
0-0 8 Nc3.

As you can see, there are many specific differences regarding what gets done first, yet two major threads run across the field: each side wants to fianchetto both bishops and use the c-pawn for central influence.

What of the position itself? White has completed the development of all minor pieces in the central direction and has castled. There is nothing wrong in his camp. He throws the ball to Black, saying in effect: "What will you do now?" This kind of a flexible approach is very popular in master chess. Black now has to make the major decision regarding what kind of a central pawn formation to establish.

**8 ... d5**

Surely a logical advance; from a first look basis even a very strong one. Yet, as will be seen, White can handle it very well. It is hard to call 8 ... d5 inferior, yet Black's task will be much more difficult than he may anticipate. Significant alternatives are:

(1) **8 ... Ne4**: White plays 9 Qc2 and after the resulting exchange of the dark square bishops, White will have a slight edge because of the weakening of Black's kingside.

(2) **8 ... Nc6**: 9 d4! Nxd4 10 Nxd4 Bxg2 11 Kxg2 cxd4 12 Qxd4 d6

13 e4, with White's spatial advantage giving him a clear edge, as in Kottnauer-Sajtar, Zlin 1943.

(3) **8 ... d6**: 9 e3 Nbd7 10 d4 e6 11 Qe2 a6 12 e4 Re8 13 Rfd1 Qc7 14 Rac1 Rad8, Polugaevsky-Andersson, Las Palmas 1974. Black's position is very solid and he can look forward to equality.

(4) **8 ... Na6**: 9 d4 d5 10 Ne5! e6 (10 ... cxd4?! 11 Qxd4 Nb4 12 Rad1 Nd7 13 f4 is very good for White) 11 dxc5! bxc5?! (Required is 11 ... Nxc5, though after 12 cxd5 exd5 White will have pressure against the isolated d-pawn) 12 cxd5 exd5 13 Nd3! Qe7 14 Na4 Rac8 15 Rc1 Rfd8 16 Ba3 Ne4 17 Qe1!, Andersson-Miles, Malta Olympiad 1980. White's pressure on c5 was unbearable and he went on to win the pawn and game.

**9 Nxd5!**

But not 9 cxd5?! since after 9 ... Nxd5 White's QN is pinned and Black has ready equality. By transposition this position was reached in Andersson-Korchnoi, Sao Paulo 1979, quoted earlier. After 10 Rb1?! (better 10 Na4) 10 ... Nc7! Black's central superiority already gave him a slight advantage.

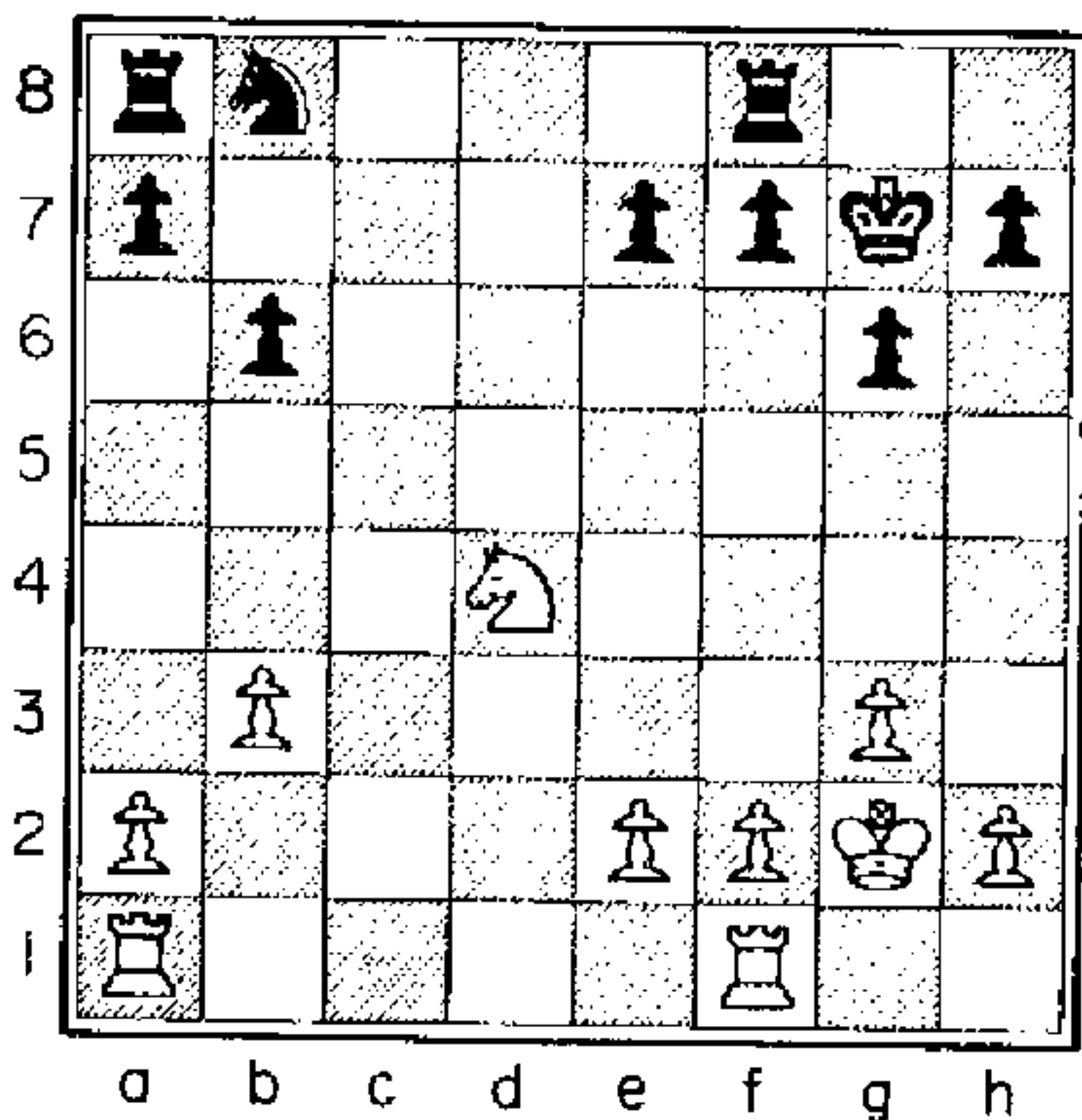
<b>9 ...</b>	<b>Nxd5</b>
<b>10 Bxg7</b>	<b>Kxg7</b>
<b>11 cxd5</b>	<b>Qxd5</b>

Bad is 11 ... Bxd5? 12 d4! as then 12 ... cxd4? 13 Qxd4 + Kg8 14 Rfd1 loses a piece for Black.

**12 d4!                      cxd4**

Leads to an inferior endgame. Therefore 12 ... Na6 has been recommended as better, though White can continue testing Black with the tricky 13 e4!?. Then 13 ... Qd6?! (13 ... Qxe4?? 14 Nh4) 14 e5! Qd8 (14 ... Qd7 15 dxc5! leads to a superior endgame) 15 Qe2! cxd4 16 Rfd1 (Pachman) leads to a clear advantage for White. GM Pachman suggests 13 ... Qd7 as the correct move, and after 14 d5, 14 ... e6!?. Still it seems to me that after 15 Ne5 Black is under some pressure, e.g. 15 ... Qd6 16 Nc4 Qd7 17 Qd2!.

**13 Qxd4+                      Qxd4**  
**14 Nxd4                      Bxg2**  
**15 Kxg2**



This is the second position in the double fianchetto system. Everything is symmetrical except that White's knight is powerfully

centralized on d4, whereas Black's is still home on b8. Master practice has shown that this factor, coupled to rapid mobilization of the rook along the open files, gives White a very pleasant endgame advantage. As a matter of fact, the illustrative games that follow are an excellent demonstration of how the single factor of a slight advantage in development can be exploited in an otherwise symmetrical position.

In Andersson-Ljubojevic, London 1980, the partners now agreed on a draw — quite surprising since Andersson both loves and is unsurpassed in playing out such endgames. Yet, as the tournament bulletin comments: "Still it was a nice day ...." (It was Saturday, April 12.)

Black now has the choice of aiming to first develop his knight or to limit the scope of White's knight. Thus the moves 15 ... Rc8, 15 ... Na6 and 15 ... a6 make sense and will be examined in turn.

**11.1 15 ... Rc8:  
 V. SMYSLOV-P. BENKO,  
 MONACO 1969**

Temporarily controlling the c-file and "threatening" the equalizing 16 ... Nc6.

**16 Rac1                      Nd7**

16 ... Na6 could transpose into the lines considered after 15 ... Na6.

**17 Rfd1 Nc5?!**

The attempt to blockade the c-file is easily swept away. Yet the alternatives are just marginally better:

(1) **17 ... Kf6 18 Nb5! Rxc1 19 Rxc1 Nc5 20 b4 Ne6 21 Rc6** with definite pressure by White, Portisch–Pachman, Sarajevo 1963.

(2) **17 ... Nf6 18 Nb5!** (Stronger than the listless **18 e3 a6 19 a4?! Ne4 20 Nc6**, draw, Tal–Savon, 1973 USSR Championship. Endgames of this type just don't agree with Tal's active style.) **18 ... Rxc1 19 Rxc1 a6 20 Nd4 Rd8 21 e3**, Schmidt–Balcerowski, Polonica Zdroj 1970. Control of the c-file, the strong knight location and the vulnerability of Black's queenside — all these factors add up to a pleasant endgame advantage for White.

**18 b4! Na4**

The knight will now be a bystander for the rest of the game, but **18 ... Nd7** leads to a lost R + P endgame after **19 Ne6 +!**.

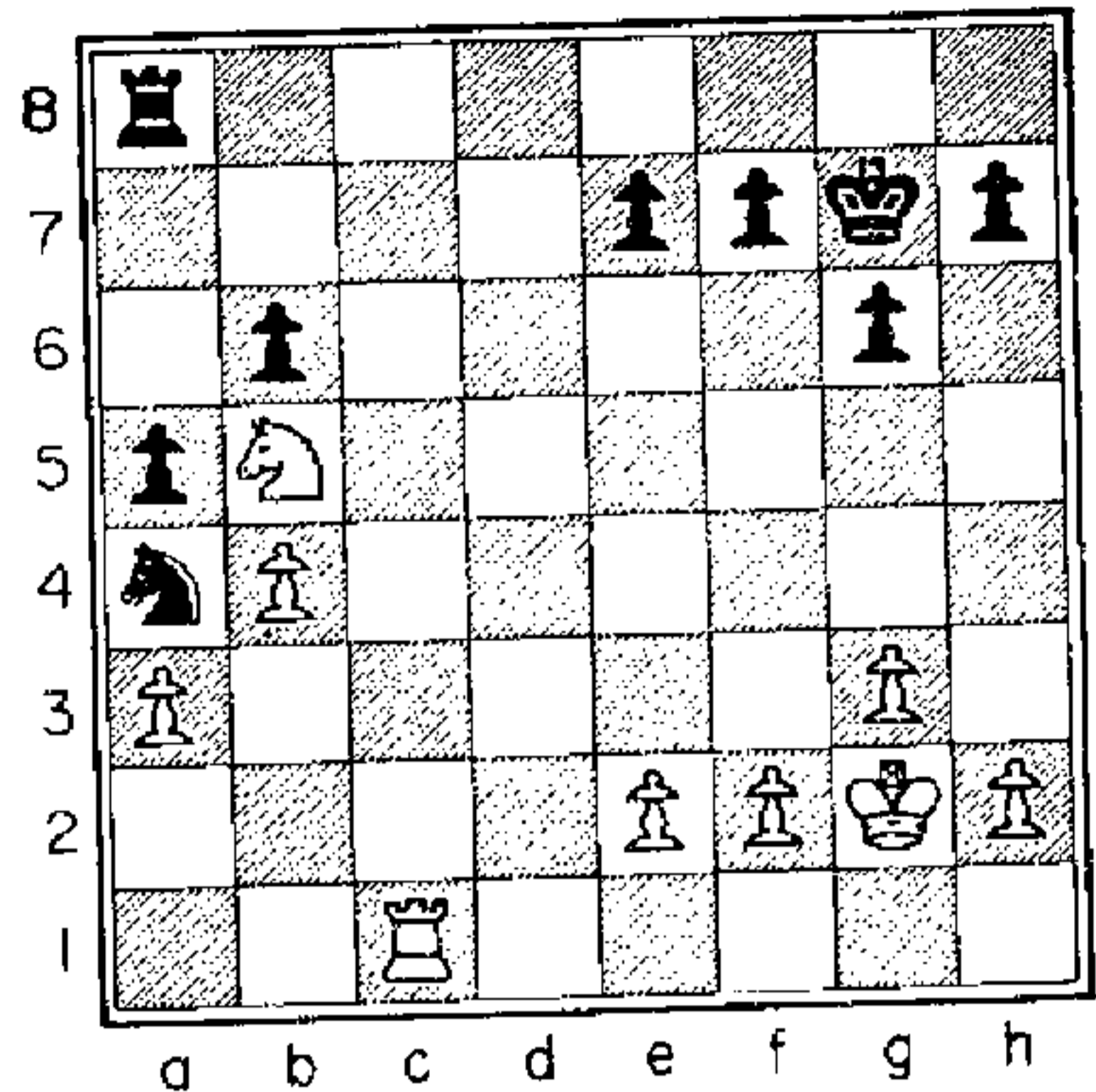
**19 Nb5! Rxc1**

Giving up the c-file is unpleasant, yet in the long run unavoidable, since **19 ... a6?** loses a pawn after **20 Nc7 (20 ... Ra7? 21 Ne6 +)**.

**20 Rxc1 a5**  
**21 a3!**

*(See next diagram)*

By holding the b4 square, White holds the cramp on Black's queen-



side and this enables White's rook + knight to combine for an attack against Black's kingside. The helplessness of Black's defenders is perhaps surprising, yet is endemic to this whole variation.

**21 ... Rd8**  
**22 Rc7 Rd5**  
**23 Na7! axb4**  
**24 axb4 e6**

No better is **24 ... Kf6 25 Nc6! e6 26 f4!** with **27 Ne5** coming next.

**25 Nc6! Rd2**

Something has to give. Thus **25 ... Kf6** is again met by **26 f4!** and **25 ... Rb5** by **26 Nd4 Rxb4 27 Nxe6 + Kf6 28 Nd8**.

**26 Ne5 Rxe2**  
**27 Nxf7 h5**  
**28 Ng5 + Kf6?!**

Walking into a mate. Not that there is any hope in **28 ... Kg8** since for starters **29 Rc6** wins a pawn.



**29 Kf1! Rxf2+**

Not wishing to witness 29 ... Rb2  
30 f4! Kf5 31 h3! Rxb4 32 Rf7 Mate.

**30 Kxf2 Kxg5**

**31 Ke3 Kg4**

**32 b5 Kh3**

**33 Rc4 Nb2**

**34 Rc2**

**Black  
resigns**

**11.2 15 ... Na6:**

**V. SMYSLOV-O. CASTRO,  
BIEL INTERZONAL 1976**

Black immediately develops the knight, even though this occurs on the edge of the board.

**16 Rfd1 Rfc8**

**17 Rac1**

Again both of White's rooks are on the open files and he is ready for activity starting with 18 Nb5.

**17 ... Kf6**

In Benko-Weinstein, Lone Pine 1975, Black was successful with 17 ... Nb4!?: 18 Rxc8 Rxc8 19 Rd2 a6! and a draw was agreed. It seems that with 18 a3! White can retain some advantage, though a practical test is in order.

**18 Nb5! Nc5?**

This loses the a-pawn and despite expectations, Black can't win it

back. Mandatory is 18 ... Rxc1 19 Rxc1 Nc5 20 b4 Ne6!, with Black's position unpleasant but defensible. (After 21 Rc6 the game would transpose into Portisch-Pachman, Sarajevo 1963.)

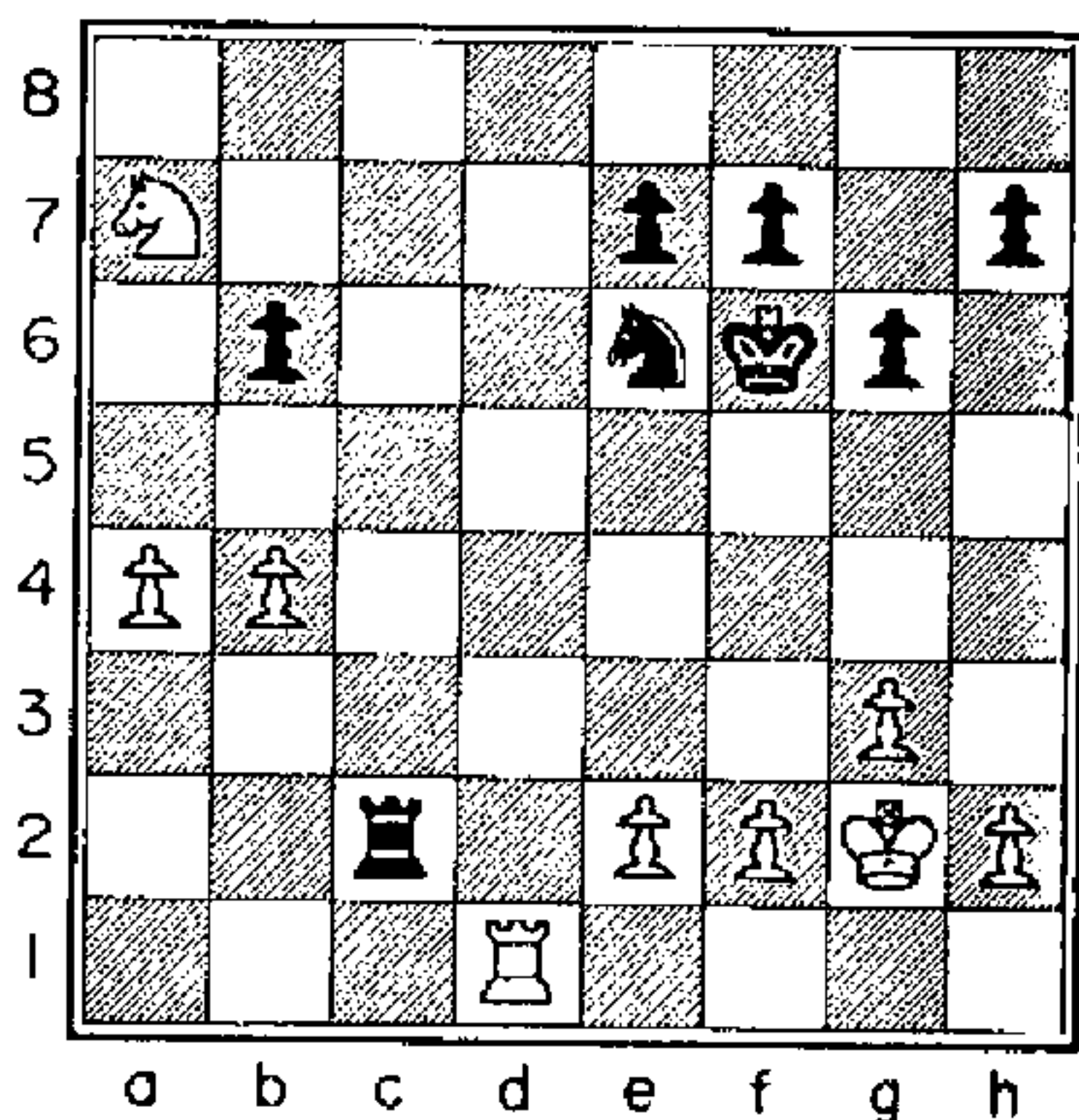
**19 b4! Ne6**

**20 Rxc8 Rxc8**

**21 Nxa7 Rc2**

Obviously hopeless is 21 ... Ra8?! 22 Rd7.

**22 a4!**



Black's problem now is that the anticipated 22 ... Ra2 23 Nc8! Rxa4 24 Nxb6 Rxb4?? is not playable because of 25 Nd5+. Thus White obtains a decisive passed pawn on the queenside.

**22 ... Rxe2**

**23 Nc8! b5**

The only try. After 23 ... Rb2? 24 Nxb6 White's b-pawn is again taboo.

24 axb5 Rb2  
 25 Nb6 Nc7  
 26 Nd7+ Kg7  
 27 b6 Na6  
 28 Nc5! Nxb4

Black has been able to capture one of the doubled pawns but at the exorbitant cost of allowing the other to reach the 7th rank in safety.

29 b7 Nc6  
 30 Rd7 Na5

The threat was 31 Na6 followed by 32 Rc7, e.g. 30 ... Rb5 31 Na6 Rb6 32 Rc7 Rxa6 33 Rxc6 Rxc6 34 b8 = Q, with an easy win since Black has no chance of establishing a fortress.

31 Rxe7 Black resigns

White's b-pawn keeps Black's rook + knight glued to it and White wins by activating his king.

11.3 15 ... a6:  
 U. ANDERSSON-V. HORT,  
 NIKSIC 1978

Black takes b5 away from White's knight and prepares to develop his QR. His over-all strategy is to provide the minimum opportunities for White to penetrate on the queen-side. Of necessity, this is a very passive approach. White's coming play is a model of the general strategy of how to make progress

against a passive, though reasonably sound, set-up.

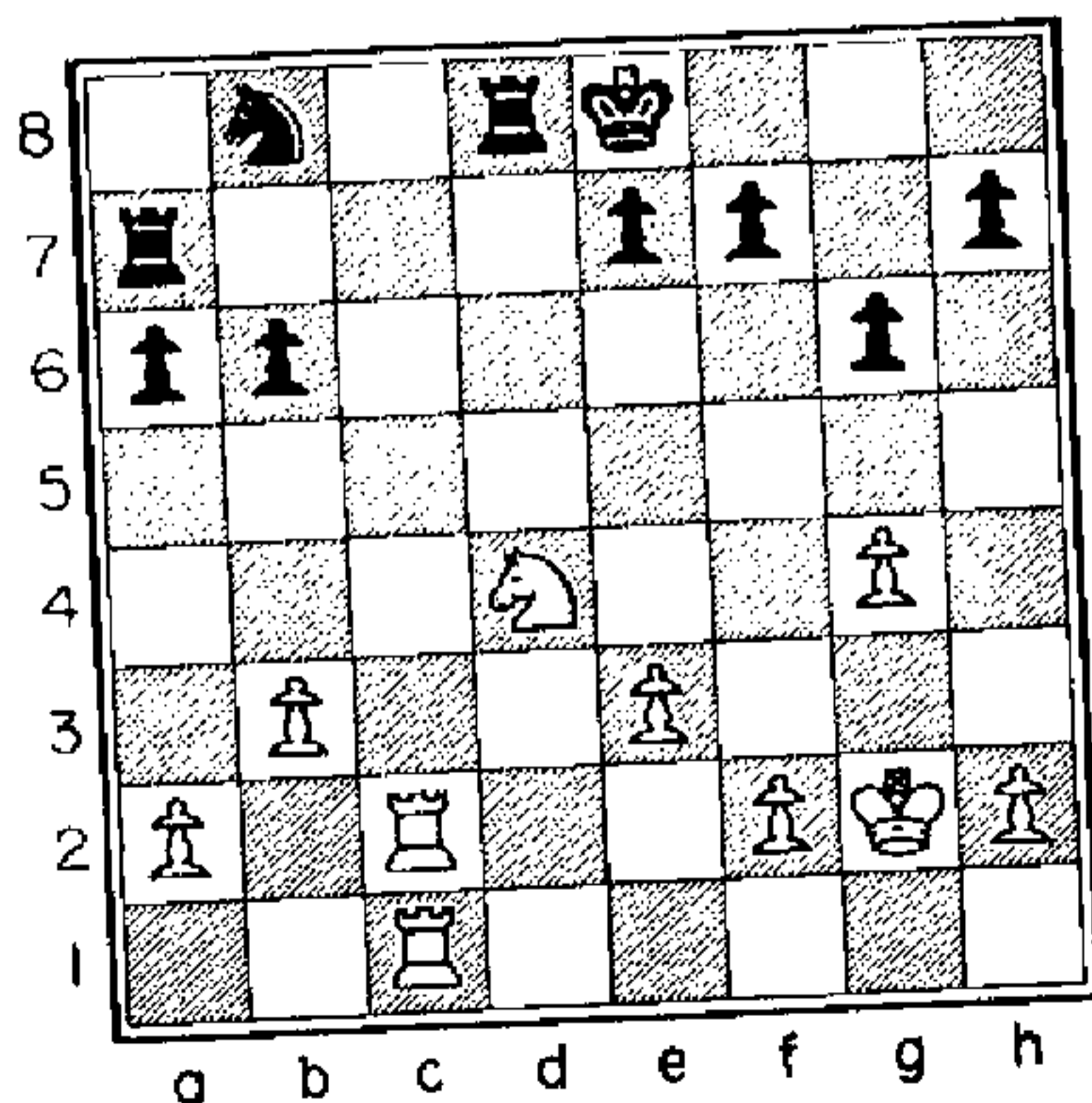
16 Rfc1

The normal 16 Rac1 is probably a shade more accurate. The instructive course of Andersson-Robatsch, Munich 1979, was: 16 ... Ra7 17 Rc2 Rd8 18 e3 e5? (It is tempting to chase away the knight, but the weakening of the kingside is disastrous.) 19 Nf3 f6 20 g4! Rd6 21 Rfc1 Nd7 22 Rc6! Rxc6 23 Rxc6 Kf7 24 Nd2! Ke7 25 Ne4 Rb7 26 b4! Rb8 27 Nc3! f5 (Or 27 ... Rb7 28 Nd5 + Kf7 29 Rd6!) 28 Nd5 + Kf7 29 Kg3! h5 30 gxf5 gxf5 31 Rd6 Rb7 32 Kh4 Kg7 33 Kxh5 Black resigns.

16 ... Ra7  
 17 Rc2 Rd8  
 18 e3 Kf8

On the way to centralizing the king.

19 Rac1 Ke8  
 20 g4!



Black has been working to close invasion routes on the queenside. For instance, 20 Rc7 can be repulsed by 20 ... Rxc7 21 Rxc7 Rd7 22 Rc8+ Rd8. Now that White has a bind on the queenside he looks to open a theater of war someplace else. Since Black has been moving away from the kingside, White decides to establish play there since Black will be short of defenders.

<b>20 ...</b>	<b>h6</b>
<b>21 h4</b>	<b>Rd7</b>
<b>22 f4!</b>	<b>a5</b>

Since by now White's plans are obvious, Black rushes to develop his knight.

**23 Kf3!**

Prior to continuing with his attack, White improves his king position. Remember that the potential for the kingside pawn advance will always remain. In an endgame there is often no need to rush such advances.

<b>23 ...</b>	<b>Rd6</b>
<b>24 h5!</b>	<b>gxh5</b>

Black must exchange, since otherwise after 25 hxg6 Black will be left with a vulnerable h-pawn.

<b>25 gxh5</b>	<b>Na6</b>
----------------	------------

No better is 25 ... Rd5 26 Rg1! Kd7 (Immediately losing is 26 ... Rxh5? 27 Nf5!! Rxf5 28 Rg8+ Kd7 29 Rd2+ ) because of 27 Rg7.

**26 Nc6!**

White immediately exploits the availability of this square to achieve the removal of a Black defender.

<b>26 ...</b>	<b>Rc8</b>
<b>27 Ne5</b>	<b>Rxc2</b>
<b>28 Rxc2</b>	<b>Kf8</b>

Black must allow White to penetrate somewhere since 28 ... Nc5? 29 Nc4! Rc6 30 Nxb6! loses a pawn.

<b>29 Rc8+</b>	<b>Kg7</b>
<b>30 Nc4</b>	<b>Rd5</b>

Black must look for some counterplay. After 30 ... Re6? 31 e4 followed by 32 e5 or 32 f5, Black's rook would be in "mortal" danger.

<b>31 Re8</b>	<b>Kf6</b>
<b>32 Ne5</b>	<b>Ke6</b>
<b>33 Rh8</b>	

Just as already seen in the previous two games, the combination of the active R + active N gains material.

<b>33 ...</b>	<b>f6</b>
<b>34 Rxh6</b>	<b>Nb4</b>
<b>35 a3?!</b>	

With both players short of time and the position sharpening, the play becomes inexact. The most important factor now is White's passed h-pawn and the way to get it mobilized is 35 Ng6! followed by 36 Rh7 (Hort). Black then lacks both

a defense and a means for satisfactory counterplay.

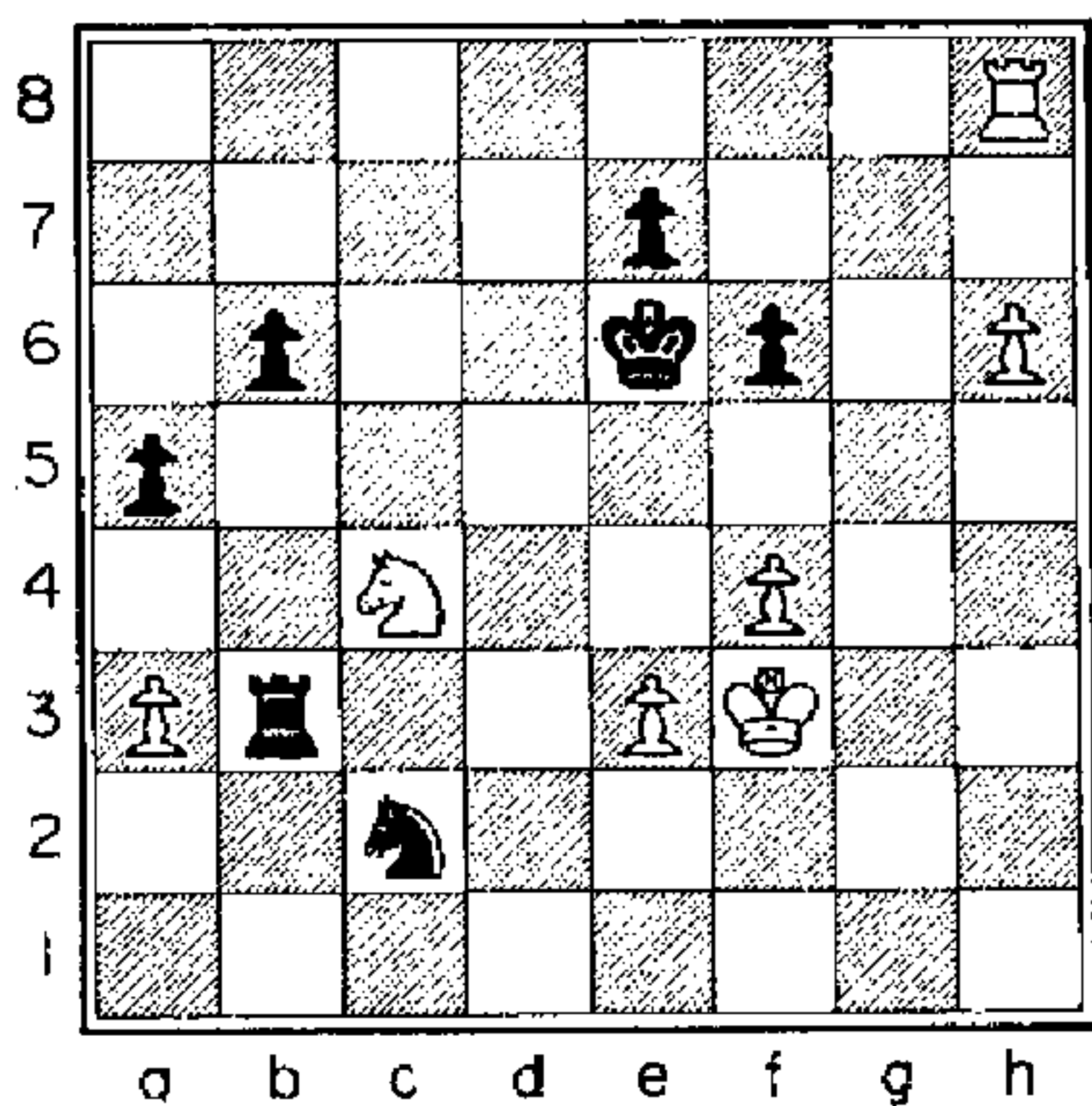
**35 ... Nc2**  
**36 Nc4**

But now after 36 Ng6 Rd3! Black is counterattacking.

**36 ... Rd3**  
**37 Rh8 Rxb3?!**

The key to successful defense is to get counterplay against the e-pawn. Therefore correct is 37 ... b5!, which should equalize since then both Black's R + N can take up active positions.

**38 h6!**



Passed pawns must be pushed! Black now should still play 38 ... b5! after which Hort gives the following line: 39 h7 bxc4 40 Rc8 Rxe3+ 41 Kg2 Ne1+ 42 Kh2 Nf3+ 43 Kh1 Ng5!. The endgame after 44 h8 = Q Rh3+ 45 Qxh3 Nxh3 46 Rxc4 is not completely clear but since White

can't be prevented from winning the a-pawn, he must have the superior chances. After the text move Black is again lost.

**38 ... Rb1?**  
**39 Kg2! Ne1+**  
**40 Kf2 Nc2**  
**41 Kg2 Kf7**  
**42 f5! Ne1+**

The Exchange up endgame after 42 ... b5 43 Rb8! bxc4 44 Rxb1 Nxe3+ 45 Kf2 Nxf5 46 h7 Kg7 47 Rb5 is an easy win for White since Black's king is so far away.

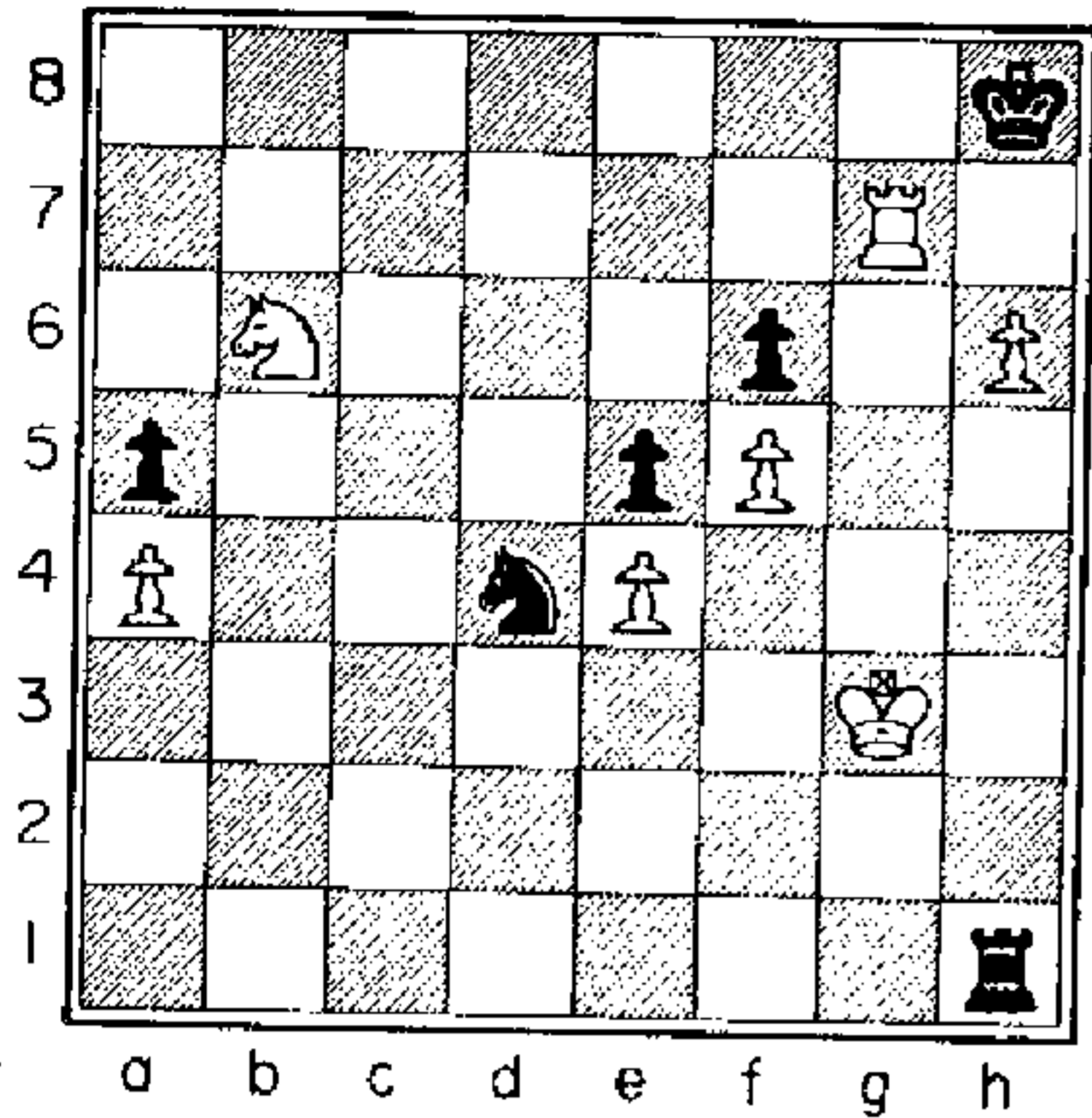
**43 Kg3 Nc2**  
**44 a4**

Though at the moment material is even, White's advantages are decisive: the a-pawn holds back Black's queenside and White's passed h-pawn is a powerhouse. Yet no game is over until the end — as also shown in this case.

**44 ... Rh1**  
**45 e4 Nd4**  
**46 Nxb6 e6**  
**47 Rh7+ Kg8**  
**48 Rd7 e5**  
**49 Rg7+ Kh8**

*(See next diagram)*

Now winning is 50 Rf7!, which keeps Black in a bind and threatens 51 Nd5. After 50 ... Rxh6 51 Nd5 White captures the f-pawn for a decisive advantage.



**50 Rg6?**

After this natural move, the rook is tangled up here just long enough for Black to save himself.

**50 ...            Re1!!**  
**51 Rxf6**

There is no time for 51 Nd5 Rxf6 52 Nxf6 because of 52 ... Nxf5+ (Check!!) 53 Kf2 (Or 53 Kh3 Rh4+ 54 Kg2 Nxf6) 53 ... Rf4+ 54 Kd2 Ne7.

**51 ...            Rxe4**  
**52 Nd5            Kh7!**  
**53 Ne7            Rf4**  
**Draw**

White is so tangled up that there is no way to make progress.

# 12

## English Opening: Andersson-Böök Line

**1 c4            Nf6**  
**2 Nc3           d5**

A popular and unbalancing central advance, favored particularly by players who look forward to a transposition into the Grünfeld Defense or to variations similar to that.

**3 cxd5           Nxd5**  
**4 Nf3**

A purer form of the English results after 4 g3. However, many players favor the flexible text move which leaves open the developmental mode of the KB. Moreover, the position after White's fourth move is of great practical significance because it also commonly results from openings where White has played Nf3 on his first or second move.

**4 ...            g6**

A logical and popular continuation. White can now transpose back into a 1 d4 opening with 5 d4 or can signal his interest for a conventional English with 5 g3. Or he can tease Black a bit by playing ...

**5 e4!?           Nxc3**

The only consequent response. If the knight retreats, White builds a strong and trouble-free center. After the text move Black looks forward to having a Grünfeld after 6 bxc3 Bg7 7 d4 c5. In fact we would have the Modern Exchange Variation, as covered in Chapter 9. But White has quite a surprising and annoying continuation at his disposal.

**6 dxc3!**

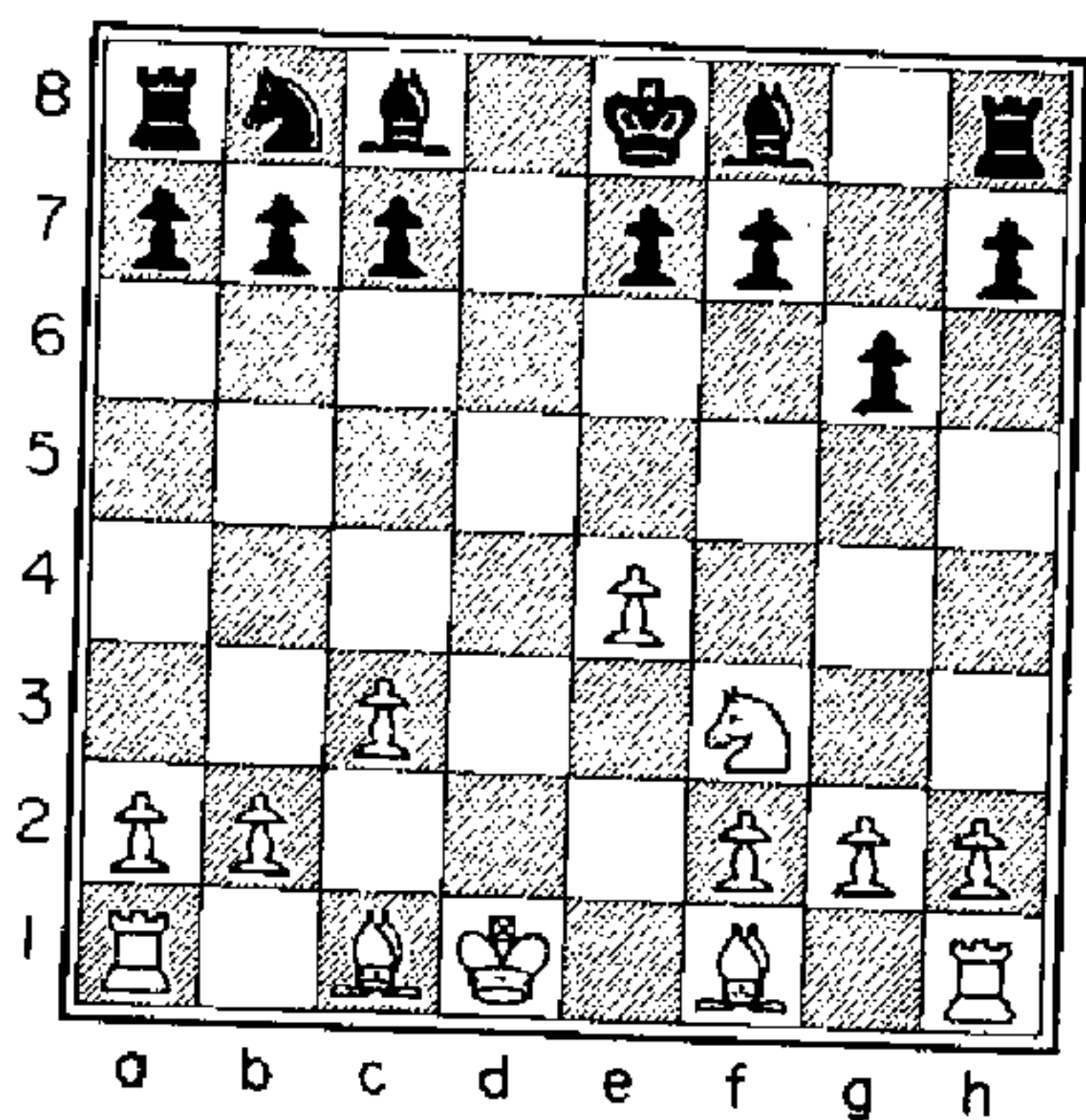
At first glance this seems at best an innocuous plan. White captures "away from the center", allows an exchange of queens and does so in

a way that requires recapture with the king. How can this be a viable approach?

**6 ... Qxd1+**

This obvious exchange is the best that Black has. The interesting 6 ... Qd6?!, with the idea of strengthening Black's center in case of 7 Qxd6 exd6, leads to an unattractive middlegame after 7 Qb3!. In Andersson-Kouatly, Malta Olympiad 1980, White won instructively as follows: 7 ... Bg7 8 Be3 0-0 9 Rd1 Qc6 10 Bc4! Na6? (10 ... Qxe4? also loses to 11 Bxf7+!). Therefore the ugly 10 ... e6 is mandatory.) 11 Bxf7+! Rxf7 12 Rd8+ Bf8 13 Ne5 Qf6 14 Nxf7 Qxf7 15 Bh6! Be6 16 Rxa8! Bxb3 17 axb3 Nc5 18 Rxf8+ Qxf8 19 Bxf8 Kxf8 20 Ke2 Nxe4 21 Ke3 Nd6 22 g4 e5 23 Ra1 a6 24 Ra5 Nf7 25 Ke4 Ke7 26 Rxe5+ Black resigns.

**7 Kxd1**



This is the basic starting point of the Andersson-Böök Line. Its inherent strength was discovered in the 1930s by the Finnish International Master Eero Böök and worked into a potent modern weapon in the 1970s and 1980s by Swedish Grandmaster Ulf Andersson. There are modern day theoreticians who refer to this position and the play that follows as "boring". It is true that some of the dynamic tension that is a hallmark of modern chess is missing. But so what? The objective of the science of chess is to search for the ultimate truth no matter what the characteristics of the position. And the point of successful practical play is to achieve positions which offer good winning chances while minimizing the risk of losing. This is exactly the situation that White has here.

Though only the queens and one set of minor pieces have been exchanged, the secure White pawn formation and the lack of development by Black means that White's king is quite safe in the center. As a matter of fact, since this is inherently an endgame position, White's king is not only secure in the center but even becomes preferably placed there. Also White's e4 pawn gives him some central superiority. Moreover, White's bishops can be easily and effectively developed on open diagonals. Black, on the other hand, has some difficulties in

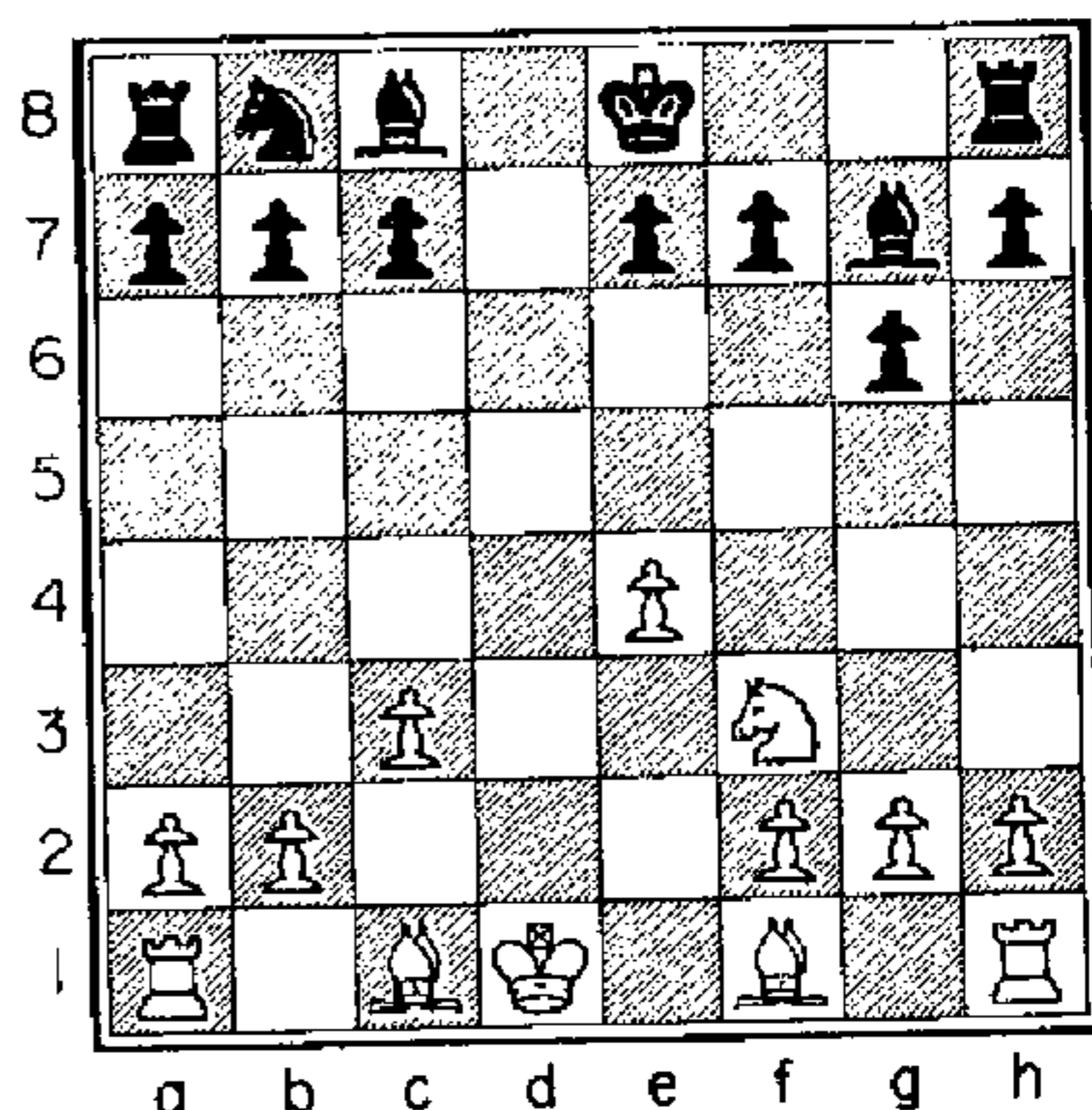
establishing a fully promising piece deployment. Though his KB can be immediately fianchettoed, on g7 it will be biting on granite since the b2-c3 pawn formation limits its scope. If Black does not fianchetto the KB, then the ... g6 move turns out to be both a waste of time and a kingside weakness. Other developmental difficulties will be discussed in connection with the concrete variations that follow. Black's usual moves are 7 ... Bg7, 7 ... Nd7 and 7 ... f6 and each of these will be illustrated by complete games. Two other reasonable alternatives are:

(1) 7 ... c5?!. Black wants to gain some central space, but the resulting weakening of the queenside is too much of a handicap. In Andersson-Tempone, Buenos Aires 1979, White obtained a clear advantage after 8 Be3 b6 9 a4 Nc6 10 Bb5! Bd7 11 Kc2 Bg7 12 Rhd1 a6 13 Bc4 Bg4 14 h3! Bxf3 15 gxf3 0-0 16 f4! Ra7 17 e5. White has a significant central and spatial superiority and Black's queenside is very vulnerable to the combined power of White's bishops.

(2) 7 ... Bg4. Developing the QB while pinning the KN seems logical, but lacks a deeper strategic basis. In Petrosian-Botvinnik, 1963 World Championship Match, a draw was agreed on after 8 Be2 Nd7 9 Be3 e5 10 Nd2. But of course, a draw was all that Petrosian needed to become

World Champion! Instead after 9 h3! Bxf3 10 Bxf3 White has the bishop pair to go with his other preferences, while Black has gained nothing.

**12.1 7 ... Bg7:  
K. COMMONS-  
M. MIHALJCHISHIN,  
PRIMORSKO 1976**



This superficially logical developmental move leads to a prospectless position for Black. Black's KB is without scope here, while nothing is done to lessen the effectiveness of White's bishops.

**8 Bf4!**

Developing the QB to an excellent diagonal with a gain of time.

- 8 ... c6
- 9 Kc2 Nd7
- 10 Nd2!

Not only making possible the smooth protection of the e-pawn



with f3, but also enabling the knight to go to c4 from where it will pressure Black's queenside.

**10 ... 0-0**  
**11 f3**

The immediate 11 Nc4 is also good.

**11 ... Re8**

Black loses this game with his boots on. Yet attempts at active play just don't exist. In Hort-Smejkal, Czechoslovakia 1973, Black tried 11 ... f5, but after 12 Bg5! Bf6 13 Bxf6 Nxf6 14 Bc4 + Kg7 15 e5 Ne8 16 Rad1 Nc7 17 Nb3 f4 18 Kc1 Bf5 19 Rd2! Rad8 20 Rhd1 White had control of the d-file and pressure against Black's queenside.

**12 Nc4 b6**

After 12 ... Nb6 13 Na5! Black's QB can't be developed.

**13 Rd1 Nf8**  
**14 Ne5 Bxe5**

Giving White the bishop pair signifies the bankruptcy of Black's opening system, but what else? 14 ... c5? allows 15 Bb5 while 14 ... Bb7 15 Bc4 is no bed of roses either.

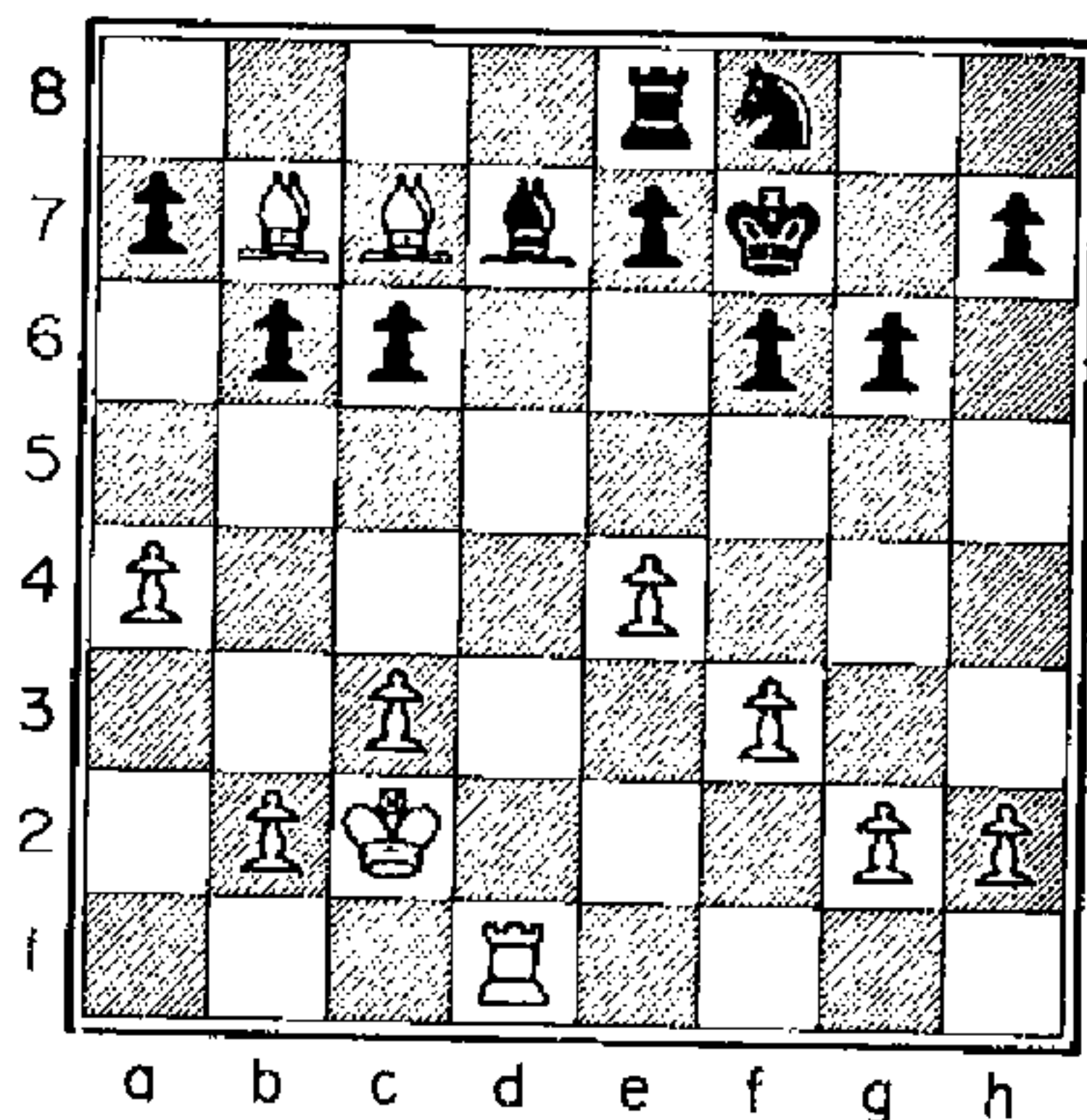
**15 Bxe5 f6?**

Black must avoid any further unnecessary weaknesses. In order is the simple 15 ... Bb7.

**16 Bg3 Be6**  
**17 Ba6! Rad8?!**

White's bishops will leave Black's position lame. The minor evil is 17 ... Bc8!, since after 18 Bxc8 Raxc8 19 Rd2 Rcd8 20 Rhd1 White "only" has control of the d-file. Therefore keeping the bishops on with 18 Be2! is stronger.

**18 a4 Kf7**  
**19 Bb7! Rxd1**  
**20 Rxd1 Bd7**  
**21 Bc7!**



Black's R + B + N have no future and he is reduced to unproductive or harmful pawn moves. White already has a won position.

**21 ... g5**  
**22 b3 c5**  
**23 a5! bxa5**

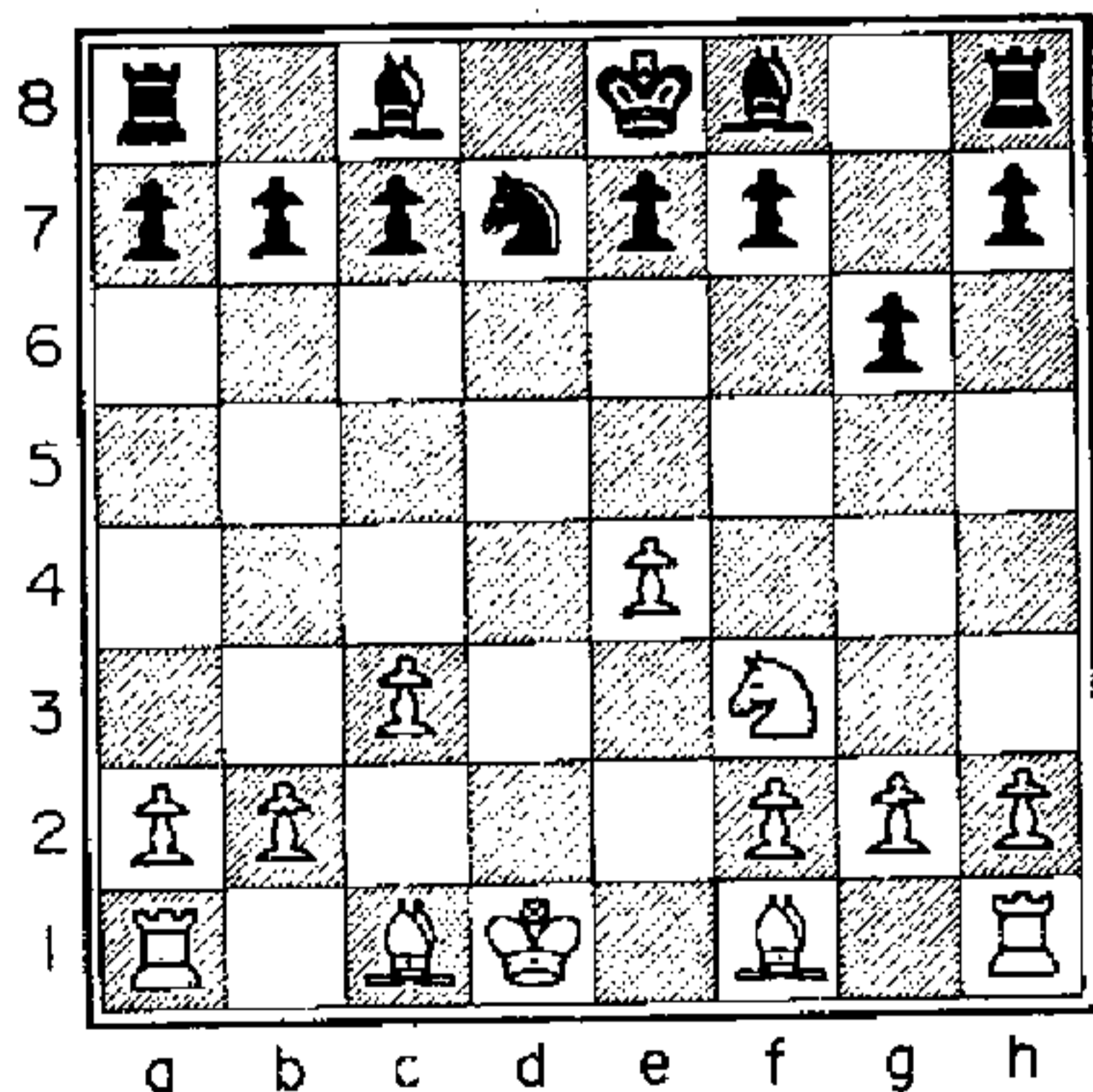
Leads to indefensible a- and c-pawns. Yet 23 ... b5 loses to 24 a6 followed by 25 Bb6!.

24 Bxa5 Rb8  
 25 Ba6 Bc6  
 26 Bc7 Ra8  
 27 Bc4+ Ke8  
 28 Ra1 g4  
 29 Ra5 gxf3  
 30 gxf3 Nd7  
 31 Be6 a6  
 32 Bg3! Bb5?!

Leads to heavy material losses. But 32 ... Kd8 33 Bf2! is also hopeless.

33 Bd5!  
 Black  
 resigns

12.2 7 ... Nd7:  
 A. NIKITIN-ROSENBERG,  
 MOSCOW 1977



A developing move and a fairly flexible continuation. Black develops the QN to its best initial square (7 ... Nc6? is bad because of

8 Bf4) while leaving open the method of developing the KB.

8 Bf4!

The same active plan as against 7 ... Bg7 makes excellent sense here too. Playable, though unnecessarily modest, is 8 Be3. A promising alternative, however, is the active placement of the KB with 8 Bc4. This can lead to the following possibilities:

(a) 8 ... Bg7: 9 Re1 c6 (9 ... Ne5 10 Nxe5 Bxe5 11 Bh6! followed by 12 f4 is unpleasant for Black.) 10 Kc2 0-0 11 Be3 (Also good is 11 Bf4 Nc5 12 b4 Be6 13 Bb3!? Nxb3 14 axb3 h6 15 h4, with the spatial advantage giving White a slight edge in Palatnik-A. Mihaljchishin, USSR 1976.) 11 ... h6 12 a4 a5?! (safer is 12 ... Re8 followed by ... Nf8) 13 e5! e6 14 Rad1 Re8 15 Bd4 b6 16 Be3!, with a significant advantage in space and excellent chances against Black's weakened queenside. In Romanishin-Grigorian, 1976 U.S.S.R. Championship, White went on to win in 35 moves.

(b) 8 ... Nc5: After the premature 9 Ng5?! e6 Black obtained a stable position in Miles-Popovic, Vrbas 1980. Correct is the thematic 9 Re1!, as in the above variation. White then keeps the usual slight edge.

(c) 8 ... f6!?: Though apparently not yet played in this position, the

plan of aiming for ... e5 (which is similar to that after 7 ... f6) seems like Black's best way of striving for equality.

**8 ... c6**

Obviously something must be done about the attack on the c-pawn. The text is more reliable than the 8 ... Nc5 of Larsen-Hübner, Biel Interzonal 1976. After 9 Nd2! c6 (After 9 ... Ne6 10 Be3 h5 11 f4 the knight is uncomfortable on e6.) 10 Be3 e5 11 b4 Na4 12 Kc2 b5 13 a3 Be6 14 Nb3 a6 15 Be2 Be7 16 Rhd1 White's more active position gives him a clear advantage

**9 a4!?**

Aiming at some queenside pressure, while awaiting Black's decision regarding his piece deployment. Another good waiting move is 9 Kc2, whereas 9 Nd2?! is premature since Black can immediately play 9 ... e5 followed by 10 ... Bc5 as his KB has remained on the defensively correct a3-f8 diagonal.

**9 ... Bg7?!**

This natural diagonal is not a good one for the bishop! The correct plan is 9 ... f6! followed by 10 ... e5.

**10 Bc4 0-0?!**

Despite appearances, Black's king is actually more secure and

usefully placed in the center. Preferable is 10 ... Nc5. After 11 Re1, Black can with 11 ... f6! transpose into Tukmakov-Grigorian, Erevan 1976. White still had some advantage after 12 Nd2 e5 13 Be3 Ne6 14 a5! h5 15 Kc2 Bh6 16 Bxh6 Rxh6 17 b4, but Black did just manage to equalize and draw on move 30.

**11 Kc2 Nc5  
12 Nd2 e5?!**

Leads to new weaknesses, without getting anything in return. Better is 12 ... Be6.

**13 Be3 Ne6  
14 h4!**

Adding kingside play to his existing superiority in the center and on the queenside.

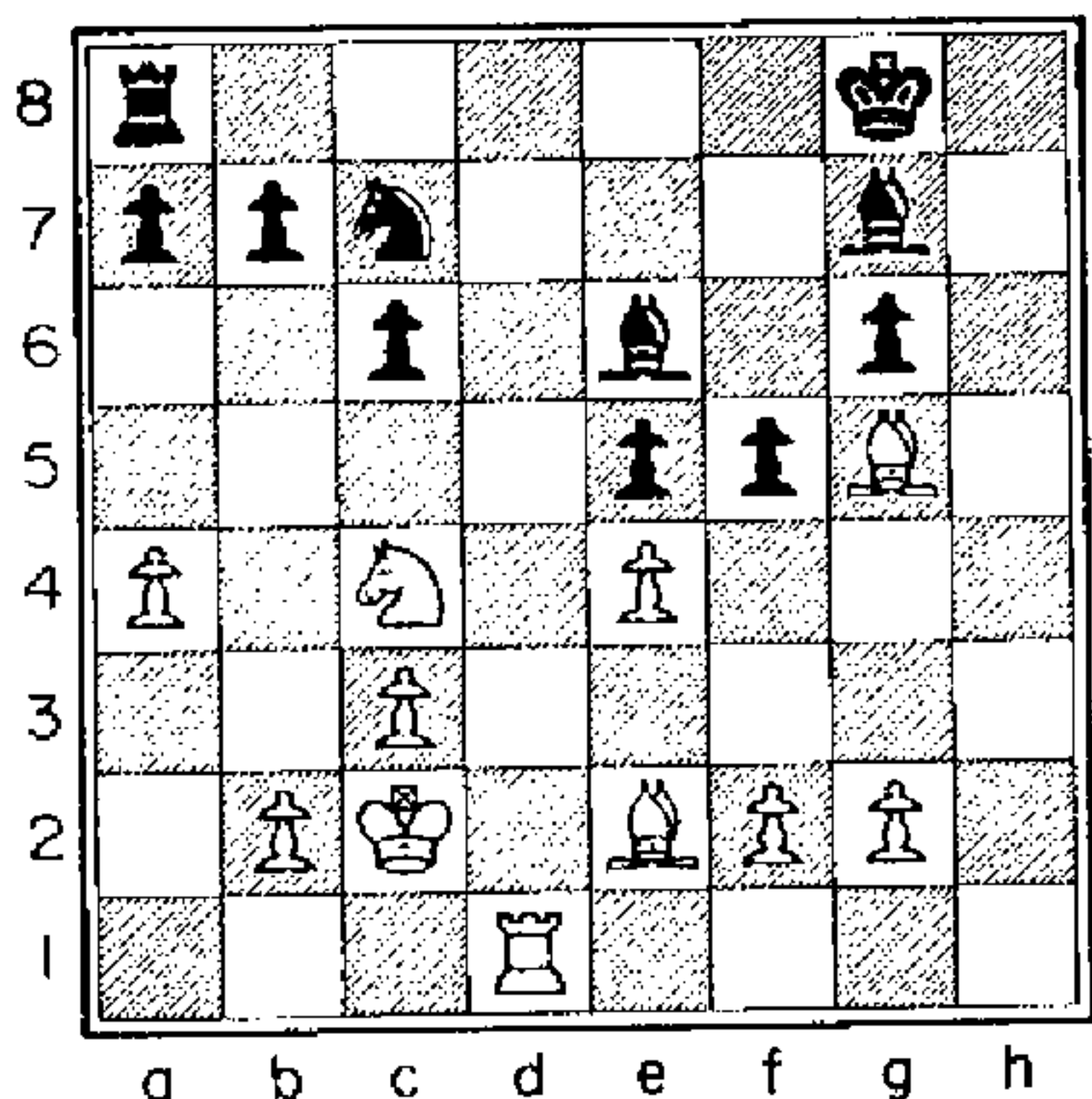
**14 ... Nc7  
15 Bc5 Rd8  
16 Be7 Rd7**

After 16 ... Re8 17 Bd6 Ne6, annoying is 18 Nf3.

**17 Bg5 Rd6  
18 h5 Be6  
19 Be2! f5  
20 hxg6 hxg6  
21 Nc4 Rd7  
22 Rad1! Rxd1  
23 Rxd1**

*(See next diagram)*

This position is symptomatic of the whole variation, if Black has not



been able to find the best defensive formations. White has the over-all more active piece placement, and control of the d-file, whereas Black must suffer his weaknesses on all three areas of the board.

With his next move Black tries to get some play by opening the position. Yet the net result is a new weakness: the e-pawn.

23 ... fxe4  
 24 Nd6 Rf8  
 25 Nxe4 Nd5

There is nothing in 25 ... Bf5 26 f3 Bxe4+ 27 fxe4 Rf2 because of 28 Rd2 (28 ... Rxc2?? 29 Bc4+).

26 f3 Nf4  
 27 Bf1 Bd5  
 28 Nd6 Rb8  
 29 Re1! Kf8  
 30 a5! b5  
 31 axb6 e.p. axb6  
 32 Ra1! Ne6  
 33 Bh4 Nc5  
 34 Ra7

Stronger is 34 b4! since 34 ... Nb7 loses to 35 Nxb7 Rxb7 36 Ra8+ Kf7 37 Ba6 Rc7 38 Bd8.

34 ... Bb3+  
 35 Kb1 Be6?

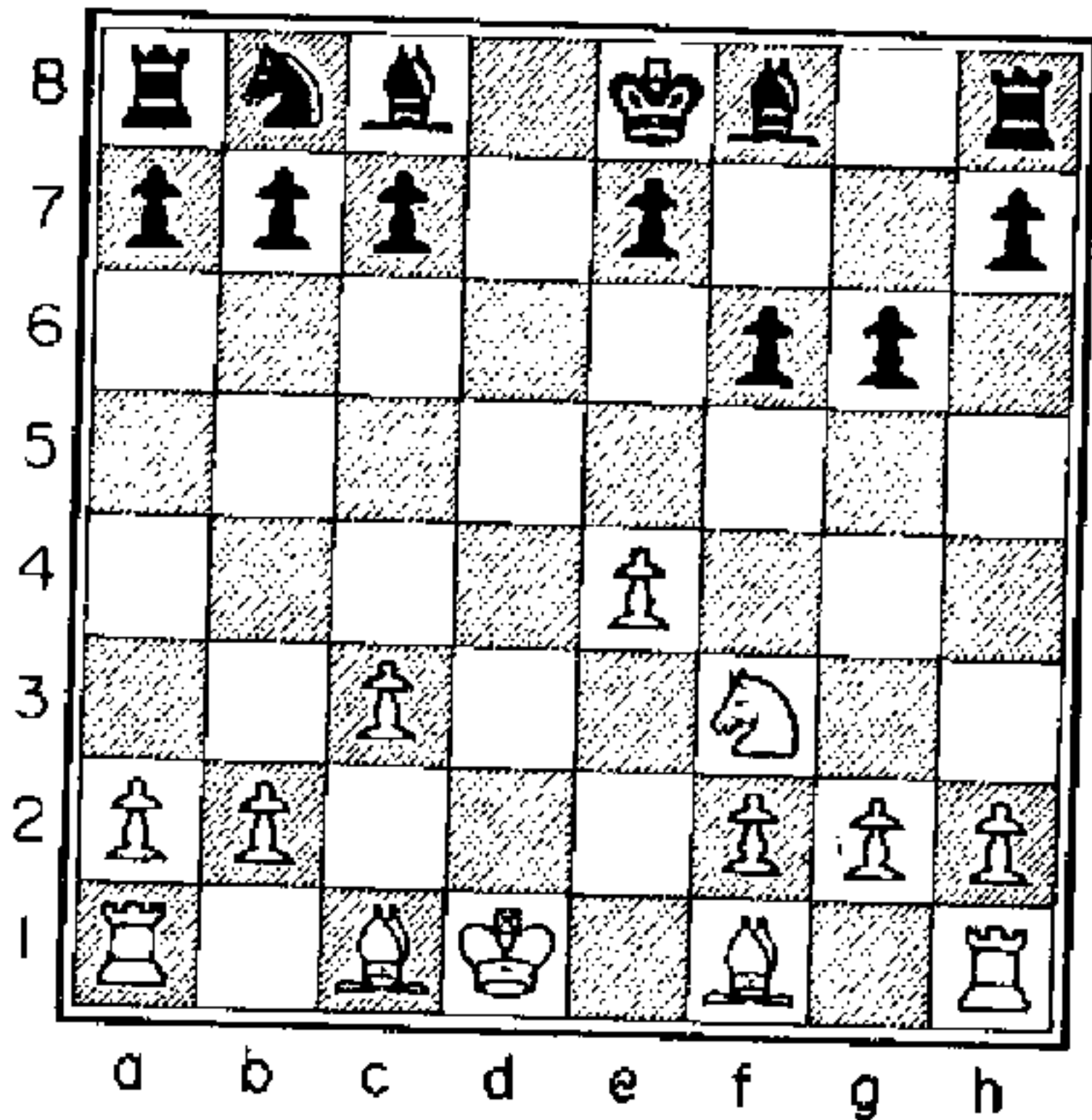
Such passive play is hopeless. Some chances were offered by 35 ... b5! and if 36 Nxb5, 36 ... Na4!.

36 b4 Nd7  
 37 Kc2 b5  
 38 Bd3

White's pressure means that one of Black's weaknesses (the g-pawn) must go. Since White also keeps the active rook and an excellent over-all position, this means that his victory is secure enough.

38 ... Bf6  
 39 Bxf6 Nxf6  
 40 Bxg6 Nd5  
 41 Bf7! Bxf7  
 42 Nxf7 Re8  
 43 Nd6 Re6  
 44 Nf5 Kg8  
 45 g4 e4  
 46 Nd4 Re8  
 47 fxe4 Rxe4  
 48 Nxc6 Kf8  
 49 Ra8+ Kg7  
 50 Rd8 Nxc3  
 51 Kxc3 Rc4+  
 52 Kd3 Rxc6  
 53 g5 Rc1  
 54 Rd5  
 Black resigns.

**12.3 7 ... f6:**  
**U. ANDERSSON-FRANCO,**  
**BUENOS AIRES 1979**



This is Black's most reliable plan. He will achieve central equivalence with ... e5 and develop the KB along its original diagonal. Black's pawn moves do cost two tempos. White's hopes for an advantage therefore rest with trying to exploit his slight edge in development.

**8 Be3**

Sound development is a characteristic of GM Andersson's play. Since f4 will not be available to the QB, e3 is its best square both offensively and defensively.

An interesting plan based on White's edge in development is 8 Nd4!?. In Cvetkovic-Simic, Belgrade 1980, White retained a slight initiative after 8 ... e5 9 Nb5 Na6 10 Be3 Be6! 11 b4 c6 12 Na3 (12 Nxa7 is met by 12 ... Nc5!.)

12 ... Nc7 13 Nc4 Nb5 14 Kc2 Nd6 15 Nxd6+ Bxd6 16 Be2.

Mindful that 7 ... f6 weakens Black's kingside somewhat, in Rashkovsky-A. Mihaljchishin, USSR 1981, White tried to exploit this with 8 h4!?. After the reflex 8 ... h5?! 9 e5! Nc6 10 Bd3 White would have the advantage. The game course was 8 ... Bg4! 9 Kc2 e5 10 Nd2 and now the steadier plan is 10 ... Nd7 11 f3 Be6 12 h4 Bg7 with virtual equality.

**8 ... e5**  
**9 Nd2!**

Since on f3 the knight's future is limited, White redeploys it to the queenside. Harmless is 9 Bc4 Nd7! 10 Ke2 Bc5! with approximate equality in Najdorf-Mecking, Wijk aan Zee 1978. But after the text move, the immediate 9 ... Nd7 can be met by 10 Nb3!.

**9 ... Be6**  
**10 Bc4 Bxc4**  
**11 Nxc4 Nd7**  
**12 b4!**

Both preventing the exchanging 12 ... Bc5 and gaining some space on the queenside. White has a slight edge because of the greater queenside space and the superior bishop. But Black could keep White's edge to a minimum with the immediate 12 ... 0-0-0!. As played, he just wastes time.

12 ... Nb6  
 13 Na5! 0-0-0+  
 14 Kc2 Be7

More promising is 14 ... h5!? planning to exchange bishops with 15 ... Bh6.

15 a3 f5?

Leads to a weak e-pawn. Black's best plan is to "do nothing", starting with 15 ... Nd7, 16 ... Nf8 and 17 ... Ne6.

16 Bxb6! axb6  
 17 Nc4

White now has the superior minor piece since Black's bishop will be stuck to defending the e-pawn. Moreover, White will be able to penetrate into Black's queenside via the a-file. Andersson fashions these factors first into a strong initiative and then into a win. In the meanwhile Black remains without any play. For instance, 17 ... fxe4?! just leads to an even weaker e-pawn after 18 Rae1! Rhf8 19 Rhf1.

17 ... Bf6  
 18 a4! Bg7  
 19 Rhe1 Rhe8  
 20 b5! f4  
 21 a5! bxa5  
 22 Rxa5 b6  
 23 Ra7

Threatening 24 Nxb6+.

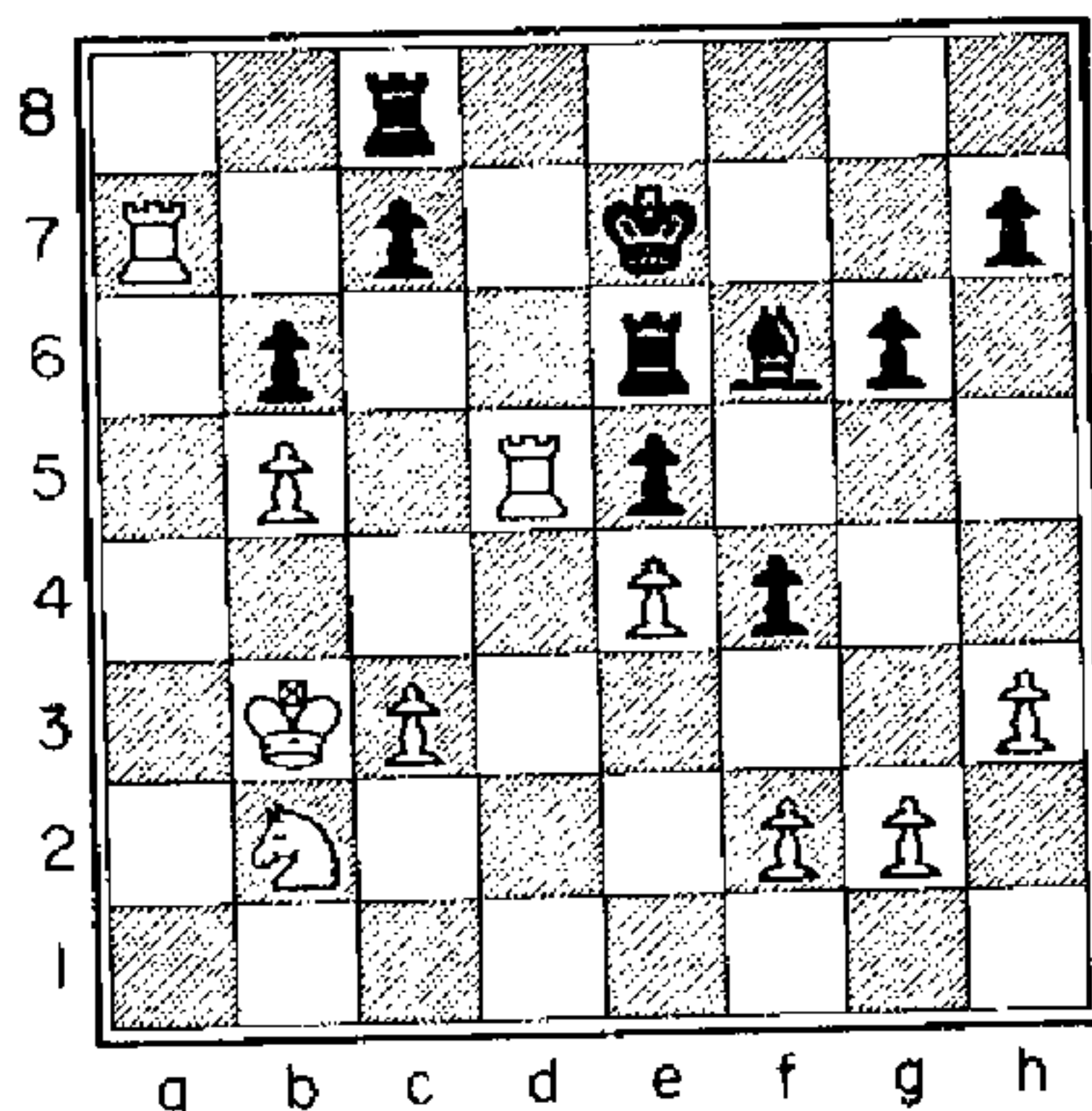
23 ... Bf6  
 24 Rha1 Re6  
 25 R1a6

With the threat 26 Na5! followed by the killing 27 Nc6.

25 ... Rde8  
 26 Kb3 Bd8  
 27 Ra8+ Kd7  
 28 Ra2!

Since there is no need for doubled rooks any more on the a-file, White brings one back to take control of the open d-file.

28 ... Bf6  
 29 Rd2+ Ke7  
 30 Ra7 Rc8  
 31 Rd5 Ke8  
 32 h3 Ke7  
 33 Nb2!



A fine example of the adage that even after you have achieved an excellent piece placement, see if it can not be improved even further. White's knight on c4 stands well, but can't do anything meaningful. Therefore Andersson retreats it to

d3 from where it effectively supports the advance of the c-pawn and eventually lands on the decisive c5 square.

<b>33 ...</b>	<b>Ke8</b>
<b>34 Nd3</b>	<b>Bg7</b>
<b>35 c4!</b>	<b>Bf6</b>
<b>36 c5!</b>	<b>bxc5</b>
<b>37 Nxc5</b>	<b>Re7</b>

No better is 37 ... Rb6 because of 38 Nd7.

<b>38 Ra6!</b>	<b>Bh8</b>
<b>39 Kc4</b>	<b>Bg7</b>
<b>40 f3</b>	<b>Rb8</b>
<b>41 Ne6</b>	<b>Bf6</b>
<b>42 Rc6</b>	
<b>Black resigns.</b>	

Black isn't able to protect his c-pawn since 42 ...Rb7 allows 43 Rd8+ Kf7 44 Rf8 mate and 42 ... Rc8 loses to 43 b6.

# Index of Games

Player with White is indicated by **bold type**

- Adorjan**-Ivkov 28  
**Andersson**-Balashov 104  
**Andersson**-Byrne 94  
**Andersson**-Franco 147  
**Andersson**-Hazai 67  
**Andersson**-Hort 136  
**Andersson**-Jovcic 123  
**Averbakh**-Popov 51
- Balashov-**Andersson** 104  
**Balashov**-Korchnoi 59  
Benko-**Smyslov** 133  
**Browne**-Hübner 20  
Byrne-**Andersson** 94  
**Byrne**-Garcia Padron 46
- Castro-**Smyslov** 135  
**Commons**-Mihaljchishin 142
- Dueball-**Karpov** 36
- Fedorowicz-**Mednis** 40  
**Fischer**-Portisch 9  
Franco-**Andersson** 147
- Garcia Padron-**Byrne** 94
- Hazai-**Andersson** 67  
Hort-**Andersson** 136  
**Hort**-Ivkov 57  
Hübner-**Browne** 20  
Hübner-**Karpov** 113
- Ivkov-**Adorjan** 28  
Ivkov-**Hort** 57  
Ivkov-**Suba** 82
- Jovcic-**Andersson** 123
- Karner**-Petrosian 88  
**Karpov**-Dueball 36  
**Karpov**-Hübner 113  
**Karpov**-Kavalek 59  
**Karpov**-Korchnoi 59  
**Karpov**-Portisch 128  
Kavalek-**Karpov** 48  
Keene-**Sigurjonsson** 71  
Korchnoi-**Balashov** 61  
Korchnoi-**Karpov** 59  
Korchnoi-**Timman** 26  
Krnic-**Rajkovic** 116
- Matulovic-**Tarjan** 84  
Mecking-**Polugayevsky** 125  
Medina-**Ribli** 19  
**Mednis**-Fedorowicz 40  
**Mednis**-Sprague 33  
Mestel-**Vaganian** 86  
Mihaljchishin-**Commons** 142
- Nikitin**-Rosenberg 144
- Pahtz**-Smyslov 73  
Petrosian-**Karner** 88
- Pinter**-Smejkal 15  
**Pinter**-Vogt 102  
**Plachetka**-Sax 109  
**Polugayevsky**-Mecking 125  
Popov-**Averbakh** 51  
Portisch-**Fischer** 9  
**Portisch**-Karpov 128
- Rajkovic**-Krnic 116  
**Ribli**-Medina 19  
Rosenberg-**Nikitin** 144
- Sax-**Plachetka** 109  
**Sigurjonsson**-Keene 71  
Smejkal-**Pinter** 15  
**Smejkal**-Szilagyi 76  
**Smyslov**-Benko 133  
**Smyslov**-Castro 135  
Smyslov-**Pahtz** 73  
Spassky-**Spiridonov** 12  
**Spiridonov**-Spassky 12  
Sprague-**Mednis** 33  
**Suba**-Ivkov 82  
Szilagyi-**Smejkal** 76
- Tarjan**-Matulovic 84  
**Timman**-Korchnoi 26
- Vaganian**-Mestel 86  
**Vogt**-Pinter 102